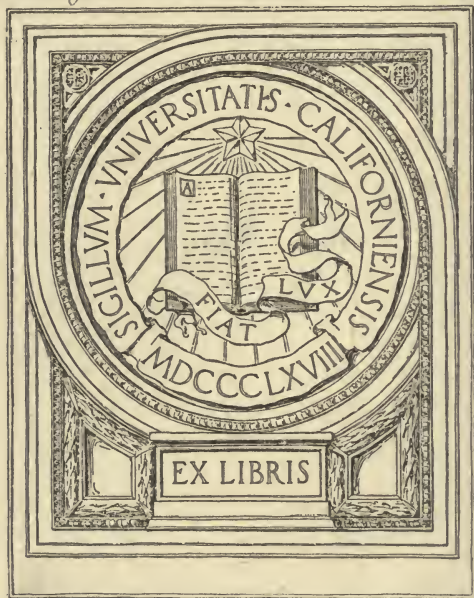




GIFT OF

*Benjamin Ide Wheeler*



EX LIBRIS

917  
A512



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation





# AMERICAN CLASSICS

FOR SEVENTH AND EIGHTH  
GRADE READING

WITH BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES, PORTRAITS AND  
SUGGESTIONS FOR STUDY



BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO  
HOUGHTON MIFFLIN COMPANY  
*The Riverside Press Cambridge*

COPYRIGHT, 1888, 1889, 1891, 1897, 1899, 1904 AND 1905,

BY HOUGHTON MIFFLIN AND CO.

COPYRIGHT, 1909, BY HOUGHTON MIFFLIN CO.

COPYRIGHT, 1878, BY CHARLES DUDLEY WARNER

COPYRIGHT, 1906, BY SUSAN LEE WARNER

COPYRIGHT, 1886 AND 1896, BY JOHN BURROUGHS

COPYRIGHT, 1883 AND 1895, BY EDWARD W. EMERSON

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

GIFT

Benj. Lee Wheeler

TO THE  
LIBRARY OF  
THE  
Houghton Mifflin Co.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
<b>WASHINGTON IRVING.</b>	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	1
RIP VAN WINKLE . . . . .	5
THE LEGEND OF SLEEPY HOLLOW . . . . .	32
<b>ABRAHAM LINCOLN.</b>	
THE GETTYSBURG SPEECH . . . . .	76
<b>NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE.</b>	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	79
THE GREAT STONE FACE . . . . .	84
MY VISIT TO NIAGARA . . . . .	109
<b>JOHN GREENLEAF WHITTIER.</b>	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	119
SNOW-BOUND . . . . .	122
THE SHIP-BUILDERS . . . . .	148
THE WORSHIP OF NATURE . . . . .	151
<b>JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL.</b>	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	153
THE VISION OF SIR LAUNFAL . . . . .	157
<b>WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT.</b>	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	171
THANATOPSIS . . . . .	175
TO A WATERFOWL . . . . .	177
<b>OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES.</b>	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	179
GRANDMOTHER'S STORY OF BUNKER HILL BATTLE . . . . .	182
THE CHAMBERED NAUTILUS . . . . .	194
OLD IRONSIDES . . . . .	195
<b>CHARLES DUDLEY WARNER.</b>	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	197
HOW I KILLED A BEAR . . . . .	201

LOST IN THE WOODS . . . . .	211
A FIGHT WITH A TROUT . . . . .	223
EDWARD EVERETT.	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	231
FROM "THE CHARACTER OF WASHINGTON" . . . . .	235
HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	247
EVANGELINE . . . . .	250
EDGAR ALLAN POE.	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	347
THE RAVEN . . . . .	351
THE BELLS . . . . .	359
ANNABEL LEE . . . . .	363
ISRAFAEL . . . . .	365
JOHN BURROUGHS.	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	368
A SPRAY OF PINE . . . . .	372
PATRICK HENRY.	
— BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	383
— SPEECH OF MARCH 23, 1775 . . . . .	389
RALPH WALDO EMERSON.	
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH . . . . .	395
CONCORD HYMN . . . . .	398
THE SNOW-STORM . . . . .	399
THE RHODORA . . . . .	400
ABRAHAM LINCOLN . . . . .	402
SUGGESTIONS FOR STUDY . . . . .	409





Washington Irving

# WASHINGTON IRVING.

---

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

IRVING may be named as the first author in the United States whose writings made a place for themselves in general literature. Franklin, indeed, had preceded him with his autobiography, but Franklin belongs rather to the colonial period. It was under the influences of that time that his mind and taste were formed, and there was a marked difference between the Boston and Philadelphia of Franklin's youth and the New York of Irving's time. Politics, commerce, and the rise of industries were rapidly changing social relations and manners, while the country was still dependent on England for its higher literature. It had hardly begun to find materials for literature in its own past or in its aspects of nature, yet there was a very positive element in life which resented foreign interference. There were thus two currents crossing each other the common life which was narrowly American, and the cultivated taste which was English, or imitative of England. Irving's first ventures, in company with his brothers and Paulding, were in the attempt to represent New York in literature upon the model of contemporary or recent presentations of London. "The town" in the minds of these young writers was that portion of New York society which might be construed into a miniature reflection of London wit and amusement. His associates never advanced beyond this stage, but with Washington Irving the sketches which he wrote under the signa-



ture of *Jonathan Old Style* and in the medley of *Salmagundi* were only the first experiments of a mind capable of larger things. After five or six years of trifling with his pen, he wrote and published, in 1809, *A History of New York, by Diedrich Knickerbocker*, which he began in company with his brother Peter as a mere *jeu d'esprit*, but turned into a more determined work of humor, as the capabilities of the subject disclosed themselves. Grave historians had paid little attention to the record of New York under the Dutch; Irving, who saw the humorous contrast between the traditional Dutch society of his day and the pushing new democracy, seized upon the early history and made it the occasion for a good-natured burlesque. He shocked the old families about him, but he amused everybody else, and the book, going to England, made his name at once known to those who had the making there of literary reputations.

Irving himself was born of a Scottish father and English mother, who had come to this country only twenty years before. He was but little removed, therefore, from the traditions of Great Britain, and his brothers and he carried on a trading business with the old country. His own tastes were not mercantile, and he was only silent partner in the house; he wrote occasionally and was for a time the editor of a magazine, but his pleasure was chiefly in travel, good literature, and good society. It was while he was in England, in 1818, that the house in which he was a partner failed, and he was thrown on his own resources. Necessity gave the slight spur which was wanting to his inclination, and he began with deliberation the career of an author. He had found himself at home in England. His family origin and his taste for the best literature had made him English in his sympathies and tastes, and his residence and travels there, the society which he entered and the friends he made, confirmed him in English habits. Nevertheless he was sturdily American in his principles; he was strongly attached to New York and



his American friends, and was always a looker-on in England. His foreign birth and education gave him significant advantages as an observer of English life, and he at once began the writing of those papers, stories, and sketches which appeared in the separate numbers of *The Sketch Book*, in *Bracebridge Hall*, and in *Tales of a Traveller*. They were chiefly drawn from material accumulated abroad, but an occasional American subject was taken. Irving instinctively felt that by the circumstances of the time and the bent of his genius he could pursue his calling more safely abroad than at home. He remained in Europe seventeen years, sending home his books for publication, and securing also the profitable results of publication in London. During that time, besides the books above named, he wrote the *History of the Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus*; the *Voyages and Discoveries of the Companions of Columbus*; *A Chronicle of the Conquest of Granada*; and *The Alhambra*. The Spanish material was obtained while residing in Spain, whither he went at the suggestion of the American minister to make translations of documents relating to the voyages of Columbus which had recently been collected. Irving's training and tastes led him rather into the construction of popular narrative than into the work of a scientific historian, and, with his strong American affections, he was quick to see the interest and value which lay in the history of Spain as connected with America. He was eminently a *raconteur*, very skilful and graceful in the shaping of old material; his humor played freely over the surface of his writing, and, with little power to create characters or plots, he had an unfailing perception of the literary capabilities of scenes and persons which came under his observation.

He came back to America in 1832 with an established reputation, and was welcomed enthusiastically by his friends and countrymen. He travelled into the new parts of America, and spent ten years at home, industriously working at the material which had accumulated in his hands when

abroad, and had been increased during his travels in the West. In this period he published *Legends of the Conquest of Spain*; *The Crayon Miscellany*, including his *Tour on the Prairies, Abbotsford and Newstead Abbey; Astoria*; a number of papers in the *Knickerbocker Magazine*, afterwards published under the title of *Wolfert's Roost*; and edited the *Adventures of Captain Bonneville, U. S. A., in the Rocky Mountains and the Far West*.

In 1842 he went back to Spain as American minister, holding the office for four years, when he returned to America, established himself at his home, Sunnyside on the banks of the Hudson, and remained there until his death in 1859. The fruits of this final period were *Mahomet and his Successors*, which, with a volume of posthumous publication, *Spanish Papers and other Miscellanies*, completed the series of Spanish and Moorish subjects which form a distinct part of his writings; *Oliver Goldsmith, a Biography*; and finally a *Life of Washington*, which occupied the closing years of his life, — years which were not free from physical suffering. In this book Irving embodied his strong admiration for the subject, whose name he bore and whose blessing he had received as a child; he employed, too, a pen which had been trained by its labors on the Spanish material, and, like that series, the work is marked by good taste, artistic sense of proportion, faithfulness, and candor, rather than by the severer work of the historian. It is a popular and a fair life of Washington and account of the war for independence.

Irving's personal and literary history is recorded in *The Life and Letters of Washington Irving*, by his nephew, Pierre M. Irving. His death was the occasion of many affectionate and graceful eulogies and addresses, a number of which were gathered into *Irvingiana: a Memorial of Washington Irving*.

*Rip Van Winkle* is from *The Sketch Book*.

Washington Irving was born in New York April 3, 1783, and died at Sunnyside on the Hudson, November 28, 1859.

## INTRODUCTION TO RIP VAN WINKLE.

THE story of Rip Van Winkle purported to have been written by Diedrich Knickerbocker, who was a humorous invention of Irving's, and whose name was familiar to the public as the author of *A History of New York*. The *History* was published in 1809, but it was ten years more before the first number of *The Sketch Book of Geoffrey Crayon, Gent.*, was published. This number, which contained *Rip Van Winkle*, was, like succeeding numbers, written by Irving in England and sent home to America for publication. He laid the scene of the story in the Kaatskills, but he drew upon his imagination and the reports of others for the scenery, not visiting the spot until 1833. The story is not absolutely new; the fairy tale of *The Sleeping Beauty in the Wood* has the same theme; so has the story of Epimenides of Crete, who lived in the sixth or seventh century before Christ. He was said to have fallen asleep in a cave when a boy, and to have awaked at the end of fifty-seven years, his soul, meanwhile, having been growing in stature. There is the legend also of the Seven Sleepers of Ephesus, Christian martyrs who were walled into a cave to which they had fled for refuge, and there were miraculously preserved for two centuries. Among the stories in which the Harz Mountains of Germany are so prolific is one of Peter Klaus, a goatherd who was accosted one day by a young man who silently beckoned him to follow, and led him to a secluded spot, where he found twelve knights playing, voiceless, at skittles. He saw a can of wine which was very fragrant, and, drinking of it, was thrown into a deep sleep, from which he did not wake for twenty years. The story gives

incidents of his awaking and of the changes which he found in the village to which he returned. This story, which was published with others in 1800, may very likely have been the immediate suggestion to Irving, who has taken nearly the same framework. The humorous additions which he has made, and the grace with which he has invested the tale, have caused his story to supplant earlier ones in the popular mind, so that Rip Van Winkle has passed into familiar speech, and allusions to him are clearly understood by thousands who have never read Irving's story. The recent dramatizing of the story, though following the outline only, has done much to fix the conception of the character. The story appeals very directly to a common sentiment of curiosity as to the future, which is not far removed from what some have regarded as an instinct of the human mind pointing to personal immortality. The name Van Winkle was happily chosen by Irving, but not invented by him. The printer of the *Sketch Book*, for one, bore the name. The name Knickerbocker, also, is among the Dutch names, but Irving's use of it has made it representative. In *The Author's Apology*, which he prefixed to a new edition of the *History of New York*, he says: "I find its very name become a 'household word,' and used to give the home stamp to everything recommended for popular acceptance, such as Knickerbocker societies; Knickerbocker insurance companies; Knickerbocker steamboats; Knickerbocker omnibuses, Knickerbocker bread, and Knickerbocker ice; and . . . New Yorkers of Dutch descent priding themselves upon being 'genuine Knickerbockers.'"



## RIP VAN WINKLE.

A POSTHUMOUS WRITING OF DIEDRICH KNICKERBOCKER.

By Woden, God of Saxons,  
From whence comes Wensday, that is Wodensday.  
Truth is a thing that ever I will keep  
Unto thylke day in which I creep into  
My sepulchre.

CARTWRIGHT.<sup>1</sup>

THE following tale was found among the papers of the late Diedrich Knickerbocker, an old gentleman of New York, who was very curious in the Dutch history of the province, and the manners of the descendants from its primitive settlers. His historical researches, however, did not lie so much among books as among men; for the former are lamentably scanty on his favorite topics; whereas he found the old burghers, and still more their wives, rich in that legendary lore so invaluable to true history. Whenever, therefore, he happened upon a genuine Dutch family, snugly shut up in its low-roofed farmhouse under a spreading sycamore, he looked upon it as a little clasped volume of black-letter, and studied it with the zeal of a book-worm.

The result of all these researches was a history of the province during the reign of the Dutch governors, which he published some years since. There have been various opinions as to the literary character of his work, and, to tell the truth, it is not a whit better than it should be. Its chief merit is its scrupulous accuracy, which indeed was a little questioned on its first appearance, but has since been completely established; and it is now admitted into all historical collections, as a book of unquestionable authority.

The old gentleman died shortly after the publication of his work, and now that he is dead and gone, it cannot do much harm

---

<sup>1</sup> William Cartwright, 1611-1643, was a friend and disciple of Ben Jonson.

to his memory<sup>1</sup> to say that his time might have been much better employed in weightier labors. He, however, was apt to ride his hobby his own way ; and though it did now and then kick up the dust a little in the eyes of his neighbors, and grieve the spirit of some friends, for whom he felt the truest deference and affection ; yet his errors and follies are remembered "more in sorrow than in anger," and it begins to be suspected that he never intended to injure or offend. But however his memory may be appreciated by critics, it is still held dear by many folk, whose good opinion is worth having ; particularly by certain biscuit-bakers, who have gone so far as to imprint his likeness on their new-year cakes ;<sup>2</sup> and have thus given him a chance for immortality, almost equal to the being stamped on a Waterloo Medal, or a Queen Anne's Farthing.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *The History of New York* had given offence to many old New Yorkers because of its saucy treatment of names which were held in veneration as those of founders of families, and its general burlesque of Dutch character. Among the critics was a warm friend of Irving, Gulian C. Verplanck, who in a discourse before the New York Historical Society plainly said : "It is painful to see a mind, as admirable for its exquisite perception of the beautiful as it is for its quick sense of the ridiculous, wasting the richness of its fancy on an ungrateful theme, and its exuberant humor in a coarse caricature." Irving took the censure good-naturedly, and as he read Verplanck's words just as he was finishing the story of *Rip Van Winkle*, he gave them this playful notice in the introduction.

<sup>2</sup> An oblong seed-cake, still made in New York at New Year's time, and of Dutch origin.

<sup>3</sup> There was a popular story that only three farthings were struck in Queen Anne's reign ; that two were in public keeping, and that the third was no one knew where, but that its lucky finder would be able to hold it at an enormous price. As a matter of fact there were eight coinings of farthings in the reign of Queen Anne, and numismatists do not set a high value on the piece.

WHOEVER has made a voyage up the Hudson must remember the Kaatskill Mountains. They are a dismembered branch of the great Appalachian family, and are seen away to the west of the river, swelling up to a noble height, and lording it over the surrounding country. Every change of season, every change of weather, indeed, every hour of the day, produces some change in the magical hues and shapes of these mountains, and they are regarded by all the good wives, far and near, as perfect barometers. When the weather is fair and settled, they are clothed in blue and purple, and print their bold outlines on the clear evening sky; but sometimes when the rest of the landscape is cloudless they will gather a hood of gray vapors about their summits, which, in the last rays of the setting sun, will glow and light up like a crown of glory.

At the foot of these fairy<sup>1</sup> mountains, the voyager may have descried the light smoke curling up from a village, whose shingle-roofs gleam among the trees, just where the blue tints of the upland melt away into the fresh green of the nearer landscape. It is a little village of great antiquity, having been founded by some of the Dutch colonists in the early time of the province, just about the beginning of the government of the good Peter Stuyvesant,<sup>2</sup> (may he rest in peace!) and there were some of the houses of the original settlers standing within a few years, built of small yellow

<sup>1</sup> A light touch to help the reader into a proper spirit for receiving the tale.

<sup>2</sup> Stuyvesant was governor of New Netherlands from 1647 to 1664. He plays an important part in *Knickerbocker's History of New York*, as he did in actual life. Until quite recently a pear tree was shown on the Bowery, said to have been planted by him.

bricks brought from Holland, having latticed windows and gable fronts, surmounted with weathercocks.

In that same village, and in one of these very houses (which, to tell the precise truth, was sadly time-worn and weather-beaten), there lived many years since, while the country was yet a province of Great Britain, a simple, good-natured fellow, of the name of Rip Van Winkle. He was a descendant of the Van Winkles who figured so gallantly in the chivalrous days of Peter Stuyvesant, and accompanied him to the siege of Fort Christina.<sup>1</sup> He inherited, however, but little of the martial character of his ancestors. I have observed that he was a simple, good-natured man; he was, moreover, a kind neighbor, and an obedient hen-pecked husband. Indeed, to the latter circumstance might be owing that meekness of spirit which gained him such universal popularity; for those men are most apt to be obsequious and conciliating abroad, who are under the discipline of shrews at home. Their tempers, doubtless, are rendered pliant and malleable in the fiery furnace of domestic tribulation; and a curtain lecture is worth all the sermons in the world for teaching the virtues of patience and long-suffering. A termagant wife may, therefore, in some respects be considered a tolerable blessing, and if so, Rip Van Winkle was thrice blessed.

Certain it is, that he was a great favorite among all the good wives of the village, who, as usual with the amiable sex, took his part in all family squabbles; and never failed, whenever they talked those matters

<sup>1</sup> The Van Winkles appear in the illustrious catalogue of heroes who accompanied Stuyvesant to Fort Christina, and were

“Brimful of wrath and cabbage.”

See *History of New York*, book VI. chap. viii.



over in their evening gossipings, to lay all the blame on Dame Van Winkle. The children of the village, too, would shout with joy whenever he approached. He assisted at their sports, made their playthings, taught them to fly kites and shoot marbles, and told them long stories of ghosts, witches, and Indians. Whenever he went dodging about the village, he was surrounded by a troop of them, hanging on his skirts, clambering on his back, and playing a thousand tricks on him with impunity; and not a dog would bark at him throughout the neighborhood.

The great error in Rip's composition was an insuperable aversion to all kinds of profitable labor. It could not be from the want of assiduity or perseverance; for he would sit on a wet rock, with a rod as long and heavy as a Tartar's lance, and fish all day without a murmur, even though he should not be encouraged by a single nibble. He would carry a fowling-piece on his shoulder for hours together, trudging through woods and swamps, and up hill and down dale, to shoot a few squirrels or wild pigeons. He would never refuse to assist a neighbor, even in the roughest toil, and was a foremost man at all country frolics for husking Indian corn, or building stone-fences; the women of the village, too, used to employ him to run their errands, and to do such little odd jobs as their less obliging husbands would not do for them. In a word, Rip was ready to attend to anybody's business but his own; but as to doing family duty, and keeping his farm in order, he found it impossible.

In fact, he declared it was of no use to work on his farm; it was the most pestilent little piece of ground in the whole country; everything about it went wrong,

and would go wrong, in spite of him. His fences were continually falling to pieces ; his cow would either go astray or get among the cabbages ; weeds were sure to grow quicker in his fields than anywhere else ; the rain always made a point of setting in just as he had some out-door work to do ; so that though his patrimonial estate had dwindled away under his management, acre by acre, until there was little more left than a mere patch of Indian corn and potatoes, yet it was the worst-conditioned farm in the neighborhood.

His children, too, were as ragged and wild as if they belonged to nobody. His son Rip, an urchin begotten in his own likeness, promised to inherit the habits, with the old clothes of his father. He was generally seen trooping like a colt at his mother's heels, equipped in a pair of his father's cast-off galligaskins, which he had much ado to hold up with one hand, as a fine lady does her train in bad weather.

Rip Van Winkle, however, was one of those happy mortals, of foolish, well-oiled dispositions, who take the world easy, eat white bread or brown, whichever can be got with least thought or trouble, and would rather starve on a penny than work for a pound. If left to himself, he would have whistled life away in perfect contentment ; but his wife kept continually dinning in his ears about his idleness, his carelessness, and the ruin he was bringing on his family. Morning, noon, and night her tongue was incessantly going, and everything he said or did was sure to produce a torrent of household eloquence. Rip had but one way of replying to all lectures of the kind, and that, by frequent use, had grown into a habit. He shrugged his shoulders, shook his head, cast up his eyes, but said nothing. This, however, always provoked a fresh volley

from his wife; so that he was fain to draw off his forces, and take to the outside of the house — the only side which, in truth, belongs to a henpecked husband.

Rip's sole domestic adherent was his dog Wolf, who was as much henpecked as his master; for Dame Van Winkle regarded them as companions in idleness, and even looked upon Wolf with an evil eye, as the cause of his master's going so often astray. True it is, in all points of spirit befitting an honorable dog, he was as courageous an animal as ever scoured the woods — but what courage can withstand the ever-during and all-besetting terrors of a woman's tongue? The moment Wolf entered the house his crest fell, his tail drooped to the ground, or curled between his legs, he sneaked about with a gallows air, casting many a side-long glance at Dame Van Winkle, and at the least flourish of a broomstick or ladle he would fly to the door with yelping precipitation.

Times grew worse and worse with Rip Van Winkle as years of matrimony rolled on; a tart temper never mellows with age, and a sharp tongue is the only edged tool that grows keener with constant use. For a long while he used to console himself, when driven from home, by frequenting a kind of perpetual club of the sages, philosophers, and other idle personages of the village; which held its sessions on a bench before a small inn, designated by a rubicund portrait of His Majesty George the Third. Here they used to sit in the shade through a long lazy summer's day, talking listlessly over village gossip, or telling endless sleepy stories about nothing. But it would have been worth any statesman's money to have heard the profound discussions that sometimes took place, when by chance an old newspaper fell into their hands from some passing

traveller. How solemnly they would listen to the contents, as drawled out by Derrick Van Bummel, the school-master, a dapper learned little man, who was not to be daunted by the most gigantic word in the dictionary; and how sagely they would deliberate upon public events some months after they had taken place.

The opinions of this junta were completely controlled by Nicholas Vedder, a patriarch of the village, and landlord of the inn, at the door of which he took his seat from morning till night, just moving sufficiently to avoid the sun and keep in the shade of a large tree; so that the neighbors could tell the hour by his movements as accurately as by a sun-dial. It is true he was rarely heard to speak, but smoked his pipe incessantly. His adherents, however (for every great man has his adherents), perfectly understood him, and knew how to gather his opinions. When anything that was read or related displeased him, he was observed to smoke his pipe vehemently, and to send forth short, frequent and angry puffs; but when pleased, he would inhale the smoke slowly and tranquilly, and emit it in light and placid clouds; and sometimes, taking the pipe from his mouth, and letting the fragrant vapor curl about his nose, would gravely nod his head in token of perfect approbation.

From even this stronghold the unlucky Rip was at length routed by his termagant wife, who would suddenly break in upon the tranquillity of the assemblage and call the members all to naught; nor was that august personage, Nicholas Vedder himself, sacred from the daring tongue of this terrible virago, who charged him outright with encouraging her husband in habits of idleness.

Poor Rip was at last reduced almost to despair;



and his only alternative, to escape from the labor of the farm and clamor of his wife, was to take gun in hand and stroll away into the woods. Here he would sometimes seat himself at the foot of a tree, and share the contents of his wallet with Wolf, with whom he sympathized as a fellow-sufferer in persecution. "Poor Wolf," he would say, "thy mistress leads thee a dog's life of it; but never mind, my lad, whilst I live thou shalt never want a friend to stand by thee!" Wolf would wag his tail, look wistfully in his master's face, and if dogs can feel pity I verily believe he reciprocated the sentiment with all his heart.

In a long ramble of the kind on a fine autumnal day, Rip had unconsciously scrambled to one of the highest parts of the Kaatskill Mountains. He was after his favorite sport of squirrel shooting, and the still solitudes had echoed and reëchoed with the reports of his gun. Panting and fatigued, he threw himself, late in the afternoon, on a green knoll, covered with mountain herbage, that crowned the brow of a precipice. From an opening between the trees he could overlook all the lower country for many a mile of rich woodland. He saw at a distance the lordly Hudson, far, far below him, moving on its silent but majestic course, with the reflection of a purple cloud, or the sail of a lagging bark, here and there sleeping on its glassy bosom, and at last losing itself in the blue highlands.

On the other side he looked down into a deep mountain glen, wild, lonely, and shagged, the bottom filled with fragments from the impending cliffs, and scarcely lighted by the reflected-rays of the setting sun. For some time Rip lay musing on this scene; evening was gradually advancing; the mountains began to throw

their long blue shadows over the valleys; he saw that it would be dark long before he could reach the village, and he heaved a heavy sigh when he thought of encountering the terrors of Dame Van Winkle.

As he was about to descend, he heard a voice from a distance, hallooing, "Rip Van Winkle! Rip Van Winkle!" He looked round, but could see nothing but a crow winging its solitary flight across the mountain. He thought his fancy must have deceived him, and turned again to descend, when he heard the same cry ring through the still evening air: "Rip Van Winkle! Rip Van Winkle!" — at the same time Wolf bristled up his back, and giving a low growl, skulked to his master's side, looking fearfully down into the glen. Rip now felt a vague apprehension stealing over him; he looked anxiously in the same direction, and perceived a strange figure slowly toiling up the rocks, and bending under the weight of something he carried on his back. He was surprised to see any human being in this lonely and unfrequented place; but supposing it to be some one of the neighborhood in need of his assistance, he hastened down to yield it.

On nearer approach he was still more surprised at the singularity of the stranger's appearance. He was a short, square-built old fellow, with thick bushy hair, and a grizzled beard. His dress was of the antique Dutch fashion: a cloth jerkin strapped round the waist, several pair of breeches, the outer one of ample volume, decorated with rows of buttons down the sides, and bunches at the knees. He bore on his shoulder a stout keg, that seemed full of liquor, and made signs for Rip to approach and assist him with the load. Though rather shy and distrustful of this new acquaintance, Rip complied with his usual alac-

rity; and mutually relieving one another, they clambered up a narrow gully, apparently the dry bed of a mountain torrent. As they ascended, Rip every now and then heard long rolling peals like distant thunder, that seemed to issue out of a deep ravine, or rather cleft, between lofty rocks, toward which their rugged path conducted. He paused for a moment, but supposing it to be the muttering of one of those transient thunder-showers which often take place in mountain heights, he proceeded. Passing through the ravine, they came to a hollow, like a small amphitheatre, surrounded by perpendicular precipices, over the brinks of which impending trees shot their branches, so that you only caught glimpses of the azure sky and the bright evening cloud. During the whole time Rip and his companion had labored on in silence; for though the former marvelled greatly what could be the object of carrying a keg of liquor up this wild mountain, yet there was something strange and incomprehensible about the unknown, that inspired awe and checked familiarity.

On entering the amphitheatre, new objects of wonder presented themselves. On a level spot in the centre was a company of odd-looking personages playing at ninepins. They were dressed in a quaint outlandish fashion; some wore short doublets, others jerkins, with long knives in their belts, and most of them had enormous breeches of similar style with that of the guide's. Their visages, too, were peculiar; one had a large beard, broad face, and small piggyish eyes; the face of another seemed to consist entirely of nose, and was surmounted by a white sugar-loaf hat, set off with a little red cock's tail. They all had beards, of various shapes and colors. There was one who seemed to be

the commander. He was a stout old gentleman, with a weather-beaten countenance; he wore a laced doublet, broad belt and hanger, high-crowned hat and feather, red stockings, and high-heeled shoes, with roses in them. The whole group reminded Rip of the figures in an old Flemish painting in the parlor of Dominie Van Shaick, the village parson, which had been brought over from Holland at the time of the settlement.

What seemed particularly odd to Rip was, that though these folks were evidently amusing themselves, yet they maintained the gravest faces, the most mysterious silence, and were, withal, the most melancholy party of pleasure he had ever witnessed. Nothing interrupted the stillness of the scene but the noise of the balls, which, whenever they were rolled, echoed along the mountains like rumbling peals of thunder.

As Rip and his companion approached them, they suddenly desisted from their play, and stared at him with such fixed, statue-like gaze, and such strange, uncouth, lack-lustre countenances, that his heart turned within him, and his knees smote together. His companion now emptied the contents of the keg into large flagons, and made signs to him to wait upon the company. He obeyed with fear and trembling; they quaffed the liquor in profound silence, and then returned to their game.

By degrees Rip's awe and apprehension subsided. He even ventured, when no eye was fixed upon him, to taste the beverage, which he found had much of the flavor of excellent Hollands. He was naturally a thirsty soul, and was soon tempted to repeat the draught. One taste provoked another; and he reiterated his visits to the flagon so often that at length his



senses were overpowered, his eyes swam in his head, his head gradually declined, and he fell into a deep sleep.

On waking, he found himself on the green knoll whence he had first seen the old man of the glen. He rubbed his eyes — it was a bright, sunny morning. The birds were hopping and twittering among the bushes, and the eagle was wheeling aloft, and breasting the pure mountain breeze. “Surely,” thought Rip, “I have not slept here all night.” He recalled the occurrences before he fell asleep. The strange man with a keg of liquor — the mountain ravine — the wild retreat among the rocks — the woe-begone party at nine-pins — the flagon — “Oh! that flagon! that wicked flagon!” thought Rip — “what excuse shall I make to Dame Van Winkle?”

He looked round for his gun, but in place of the clean, well-oiled fowling-piece, he found an old fire-lock lying by him, the barrel incrustated with rust, the lock falling off, and the stock worm-eaten. He now suspected that the grave roisters of the mountain had put a trick upon him, and, having dosed him with liquor, had robbed him of his gun. Wolf, too, had disappeared, but he might have strayed away after a squirrel or partridge. He whistled after him, and snouted his name, but all in vain; the echoes repeated his whistle and shout, but no dog was to be seen.

He determined to revisit the scene of the last evening’s gambol, and if he met with any of the party, to demand his dog and gun. As he rose to walk, he found himself stiff in the joints, and wanting in his usual activity. “These mountain beds do not agree with me,” thought Rip, “and if this frolic should lay me up with a fit of the rheumatism, I shall have a

blessed time with Dame Van Winkle." With some difficulty he got down into the glen; he found the gully up which he and his companion had ascended the preceding evening; but to his astonishment a mountain stream was now foaming down it, leaping from rock to rock, and filling the glen with babbling murmurs. He, however, made shift to scramble up its sides, working his toilsome way through thickets of birch, sassafras, and witch-hazel, and sometimes tripped up or entangled by the wild grapevines that twisted their coils or tendrils from tree to tree, and spread a kind of network in his path.

At length he reached to where the ravine had opened through the cliffs to the amphitheatre; but no traces of such opening remained. The rocks presented a high, impenetrable wall, over which the torrent came tumbling in a sheet of feathery foam, and fell into a broad, deep basin, black from the shadows of the surrounding forest. Here, then, poor Rip was brought to a stand. He again called and whistled after his dog; he was only answered by the cawing of a flock of idle crows, sporting high in air about a dry tree that overhung a sunny precipice; and who, secure in their elevation, seemed to look down and scoff at the poor man's perplexities. What was to be done? the morning was passing away, and Rip felt famished for want of his breakfast. He grieved to give up his dog and gun; he dreaded to meet his wife; but it would not do to starve among the mountains. He shook his head, shouldered the rusty firelock, and, with a heart full of trouble and anxiety, turned his steps homeward.

As he approached the village he met a number of people, but none whom he knew, which somewhat sur-

prised him, for he had thought himself acquainted with every one in the country round. Their dress, too, was of a different fashion from that to which he was accustomed. They all stared at him with equal marks of surprise, and whenever they cast their eyes upon him, invariably stroked their chins. The constant recurrence of this gesture induced Rip, involuntarily, to do the same, when, to his astonishment, he found his beard had grown a foot long !

He had now entered the skirts of the village. A troop of strange children ran at his heels, hooting after him, and pointing at his gray beard. The dogs, too, not one of which he recognized for an old acquaintance, barked at him as he passed. The very village was altered ; it was larger and more populous. There were rows of houses which he had never seen before, and those which had been his familiar haunts had disappeared. Strange names were over the doors — strange faces at the windows, — everything was strange. His mind now misgave him ; he began to doubt whether both he and the world around him were not bewitched. Surely this was his native village, which he had left but the day before. There stood the Kaatskill Mountains — there ran the silver Hudson at a distance — there was every hill and dale precisely as it had always been — Rip was sorely perplexed — “ That flagon last night,” thought he, “ has addled my poor head sadly ! ”

It was with some difficulty that he found the way to his own house, which he approached with silent awe, expecting every moment to hear the shrill voice of Dame Van Winkle. He found the house gone to decay — the roof fallen in, the windows shattered, and the doors off the hinges. A half-starved dog that

looked like Wolf was skulking about it. Rip called him by name, but the cur snarled, showed his teeth, and passed on. This was an unkind cut indeed — “My very dog,” sighed poor Rip, “has forgotten me!”

He entered the house, which, to tell the truth, Dame Van Winkle had always kept in neat order. It was empty, forlorn, and apparently abandoned. This desolateness overcame all his connubial fears — he called loudly for his wife and children — the lonely chambers rang for a moment with his voice, and then again all was silence.

He now hurried forth, and hastened to his old resort, the village inn — but it, too, was gone. A large, rickety wooden building stood in its place, with great gaping windows, some of them broken and mended with old hats and petticoats, and over the door was painted, “The Union Hotel, by Jonathan Doolittle.” Instead of the great tree that used to shelter the quiet little Dutch inn of yore, there now was reared a tall naked pole, with something on the top that looked like a red night-cap, and from it was fluttering a flag, on which was a singular assemblage of stars and stripes — all this was strange and incomprehensible. He recognized on the sign, however, the ruby face of King George, under which he had smoked so many a peaceful pipe; but even this was singularly metamorphosed. The red coat was changed for one of blue and buff, a sword was held in the hand instead of a sceptre, the head was decorated with a cocked hat, and underneath was painted in large characters, GENERAL WASHINGTON.

There was, as usual, a crowd of folk about the door, but none that Rip recollected. The very character of



the people seemed changed. There was a busy, bustling, disputatious tone about it, instead of the accustomed phlegm and drowsy tranquillity. He looked in vain for the sage Nicholas Vedder, with his broad face, double chin, and fair long pipe, uttering clouds of tobacco-smoke instead of idle speeches; or Van Bummel, the school-master, doling forth the contents of an ancient newspaper. In place of these, a lean, bilious-looking fellow, with his pockets full of hand-bills, was haranguing vehemently about rights of citizens — elections — members of congress — liberty — Bunker's Hill — heroes of seventy-six — and other words, which were a perfect Babylonish jargon to the bewildered Van Winkle.

The appearance of Rip, with his long grizzled beard, his rusty fowling-piece, his uncouth dress, and an army of women and children at his heels, soon attracted the attention of the tavern-politicians. They crowded round him, eying him from head to foot with great curiosity. The orator bustled up to him, and, drawing him partly aside, inquired "on which side he voted?" Rip started in vacant stupidity. Another short but busy little fellow pulled him by the arm, and, rising on tiptoe, inquired in his ear, "Whether he was Federal or Democrat?" Rip was equally at a loss to comprehend the question; when a knowing, self-important old gentleman, in a sharp cocked hat, made his way through the crowd, putting them to the right and left with his elbows as he passed, and planting himself before Van Winkle, with one arm akimbo, the other resting on his cane, his keen eyes and sharp hat penetrating, as it were, into his very soul, demanded in an austere tone, "what brought him to the election with a gun on his shoulder, and a mob at his

heels, and whether he meant to breed a riot in the village?" — "Alas! gentlemen," cried Rip, somewhat dismayed, "I am a poor quiet man, a native of the place, and a loyal subject of the king, God bless him!"

Here a general shout burst from the bystanders — "A tory! a tory! a spy! a refugee! hustle him! away with him!" It was with great difficulty that the self-important man in the cocked hat restored order; and, having assumed a tenfold austerity of brow, demanded again of the unknown culprit what he came there for, and whom he was seeking? The poor man humbly assured him that he meant no harm, but merely came there in search of some of his neighbors, who used to keep about the tavern.

"Well — who are they? — name them."

Rip bethought himself a moment, and inquired, "Where's Nicholas Vedder?"

There was a silence for a little while, when an old man replied, in a thin, piping voice: "Nicholas Vedder! why, he is dead and gone these eighteen years! There was a wooden tombstone in the churchyard that used to tell all about him, but that's rotten and gone too."

"Where's Brom Dutcher?"

"Oh, he went off to the army in the beginning of the war; some say he was killed at the storming of Stony Point<sup>1</sup> — others say he was drowned in a squall at the foot of Antony's Nose.<sup>2</sup> I don't know — he never came back again."

<sup>1</sup> On the Hudson. The place is famous for the daring assault made by Mad Anthony Wayne, July 15, 1779.

<sup>2</sup> A few miles above Stony Point is the promontory of Antony's Nose. If we are to believe Diedrich Knickerbocker, it

“Where’s Van Bummel, the school-master?”

“He went off to the wars too, was a great militia general, and is now in Congress.”

Rip’s heart died away at hearing of these sad changes in his home and friends, and finding himself thus alone in the world. Every answer puzzled him too, by treating of such enormous lapses of time, and of matters which he could not understand: war — Congress — Stony Point; he had no courage to ask after any more friends, but cried out in despair, “Does nobody here know Rip Van Winkle?”

“Oh, Rip Van Winkle!” exclaimed two or three, “Oh, to be sure! that’s Rip Van Winkle yonder, leaning against the tree.”

Rip looked, and beheld a precise counterpart of himself, as he went up the mountain: apparently as lazy, and certainly as ragged. The poor fellow was now completely confounded. He doubted his own identity, and whether he was himself or another man.

was named after Antony Van Corlear, Stuyvesant’s trumpeter. “It must be known, then, that the nose of Antony the trumpeter was of a very lusty size, strutting boldly from his countenance like a mountain of Golconda. . . . Now thus it happened, that bright and early in the morning the good Antony, having washed his burly visage, was leaning over the quarter railing of the galley, contemplating it in the glassy wave below. Just at this moment the illustrious sun, breaking in all his splendor from behind a high bluff of the highlands, did dart one of his most potent beams full upon the refulgent nose of the sounder of brass — the reflection of which shot straightway down, hissing hot, into the water and killed a mighty sturgeon that was sporting beside the vessel! . . . When this astonishing miracle came to be made known to Peter Stuyvesant he . . . marvelled exceedingly; and as a monument thereof, he gave the name of *Antony’s Nose* to a stout promontory in the neighborhood, and it has continued to be called Antony’s Nose ever since that time.” *History of New York*, book VI. chap. iv.

In the midst of his bewilderment, the man in the cocked hat demanded who he was, and what was his name?

"God knows," exclaimed he, at his wit's end; "I'm not myself — I'm somebody else — that's me yonder — no — that's somebody else got into my shoes — I was myself last night, but I fell asleep on the mountain, and they've changed my gun, and everything's changed, and I'm changed, and I can't tell what's my name, or who I am!"

The bystanders began now to look at each other. nod, wink significantly, and tap their fingers against their foreheads. There was a whisper, also, about securing the gun, and keeping the old fellow from doing mischief, at the very suggestion of which the self-important man in the cocked hat retired with some precipitation. At this critical moment a fresh, comely woman pressed through the throng to get a peep at the gray-bearded man. She had a chubby child in her arms, which, frightened at his looks, began to cry. "Hush, Rip," cried she, "hush, you little fool; the old man won't hurt you." The name of the child, the air of the mother, the tone of her voice, all awakened a train of recollections in his mind. "What is your name, my good woman?" asked he.

"Judith Gardenier."

"And your father's name?"

"Ah, poor man, Rip Van Winkle was his name, but it's twenty years since he went away from home with his gun, and never has been heard of since, — his dog came home without him; but whether he shot himself, or was carried away by the Indians, nobody can tell. I was then but a little girl."

Rip had but one question more to ask; and he put it with a faltering voice: —



“Where’s your mother?”

“Oh, she too had died but a short time since; she broke a blood-vessel in a fit of passion at a New England peddler.”

There was a drop of comfort at least, in this intelligence. The honest man could contain himself no longer. He caught his daughter and her child in his arms. “I am your father!” cried he — “Young Rip Van Winkle once — old Rip Van Winkle now! Does nobody know poor Rip Van Winkle?”

All stood amazed, until an old woman tottering out from among the crowd, put her hand to her brow, and peering under it in his face for a moment, exclaimed, “Sure enough it is Rip Van Winkle — it is himself! Welcome home again, old neighbor — Why, where have you been these twenty long years?”

Rip’s story was soon told, for the whole twenty years had been to him but as one night. The neighbors stared when they heard it; some were seen to wink at each other, and put their tongues in their cheeks; and the self-important man in the cocked hat, who when the alarm was over, had returned to the field, screwed down the corners of his mouth, and shook his head — upon which there was a general shaking of the head throughout the assemblage.

It was determined, however, to take the opinion of old Peter Vanderdonk, who was seen slowly advancing up the road. He was a descendant of the historian of that name,<sup>1</sup> who wrote one of the earliest accounts of the province. Peter was the most ancient inhabitant of the village, and well versed in all the wonderful events and traditions of the neighborhood. He recollected Rip at once, and corroborated his story

<sup>1</sup> Adrian Vanderdonk.

in the most satisfactory manner. He assured the company that it was a fact, handed down from his ancestor the historian, that the Kaatskill Mountains had always been haunted by strange beings. That it was affirmed that the great Hendrick Hudson, the first discoverer of the river and country, kept a kind of vigil there every twenty years, with his crew of the Half-moon; being permitted in this way to revisit the scenes of his enterprise, and keep a guardian eye upon the river and the great city called by his name. That his father had once seen them in their old Dutch dresses playing at ninepins in a hollow of the mountain; and that he himself had heard, one summer afternoon, the sound of their balls like distant peals of thunder.

To make a long story short, the company broke up, and returned to the more important concerns of the election. Rip's daughter took him home to live with her; she had a snug well-furnished house, and a stout cheery farmer for a husband, whom Rip recollected for one of the urchins that used to climb upon his back. As to Rip's son and heir, who was the ditto of himself, seen leaning against the tree, he was employed to work on the farm; but evinced an hereditary disposition to attend to anything else but his business.

Rip now resumed his old walks and habits; he soon found many of his former cronies, though all rather the worse for the wear and tear of time; and preferred making friends among the rising generation, with whom he soon grew into great favor.

Having nothing to do at home, and being arrived at that happy age when a man can be idle with impunity, he took his place once more on the bench at the inn door, and was revered as one of the patriarchs

of the village, and a chronicle of the old times "before the war." It was some time before he could get into the regular track of gossip, or could be made to comprehend the strange events that had taken place during his torpor. How that there had been a revolutionary war—that the country had thrown off the yoke of old England—and that, instead of being a subject of his Majesty George the Third, he was now a free citizen of the United States. Rip, in fact, was no politician; the changes of states and empires made but little impression on him; but there was one species of despotism under which he had long groaned, and that was—petticoat government. Happily that was at an end; he had got his neck out of the yoke of matrimony, and could go in and out whenever he pleased, without dreading the tyranny of Dame Van Winkle. Whenever her name was mentioned, however, he shook his head, shrugged his shoulders, and cast up his eyes, which might pass either for an expression of resignation to his fate, or joy at his deliverance.

He used to tell his story to every stranger that arrived at Mr. Doolittle's hotel. He was observed, at first, to vary on some points every time he told it, which was, doubtless, owing to his having so recently awaked. It at last settled down precisely to the tale I have related, and not a man, woman, or child in the neighborhood but knew it by heart. Some always pretended to doubt the reality of it, and insisted that Rip had been out of his head, and that this was one point on which he always remained flighty. The old Dutch inhabitants, however, almost universally gave it full credit. Even to this day they never hear a thunder-storm of a summer afternoon about the Kaats-

kill, but they say Hendrick Hudson and his crew are at their game of ninepins ; and it is a common wish of all henpecked husbands in the neighborhood, when life hangs heavy on their hands, that they might have a quieting draught out of Rip Van Winkle's flagon. |

## NOTE.

The foregoing Tale, one would suspect, had been suggested to Mr. Knickerbocker by a little German superstition about the Emperor Frederick *der Rothbart*,<sup>1</sup> and the Kypphäuser mountain ; the subjoined note, however, which he had appended to the tale, shows that it is an absolute fact, narrated with his usual fidelity.

“ The story of Rip Van Winkle may seem incredible to many, but nevertheless I give it my full belief, for I know the vicinity of our old Dutch settlements to have been very subject to marvellous events and appearances. Indeed, I have heard many stranger stories than this, in the villages along the Hudson ; all of which were too well authenticated to admit of a doubt. I have even talked with Rip Van Winkle myself, who, when last I saw him, was a very old venerable man, and so perfectly rational and consistent on every other point, that I think no conscientious person could refuse to take this into the bargain ; nay, I have seen a certificate on the subject taken before a country justice and signed with a cross, in the justice's own handwriting. The story therefore, is beyond the possibility of doubt.

“ D. K.”

## POSTSCRIPT.

The following are travelling notes from a memorandum-book of Mr. Knickerbocker : —

The Kaatsberg, or Catskill Mountains, have always been a region full of fable. The Indians considered them the abode of spirits, who influenced the weather, spreading sunshine or clouds

---

<sup>1</sup> Frederick I. of Germany, 1121–1190, called Barbarossa, *der Rothbart* (Redbeard or Rufus), was fabled not to have died but to have gone into a long sleep, from which he would awake when Germany should need him. The same legend was told by the Danes of their Holger.



over the landscape, and sending good or bad hunting seasons. They were ruled by an old squaw spirit, said to be their mother. She dwelt on the highest peak of the Catskills, and had charge of the doors of day and night to open and shut them at the proper hour. She hung up the new moons in the skies, and cut up the old ones into stars. In times of drought, if properly propitiated, she would spin light summer clouds out of cobwebs and morning dew, and send them off from the crest of the mountain, flake after flake, like flakes of carded cotton, to float in the air ; until, dissolved by the heat of the sun, they would fall in gentle showers, causing the grass to spring, the fruits to ripen, and the corn to grow an inch an hour. If displeased, however, she would brew up clouds black as ink, sitting in the midst of them like a bottle-bellied spider in the midst of its web ; and when these clouds broke, woe betide the valleys !

In old times, say the Indian traditions, there was a kind of Manitou or Spirit, who kept about the wildest recesses of the Catskill Mountains, and took a mischievous pleasure in wreaking all kinds of evils and vexations upon the red men. Sometimes he would assume the form of a bear, a panther, or a deer, lead the bewildered hunter a weary chase through tangled forest and among ragged rocks ; and then spring off with a loud ho ! ho ! leaving him aghast on the brink of a beetling precipice or raging torrent.

The favorite abode of this Manitou is still shown. It is a great rock or cliff on the loneliest part of the mountains, and from the flowering vines which clamber about it, and the wild flowers which abound in its neighborhood, is known by the name of the Garden Rock. Near the foot of it is a small lake, the haunt of the solitary bittern, with water-snakes basking in the sun on the leaves of the pond-lilies which lie on the surface. This place was held in great awe by the Indians, insomuch that the boldest hunter would not pursue his game within its precincts. Once upon a time, however, a hunter, who had lost his way, penetrated to the Garden Rock, where he beheld a number of gourds placed in the crotches of trees. One of these he seized and made off with it, but in the hurry of his retreat he let it fall among the rocks, when a great stream gushed forth, which washed him away and swept him down precipices, where he was dashed to pieces, and the stream made its way to the Hudson, and continues to flow to the present day ; being the identical stream known by the name of the Kaaters-kill.



## THE LEGEND OF SLEEPY HOLLOW.

FOUND AMONG THE PAPERS OF THE LATE DIEDRICH  
KNICKERBOCKER.

A pleasing land of drowsy head it was,  
Of dreams that wave before the half-shut eye;  
And of gay castles in the clouds that pass,  
Forever flushing round a summer sky.

*Castle of Indolence.<sup>1</sup>*

IN the bosom of one of those spacious coves which indent the eastern shore of the Hudson, at that broad expansion of the river denominated by the ancient Dutch navigators the Tappan Zee,<sup>2</sup> and where they always prudently shortened sail and implored the protection of St. Nicholas<sup>3</sup> when they crossed, there lies a small market town or rural port, which by some is called Greensburgh, but which is more generally and

<sup>1</sup> An exquisite poem by James Thomson, an English poet who lived from 1700 to 1748. In it he describes a beautiful palace with groves and lawns and flowery beds, where everything ministers to the ease and luxury of its lotus-eating inmates. He seems to have gathered his materials from Tasso, an Italian poet of the sixteenth century, and his inspiration from Spenser, an English poet of the same century and the author of *The Faerie Queene*.

<sup>2</sup> The "Mediterranean" of the river, as Irving was pleased to call it, about ten miles long and four wide.

<sup>3</sup> The patron saint of children, also of sailors. Tradition says that he was bishop of Myra in Lydia, and died in 326 A. D. He is revered by the young as the bearer of gifts on Christmas eve. The Dutch know him as Santa Claus (or Klaus). Irving alludes to him frequently in his humorous *History of New York*.

properly known by the name of Tarry Town. This name was given, we are told, in former days, by the good housewives of the adjacent country, from the inveterate propensity of their husbands to linger about the village tavern on market days. Be that as it may, I do not vouch for the fact, but merely advert to it, for the sake of being precise and authentic. Not far from this village, perhaps about two miles, there is a little valley or rather lap of land among high hills, which is one of the quietest places in the whole world. A small brook glides through it, with just murmur enough to lull one to repose; and the occasional whistle of a quail or tapping of a woodpecker is almost the only sound that ever breaks in upon the uniform tranquillity.

I recollect that, when a stripling, my first exploit in squirrel-shooting was in a grove of tall walnut-trees that shades one side of the valley. I had wandered into it at noontime, when all nature is peculiarly quiet, and was startled by the roar of my own gun, as it broke the Sabbath stillness around and was prolonged and reverberated by the angry echoes. If ever I should wish for a retreat<sup>1</sup> whither I might steal from the world and its distractions, and dream quietly away the remnant of a troubled life, I know of none more promising than this little valley.

From the listless repose of the place, and the peculiar character of its inhabitants, who are descendants from the original Dutch settlers, this sequestered glen has long been known by the name of SLEEPY

<sup>1</sup> Irving subsequently bought the little stone cottage where the Van Tassels were said to have lived, enlarged and improved it, and gave it the name of Sunnyside. Here he spent his declining years, thus gratifying the wish implied in the text.

HOLLOW, and its rustic lads are called the Sleepy Hollow Boys throughout all the neighboring country. A drowsy, dreamy influence seems to hang over the land, and to pervade the very atmosphere. Some say that the place was bewitched by a High German doctor, during the early days of the settlement; others, that an old Indian chief, the prophet or wizard of his tribe, held his powwows there before the country was discovered by Master Hendrick Hudson.<sup>1</sup> Certain it is, the place still continues under the sway of some witching power, that holds a spell over the minds of the good people, causing them to walk in a continual reverie. They are given to all kinds of marvelous beliefs; are subject to trances and visions, and frequently see strange sights, and hear music and voices in the air. The whole neighborhood abounds with local tales, haunted spots, and twilight superstitions; stars shoot and meteors glare oftener across the valley than in any other part of the country, and the nightmare, with her whole ninefold,<sup>2</sup> seems to make it the favorite scene of her gambols.

The dominant spirit, however, that haunts this enchanted region, and seems to be commander-in-chief of all the powers of the air, is the apparition of a figure on horseback, without a head. It is said by some to be the ghost of a Hessian trooper, whose head had been carried away by a cannon-ball, in some nameless battle during the Revolutionary War, and who is ever

<sup>1</sup> More commonly known as Henry Hudson. He was an eminent English navigator, who, while seeking a northwest passage to India, discovered the river and the bay that bear his name, the former in 1609 and the latter in 1610. In 1611 a mutinous crew forced him and eight men into a small boat and abandoned them to their fate. They were never heard of afterwards.

<sup>2</sup> "He met the night-mare and her nine-fold." — *King Lear*.

and anon seen by the country folk hurrying along in the gloom of night, as if on the wings of the wind. His haunts are not confined to the valley, but extend at times to the adjacent roads, and especially to the vicinity of a church<sup>1</sup> at no great distance. Indeed, certain of the most authentic historians of those parts, who have been careful in collecting and collating the floating facts concerning this spectre, allege that the body of the trooper having been buried in the churchyard, the ghost rides forth to the scene of battle in nightly quest of his head, and that the rushing speed with which he sometimes passes along the Hollow, like a midnight blast, is owing to his being belated, and in a hurry to get back to the churchyard before daybreak.

Such is the general purport of this legendary superstition, which has furnished materials for many a wild story in that region of shadows; and the spectre is known at all the country firesides, by the name of the Headless Horseman of Sleepy Hollow.

It is remarkable that the visionary propensity I have mentioned is not confined to the native inhabitants of the valley, but is unconsciously imbibed by every one who resides there for a time. However wide awake they may have been before they entered that sleepy region, they are sure, in a little time, to inhale the witching influence of the air, and begin to grow imaginative, to dream dreams, and see apparitions.

I mention this peaceful spot with all possible laud; for it is in such little retired Dutch valleys, found here and there embosomed in the great State of New York, that population, manners, and customs remain

<sup>1</sup> This little Dutch church, which was built in 1699, is said to be still standing.



fixed, while the great torrent of migration and improvement, which is making such incessant changes in other parts of this restless country, sweeps by them unobserved. They are like those little nooks of still water, which border a rapid stream, where we may see the straw and bubble riding quietly at anchor, or slowly revolving in their mimic harbor, undisturbed by the rush of the passing current. Though many years have elapsed since I trod the drowsy shades of Sleepy Hollow, yet I question whether I should not still find the same trees and the same families vegetating in its sheltered bosom.

In this by-place of nature there abode, in a remote period of American history, that is to say, some thirty years since, a worthy wight of the name of Ichabod Crane, who sojourned, or, as he expressed it, "tarried," in Sleepy Hollow, for the purpose of instructing the children of the vicinity. He was a native of Connecticut, a State which supplies the Union with pioneers for the mind as well as for the forest, and sends forth yearly its legions of frontier woodmen and country schoolmasters. The cognomen of Crane was not inapplicable to his person. He was tall, but exceedingly lank, with narrow shoulders, long arms and legs, hands that dangled a mile out of his sleeves, feet that might have served for shovels, and his whole frame most loosely hung together. His head was small, and flat at top, with huge ears, large green glassy eyes, and a long snipe nose, so that it looked like a weathercock perched upon his spindle neck to tell which way the wind blew. To see him striding along the profile of a hill on a windy day, with his clothes bagging and fluttering about him, one might have mistaken him for the genius of famine descending upon the earth, or some scarecrow eloped from a cornfield.

His schoolhouse was a low building of one large room, rudely constructed of logs ; the windows partly glazed, and partly patched with leaves of old copy-books. It was most ingeniously secured at vacant hours, by a withe twisted in the handle of the door, and stakes set against the window shutters ; so that though a thief might get in with perfect ease, he would find some embarrassment in getting out, — an idea most probably borrowed by the architect, Yost Van Houten, from the mystery of an eelpot.<sup>1</sup> The schoolhouse stood in a rather lonely but pleasant situation, just at the foot of a woody hill, with a brook running close by, and a formidable birch-tree growing at one end of it. From hence the low murmur of his pupils' voices, conning over their lessons, might be heard in a drowsy summer's day, like the hum of a beehive ; interrupted now and then by the authoritative voice of the master, in the tone of menace or command ; or, peradventure, by the appalling sound of the birch, as he urged some tardy loiterer along the flowery path of knowledge. Truth to say, he was a conscientious man, and ever bore in mind the golden maxim, "Spare the rod and spoil the child."<sup>2</sup> Ichabod Crane's scholars certainly were not spoiled.

I would not have it imagined, however, that he was one of those cruel potentates of the school who joy in the smart of their subjects ; on the contrary, he administered justice with discrimination rather than

<sup>1</sup> A trap for catching eels, its funnel-shaped aperture favoring their entrance but thwarting their escape.

<sup>2</sup> The thought, but not the wording, is from the Bible, as the following quotations show : —

"He that spareth his rod hateth his son." — Prov. xiii. 24.

"Love is a boy by poets styl'd ;

Then spare the rod and spoil the child." — Butler's *Hudibras*.

severity ; taking the burden off the backs of the weak, and laying it on those of the strong. Your mere puny stripling, that winced at the least flourish of the rod, was passed by with indulgence ; but the claims of justice were satisfied by inflicting a double portion on some little tough, wrong headed, broad-skirted Dutch urchin, who sulked and swelled and grew dogged and sullen beneath the birch. All this he called “ doing his duty by their parents ; ” and he never inflicted a chastisement without following it by the assurance, so consolatory to the smarting urchin, that “ he would remember it and thank him for it the longest day he had to live.”

When school hours were over, he was even the companion and playmate of the larger boys ; and on holiday afternoons would convoy some of the smaller ones home, who happened to have pretty sisters, or good housewives for mothers, noted for the comforts of the cupboard. Indeed, it behooved him to keep on good terms with his pupils. The revenue arising from his school was small, and would have been scarcely sufficient to furnish him with daily bread, for he was a huge feeder, and, though lank, had the dilating powers of an anaconda ; but to help out his maintenance, he was, according to country custom in those parts, boarded and lodged at the houses of the farmers whose children he instructed. With these he lived successively a week at a time, thus going the rounds of the neighborhood, with all his worldly effects tied up in a cotton handkerchief.

That all this might not be too onerous on the purses of his rustic patrons, who are apt to consider the costs of schooling a grievous burden, and schoolmasters as mere drones, he had various ways of rendering him-

self both useful and agreeable. He assisted the farmers occasionally in the lighter labors of their farms, helped to make hay, mended the fences, took the horses to water, drove the cows from pasture, and cut wood for the winter fire. He laid aside, too, all the dominant dignity and absolute sway with which he lorded it in his little empire, the school, and became wonderfully gentle and ingratiating. He found favor in the eyes of the mothers by petting the children, particularly the youngest; and like the lion bold, which whilom so magnanimously the lamb did hold,<sup>1</sup> he would sit with a child on one knee, and rock a cradle with his foot for whole hours together.

In addition to his other vocations, he was the singing-master of the neighborhood, and picked up many bright shillings by instructing the young folks in psalmody. It was a matter of no little vanity to him on Sundays, to take his station in front of the church gallery, with a band of chosen singers; where, in his own mind, he completely carried away the palm from the parson. Certain it is, his voice resounded far above all the rest of the congregation; and there are peculiar quavers still to be heard in that church, and which may even be heard half a mile off, quite to the opposite side of the mill-pond, on a still Sunday morning, which are said to be legitimately descended

<sup>1</sup> In the *New England Primer*, almost the only juvenile book in the early schools of this country, occurs the following rude couplet:—

“The Lion bold  
The Lamb doth hold.”

A coarse woodcut, representing a lion with his paw resting lovingly (!) on a lamb, accompanies the rhymes; and the main object seems to be to impress indelibly on the learner's mind the letter L.



from the nose of Ichabod Crane. Thus, by divers little makeshifts, in that ingenious way which is commonly denominated "by hook and by crook," the worthy pedagogue got on tolerably enough, and was thought, by all who understood nothing of the labor of headwork, to have a wonderfully easy life of it.

The schoolmaster is generally a man of some importance in the female circle of a rural neighborhood; being considered a kind of idle, gentlemanlike person, age, of vastly superior taste and accomplishments to the rough country swains, and, indeed, inferior in learning only to the parson. His appearance, therefore, is apt to occasion some little stir at the tea-table of a farmhouse, and the addition of a supernumerary dish of cakes or sweetmeats, or, peradventure, the parade of a silver teapot. Our man of letters, therefore, was peculiarly happy in the smiles of all the country damsels. How he would figure among them in the churchyard, between services on Sundays! gathering grapes for them from the wild vines that overran the surrounding trees; reciting for their amusement all the epitaphs on the tombstones; or sauntering, with a whole bevy of them, along the banks of the adjacent mill-pond; while the more bashful country bumpkins hung sheepishly back, envying his superior elegance and address.

From his half-itinerant life, also, he was a kind of traveling gazette, carrying the whole budget of local gossip from house to house, so that his appearance was always greeted with satisfaction. He was, moreover, esteemed by the women as a man of great erudition, for he had read several books quite through, and was a perfect master of Cotton Mather's<sup>1</sup> "History of

<sup>1</sup> Cotton Mather was a New England clergyman, son of

New England Witchcraft," in which, by the way, he most firmly and potently believed.

He was, in fact, an odd mixture of small shrewdness and simple credulity. His appetite for the marvelous, and his powers of digesting it, were equally extraordinary; and both had been increased by his residence in this spell-bound region. No tale was too gross or monstrous for his capacious swallow. It was often his delight, after his school was dismissed in the afternoon, to stretch himself on the rich bed of clover bordering the little brook that whimpered by his school-house, and there con over old Mather's direful tales, until the gathering dusk of evening made the printed page a mere mist before his eyes. Then, as he wended his way by swamp and stream and awful woodland, to the farmhouse where he happened to be quartered, every sound of nature, at that witching hour, fluttered his excited imagination,—the moan of the whip-poor-will from the hillside, the boding cry of the tree toad, that harbinger of storm, the dreary hooting of the screech owl, to the sudden rustling in the thicket of birds frightened from their roost. The fireflies, too, which sparkled most vividly in the darkest places, now and then startled him, as one of uncommon brightness would stream across his path; and if, by chance, a huge blockhead of a beetle came winging his blundering flight against him, the poor varlet was ready to give up the ghost, with the idea

Increase Mather and grandson of John Cotton. He was born in Boston in 1663, graduated at Harvard College in 1684, and ordained minister in Boston the same year. He was a diligent and prolific student, his various publications numbering nearly four hundred. Like most persons of his time, he believed in the existence of witches, and thought he was doing God's service in hunting them down. He died in 1728.

that he was struck with a witch's token. His only resource on such occasions, either to drown thought or drive away evil spirits, was to sing psalm tunes; and the good people of Sleepy Hollow, as they sat by their doors of an evening, were often filled with awe at hearing his nasal melody, "in linked sweetness long drawn out,"<sup>1</sup> floating from the distant hill, or along the dusky road.

Another of his sources of fearful pleasure was to pass long winter evenings with the old Dutch wives, as they sat spinning by the fire, with a row of apples roasting and spluttering along the hearth, and listen to their marvellous tales of ghosts and goblins, and haunted fields, and haunted brooks, and haunted bridges, and haunted houses, and particularly of the headless horseman, or Galloping Hessian of the Hollow, as they sometimes called him. He would delight them equally by his anecdotes of witchcraft, and of the direful omens and portentous sights and sounds in the air, which prevailed in the earlier times of Connecticut; and would frighten them woefully with speculations upon comets and shooting stars; and with the alarming fact that the world did absolutely turn round, and that they were half the time topsy-turvy!

But if there was a pleasure in all this, while snugly cuddling in the chimney corner of a chamber that was all of a ruddy glow from the crackling wood fire, and where, of course, no spectre dared to show its face, it was dearly purchased by the terrors of his subsequent walk homewards. What fearful shapes and shadows beset his path, amidst the dim and ghastly glare of a snowy night! With what wistful look did he eye every trembling ray of light streaming across the

<sup>1</sup> From Milton's *L'Allegro*.

waste fields from some distant window ! How often was he appalled by some shrub covered with snow, which, like a sheeted spectre, beset his very path ! How often did he shrink with curdling awe at the sound of his own steps on the frosty crust beneath his feet ; and dread to look over his shoulder, lest he should behold some uncouth being tramping close behind him ! and how often was he thrown into complete dismay by some rushing blast, howling among the trees, in the idea that it was the Galloping Hessian on one of his nightly scourings !

All these, however, were mere terrors of the night, phantoms of the mind that walk in darkness ; and though he had seen many spectres in his time, and been more than once beset by Satan <sup>1</sup> in divers shapes, in his lonely perambulations, yet daylight put an end to all these evils ; and he would have passed a pleasant life of it, in despite of the Devil and all his works, if his path had not been crossed by a being that causes more perplexity to mortal man than ghosts, goblins, and the whole race of witches put together, and that was — a woman.

Among the musical disciples who assembled, one evening in each week, to receive his instructions in psalmody, was Katrina Van Tassel, the daughter and only child of a substantial Dutch farmer. She was a blooming lass of fresh eighteen ; plump as a partridge ; ripe and melting and rosy-cheeked as one of her father's peaches, and universally famed, not merely for her beauty, but her vast expectations. She was withal a little of a coquette, as might be perceived even in

<sup>1</sup> An allusion to the old and widespread belief that ghosts, goblins, and witches were the obedient subjects and emissaries of the Evil One.



her dress, which was a mixture of ancient and modern fashions, as most suited to set off her charms. She wore the ornaments of pure yellow gold, which her great-great-grandmother had brought over from Saardam;<sup>1</sup> the tempting stomacher of the olden time, and withal a provokingly short petticoat, to display the prettiest foot and ankle in the country round.

Ichabod Crane had a soft and foolish heart towards the sex; and it is not to be wondered at, that so tempting a morsel soon found favor in his eyes, more especially after he had visited her in her paternal mansion. Old Baltus Van Tassel was a perfect picture of a thriving, contented, liberal-hearted farmer. He seldom, it is true, sent either his eyes or his thoughts beyond the boundaries of his own farm; but within those everything was snug, happy and well-conditioned. He was satisfied with his wealth, but not proud of it; and piqued himself upon the hearty abundance, rather than the style in which he lived. His stronghold was situated on the banks of the Hudson, in one of those green, sheltered, fertile nooks in which the Dutch farmers are so fond of nestling. A great elm tree spread its broad branches over it, at the foot of which bubbled up a spring of the softest and sweetest water, in a little well formed of a barrel; and then stole sparkling away through the grass, to a neighboring brook, that babbled along among alders and dwarf willows. Hard by the farmhouse was a vast barn, that might have served for a church; every window and crevice of which seemed bursting

<sup>1</sup> Also known as Zaandam, a town of Holland about five miles from Amsterdam, historically famous as the place where Peter the Great of Russia worked as a shipwright and learned how to build ships.

forth with the treasures of the farm ; the flail was busily resounding within it from morning to night ; swallows and martins skimmed twittering about the eaves ; and rows of pigeons, some with one eye turned up, as if watching the weather, some with their heads under their wings or buried in their bosoms, and others swelling, and cooing, and bowing about their dames, were enjoying the sunshine on the roof. Sleek unwieldy porkers were grunting in the repose and abundance of their pens, from whence sallied forth, now and then, troops of sucking pigs, as if to snuff the air. A stately squadron of snowy geese were riding in an adjoining pond, convoying whole fleets of ducks ; regiments of turkeys were gobbling through the farmyard, and Guinea fowls fretting about it, like ill-tempered housewives, with their peevish, discontented cry. Before the barn door strutted the gallant cock, that pattern of a husband, a warrior and a fine gentleman, clapping his burnished wings and crowing in the pride and gladness of his heart, — sometimes tearing up the earth with his feet, and then generously calling his ever-hungry family of wives and children to enjoy the rich morsel which he had discovered.

The pedagogue's mouth watered as he looked upon this sumptuous promise of luxurious winter fare. In his devouring mind's eye, he pictured to himself every roasting-pig running about with a pudding in his belly, and an apple in his mouth ; the pigeons were snugly put to bed in a comfortable pie, and tucked in with a coverlet of crust ; the geese were swimming in their own gravy ; and the ducks pairing cosily in dishes, like snug married couples, with a decent competency of onion sauce. In the porkers he saw carved

out the future sleek side of bacon, and juicy relishing ham; not a turkey but he beheld daintily trussed up, with its gizzard under its wing, and, peradventure, a necklace of savory sausages; and even bright chanticleer himself lay sprawling on his back, in a side dish, with uplifted claws, as if craving that quarter which his chivalrous spirit disdained to ask while living.

As the enraptured Ichabod fancied all this, and as he rolled his great green eyes over the fat meadow lands, the rich fields of wheat, of rye, of buckwheat, and Indian corn, and the orchards burdened with ruddy fruit, which surrounded the warm tenement of Van Tassel, his heart yearned after the damsel who was to inherit these domains, and his imagination expanded with the idea, how they might be readily turned into cash, and the money invested in immense tracts of wild land, and shingle palaces in the wilderness. Nay, his busy fancy already realized his hopes, and presented to him the blooming Katrina, with a whole family of children, mounted on the top of a wagon loaded with household trumpery, with pots and kettles dangling beneath; and he beheld himself bestriding a pacing mare, with a colt at her heels, setting out for Kentucky, Tennessee,<sup>1</sup> — or the Lord knows where!

When he entered the house, the conquest of his heart was complete. It was one of those spacious farmhouses, with high-ridged but lowly sloping roofs, built in the style handed down from the first Dutch settlers; the low projecting eaves forming a piazza along the front, capable of being closed up in bad

<sup>1</sup> At the time the *Sketch Book*, which contains the *Legend of Sleepy Hollow*, was published (1819), the far West that emigrants made their goal was east of the Mississippi.

weather. Under this were hung flails, harness, various utensils of husbandry, and nets for fishing in the neighboring river. Benches were built along the sides for summer use; and a great spinning-wheel at one end, and a churn at the other, showed the various uses to which this important porch might be devoted. From this piazza the wondering Ichabod entered the hall, which formed the centre of the mansion, and the place of usual residence. Here rows of resplendent pewter, ranged on a long dresser, dazzled his eyes. In one corner stood a huge bag of wool, ready to be spun; in another, a quantity of linsey-woolsey just from the loom; ears of Indian corn, and strings of dried apples and peaches, hung in gay festoons along the walls, mingled with the gaud of red peppers; and a door left ajar gave him a peep into the best parlor, where the claw-footed chairs and dark mahogany tables shone like mirrors; andirons, with their accompanying shovel and tongs, glistened from their covert of asparagus tops; mock-oranges and conch-shells decorated the mantelpiece; strings of various-colored birds' eggs were suspended above it; a great ostrich egg was hung from the centre of the room, and a corner cupboard, knowingly left open, displayed immense treasures of old silver and well-mended china.

From the moment Ichabod laid his eyes upon these regions of delight, the peace of his mind was at an end, and his only study was how to gain the affections of the peerless daughter of Van Tassel. In this enterprise, however, he had more real difficulties than generally fell to the lot of a knight-errant of yore,<sup>1</sup> who seldom

<sup>1</sup> A good type of the hero Irving had in mind may be found in Don Quixote, the wandering knight whom Spanish Cervantes immortalized in his inimitable *Don Quixote de la Mancha* (1605).



had anything but giants, enchanters, fiery dragons, and such like easily conquered adversaries, to contend with ; and had to make his way merely through gates of iron and brass, and walls of adamant to the castle keep, where the lady of his heart was confined ; all which he achieved as easily as a man would carve his way to the centre of a Christmas pie ; and then the lady gave him her hand as a matter of course. Ichabod, on the contrary, had to win his way to the heart of a country coquette, beset with a labyrinth of whims and caprices, which were forever presenting new difficulties and impediments ; and he had to encounter a host of fearful adversaries of real flesh and blood, the numerous rustic admirers, who beset every portal to her heart, keeping a watchful and angry eye upon each other, but ready to fly out in the common cause against any new competitor.

Among these, the most formidable was a burly, roaring, roystering blade, of the name of Abraham, or, according to the Dutch abbreviation, Brom Van Brunt, the hero of the country round, which rang with his feats of strength and hardihood. He was broad-shouldered and double-jointed, with short curly black hair, and a bluff but not unpleasant countenance, having a mingled air of fun and arrogance. From his Herculean frame and great powers of limb, he had received the nickname of BROM BONES, by which he was universally known. He was famed for great knowledge and skill in horsemanship, being as dexterous on horseback as a Tartar. He was foremost at all races and cock-fights ; and, with the ascendancy which bodily strength always acquires in rustic life, was the umpire in all disputes, setting his hat on one side, and giving his decisions with an air and tone that

admitted of no gainsay or appeal. He was always ready for either a fight or a frolic; but had more mischief than ill-will in his composition; and with all his overbearing roughness, there was a strong dash of waggish good humor at bottom. He had three or four boon companions, who regarded him as their model, and at the head of whom he scoured the country, attending every scene of feud or merriment for miles round. In cold weather he was distinguished by a fur cap, surmounted with a flaunting fox's tail; and when the folks at a country gathering descried this well-known crest at a distance, whisking about among a squad of hard riders, they always stood by for a squall. Sometimes his crew would be heard dashing along past the farmhouses at midnight, with whoop and halloo, like a troop of Don Cossacks;<sup>1</sup> and the old dames, startled out of their sleep, would listen for a moment till the hurry-scurry had clattered by, and then exclaim, "Ay, there goes Brom Bones and his gang!" The neighbors looked upon him with a mixture of awe, admiration, and good-will; and, when any madcap prank or rustic brawl occurred in the vicinity, always shook their heads, and warranted Brom Bones was at the bottom of it.

This rantipole hero had for some time singled out the blooming Katrina for the object of his uncouth gallantries, and though his amorous toyings were something like the gentle caresses and endearments of

<sup>1</sup> The Cossacks are restless and warlike Russian tribes, of excellent service to the Russian army as scouts, skirmishers, and irregular cavalry. They are widely distributed over the empire, and are popularly known by their localities as the Cossacks of the river Don, of the Danube, of the Black Sea, of the Caucasus, and so on.

a bear, yet it was whispered that she did not altogether discourage his hopes. Certain it is, his advances were signals for rival candidates to retire, who felt no inclination to cross a lion in his amours; inso-much, that when his horse was seen tied to Van Tassel's paling, on a Sunday night, a sure sign that his master was courting, or, as it is termed, "sparking," within, all other suitors passed by in despair, and carried the war into other quarters.

Such was the formidable rival with whom Ichabod Crane had to contend, and, considering all things, a stouter man than he would have shrunk from the competition, and a wiser man would have despaired. He had, however, a happy mixture of pliability and perseverance in his nature; he was in form and spirit like a supple-jack — yielding, but tough; though he bent, he never broke; and though he bowed beneath the slightest pressure, yet, the moment it was away — jerk! — he was as erect, and carried his head as high as ever.

To have taken the field openly against his rival would have been madness; for he was not a man to be thwarted in his amours, any more than that stormy lover, Achilles.<sup>1</sup> Ichabod, therefore, made his advances in a quiet and gently insinuating manner. Under cover of his character of singing-master, he made frequent visits at the farmhouse; not that he had anything to apprehend from the meddlesome interference of parents, which is so often a stumbling-block in the path of lovers. Balt Van Tassel was an easy,

<sup>1</sup> The most famous warrior of the Trojan War. The *Iliad* of Homer begins with the wrath of Achilles, in the tenth year of the war, because Agamemnon had taken from him Briseïs, a beautiful captive, to whom he was strongly attached.



Indulgent soul; he loved his daughter better even than his pipe, and, like a reasonable man and an excellent father, let her have her way in everything. His notable little wife, too, had enough to do to attend to her housekeeping and manage her poultry; for, as she sagely observed, ducks and geese are foolish things, and must be looked after, but girls can take care of themselves. Thus, while the busy dame bustled about the house, or plied her spinning-wheel at one end of the piazza, honest Balt would sit smoking his evening pipe at the other, watching the achievements of a little wooden warrior, who, armed with a sword in each hand, was most valiantly fighting the wind on the pinnacle of the barn. In the mean time, Ichabod would carry on his suit with the daughter by the side of the spring under the great elm, or sauntering along in the twilight, that hour so favorable to the lover's eloquence.

I profess not to know how women's hearts are wooed and won. To me they have always been matters of riddle and admiration. Some seem to have but one vulnerable point, or door of access; while others have a thousand avenues, and may be captured in a thousand different ways. It is a great triumph of skill to gain the former, but a still greater proof of generalship to maintain possession of the latter, for a man must battle for his fortress at every door and window. He who wins a thousand common hearts is therefore entitled to some renown; but he who keeps undisputed sway over the heart of a coquette is indeed a hero. Certain it is, this was not the case with the redoubtable Brom Bones; and from the moment Ichabod Crane made his advances, the interests of the former evidently declined: his horse was no longer



seen tied to the palings on Sunday nights, and a deadly feud gradually arose between him and the preceptor of Sleepy Hollow.

Brom, who had a degree of rough chivalry in his nature, would fain have carried matters to open warfare and have settled their pretensions to the lady, according to the mode of those most concise and simple reasoners, the knights-errant of yore, — by single combat; but Ichabod was too conscious of the superior might of his adversary to enter the lists against him; he had overheard a boast of Bones, that he would “double the schoolmaster up, and lay him on a shelf of his own schoolhouse;” and he was too wary to give him an opportunity. There was something extremely provoking in this obstinately pacific system; it left Brom no alternative but to draw upon the funds of rustic wagghery in his disposition, and to play off boorish practical jokes upon his rival. Ichabod became the object of whimsical persecution to Bones and his gang of rough riders. They harried his hitherto peaceful domains, smoked out his singing-school by stopping up the chimney, broke into the schoolhouse at night, in spite of its formidable fastenings of withe and window stakes, and turned everything topsy-turvy, so that the poor schoolmaster began to think all the witches in the country held their meetings there. But what was still more annoying, Brom took all opportunities of turning him into ridicule in presence of his mistress, and had a scoundrel dog whom he taught to whine in the most ludicrous manner, and introduced as a rival of Ichabod’s, to instruct her in psalmody.

In this way matters went on for some time, without producing any material effect on the relative situations of the contending powers. On a fine autumnal

afternoon, Ichabod, in pensive mood, sat enthroned on the lofty stool from whence he usually watched all the concerns of his little literary realm. In his hand he swayed a ferule, that sceptre of despotic power; the birch of justice reposed on three nails behind the throne, a constant terror to evil doers; while on the desk before him might be seen sundry contraband articles and prohibited weapons, detected upon the persons of idle urchins, such as half-munched apples, popguns, whirligigs, fly-cages, and whole legions of rampant little paper game-cocks. Apparently there had been some appalling act of justice recently inflicted, for his scholars were all busily intent upon their books, or slyly whispering behind them with one eye kept upon the master; and a kind of buzzing stillness reigned throughout the schoolroom. It was suddenly interrupted by the appearance of a negro in tow-cloth jacket and trowsers, a round-crowned fragment of a hat, like the cap of Mercury, and mounted on the back of a ragged, wild, half-broken colt, which he managed with a rope by way of halter. He came clattering up to the school-door with an invitation to Ichabod to attend a merry-making or "quilting-frolic,"<sup>1</sup> to be held that evening at Mynheer Van Tassel's; and having delivered his message with that air of importance and effort at fine language which a negro is apt to display on petty embassies of the kind, he dashed over the brook, and was seen scampering away up the Hollow, full of the importance and hurry of his mission.

<sup>1</sup> "Now were instituted 'quilting-bees,' and 'husking-bees,' and other rural assemblages, where, under the inspiring influence of the fiddle, toil was enlivened by gayety and followed up by the dance."—Irving's *History of New York*.

All was now bustle and hubbub in the late quiet schoolroom. The scholars were hurried through their lessons without stopping at trifles ; those who were nimble skipped over half with impunity, and those who were tardy had a smart application now and then in the rear, to quicken their speed or help them over a tall word. Books were flung aside without being put away on the shelves, inkstands were overturned, benches thrown down, and the whole school was turned loose an hour before the usual time, bursting forth like a legion of young imps, yelping and racketing about the green in joy at their early emancipation.

The gallant Ichabod now spent at least an extra half hour at his toilet, brushing and furbishing up his best, and indeed only suit of rusty black, and arranging his locks by a bit of broken looking-glass that hung up in the schoolhouse. That he might make his appearance before his mistress in the true style of a cavalier, he borrowed a horse from the farmer with whom he was domiciliated, a choleric old Dutchman of the name of Hans Van Ripper, and, thus gallantly mounted, issued forth like a knight-errant in quest of adventures. But it is meet I should, in the true spirit of romantic story, give some account of the looks and equipments of my hero and his steed. The animal he bestrode was a broken-down plow-horse, that had outlived almost everything but its viciousness. He was gaunt and shagged, with a ewe neck, and a head like a hammer ; his rusty mane and tail were tangled and knotted with burs ; one eye had lost its pupil, and was glaring and spectral, but the other had the gleam of a genuine devil in it. Still he must have had fire and mettle in his day, if we may judge from the name he bore of Gunpowder. He had, in



fact, been a favorite steed of his master's, the choleric Van Ripper, who was a furious rider, and had infused, very probably, some of his own spirit into the animal; for, old and broken-down as he looked, there was more of the lurking devil in him than in any young filly in the country.

Ichabod was a suitable figure for such a steed. He rode with short stirrups, which brought his knees nearly up to the pommel of the saddle; his sharp elbows stuck out like grasshoppers'; he carried his whip perpendicularly in his hand, like a sceptre, and as his horse jogged on, the motion of his arms was not unlike the flapping of a pair of wings. A small wool hat rested on the top of his nose, for so his scanty strip of forehead might be called, and the skirts of his black coat fluttered out almost to the horse's tail. Such was the appearance of Ichabod and his steed as they shambled out of the gate of Hans Van Ripper, and it was altogether such an apparition as is seldom to be met with in broad daylight.

It was, as I have said, a fine autumnal day; the sky was clear and serene, and nature wore that rich and golden livery which we always associate with the idea of abundance. The forests had put on their sober brown and yellow, while some trees of the tenderer kind had been nipped by the frosts into brilliant dyes of orange, purple, and scarlet. Streaming files of wild ducks began to make their appearance high in the air; the bark of the squirrel might be heard from the groves of beech and hickory-nuts, and the pensive whistle of the quail at intervals from the neighboring stubble field.

The small birds were taking their farewell banquets. In the fullness of their revelry, they fluttered,



chirping and frolicking from bush to bush, and tree to tree, capricious from the very profusion and variety around them. There was the honest cockrobin, the favorite game of stripling sportsmen, with its loud querulous note; and the twittering blackbirds flying in sable clouds; and the golden-winged woodpecker, with his crimson crest, his broad black gorget, and splendid plumage; and the cedar-bird, with its red-tipt wings and yellow-tipt tail and its little monteiro<sup>1</sup> cap of feathers; and the blue jay, that noisy coxcomb, in his gay light blue coat and white underclothes, screaming and chattering, nodding and bobbing and bowing, and pretending to be on good terms with every songster of the grove.

As Ichabod jogged slowly on his way, his eye, ever open to every symptom of culinary abundance, ranged with delight over the treasures of jolly autumn. On all sides he beheld vast store of apples: some hanging in oppressive opulence on the trees; some gathered into baskets and barrels for the market; others heaped up in rich piles for the cider-press. Farther on he beheld great fields of Indian corn, with its golden ears peeping from their leafy coverts, and holding out the promise of cakes and hasty-pudding; and the yellow pumpkins lying beneath them, turning up their fair round bellies to the sun, and giving ample prospects of the most luxurious of pies; and anon he passed the fragrant buckwheat fields breathing the odor of the beehive, and as he beheld them, soft anticipations stole over his mind of dainty slap-jacks,

<sup>1</sup> Same as *montero* (mon-tă'-rō), a horseman's or huntsman's cap, having a round crown with flaps which could be drawn down over the sides of the face.

"His hat was like a helmet or Spanish *montero*." — BACON.

well buttered, and garnished with honey or treacle, by the delicate little dimpled hand of Katrina Van Tassel.

Thus feeding his mind with many sweet thoughts and "sugared suppositions," he journeyed along the sides of a range of hills which look out upon some of the goodliest scenes of the mighty Hudson. The sun gradually wheeled his broad disk down in the west. The wide bosom of the Tappan Zee lay motionless and glassy, excepting that here and there a gentle undulation waved and prolonged the blue shadow of the distant mountain. A few amber clouds floated in the sky, without a breath of air to move them. The horizon was of a fine golden tint, changing gradually into a pure apple green, and from that into the deep blue of the mid-heaven. A slanting ray lingered on the woody crests of the precipices that overhung some parts of the river, giving greater depth to the dark gray and purple of their rocky sides. A sloop was loitering in the distance, dropping slowly down with the tide, her sail hanging uselessly against the mast; and as the reflection of the sky gleamed along the still water, it seemed as if the vessel was suspended in the air.

It was toward evening that Ichabod arrived at the castle of the Heer Van Tassel, which he found thronged with the pride and flower of the adjacent country. Old farmers, a spare leathern-faced race, in homespun coats and breeches, blue stockings, huge shoes, and magnificent pewter buckles. Their brisk, withered little dames, in close crimped caps, long-waisted short-gowns, homespun petticoats, with scissors and pin-cushions, and gay calico pockets hanging on the outside. Buxom lasses, almost as antiquated as their mothers,

excepting where a straw hat, a fine ribbon, or perhaps a white frock, gave symptoms of city innovation. The sons, in short square-skirted coats, with rows of stupendous brass buttons, and their hair generally queued in the fashion of the times, especially if they could procure an eelskin for the purpose, it being esteemed throughout the country as a potent nourisher and strengthener of the hair.

Brom Bones, however, was the hero of the scene, having come to the gathering on his favorite steed Daredevil, a creature, like himself, full of mettle and mischief, and which no one but himself could manage. He was, in fact, noted for preferring vicious animals, given to all kinds of tricks which kept the rider in constant risk of his neck, for he held a tractable, well-broken horse as unworthy of a lad of spirit.

Fain would I pause to dwell upon the world of charms that burst upon the enraptured gaze of my hero, as he entered the state parlor of Van Tassel's mansion. Not those of the bevy of buxom lasses, with their luxurious display of red and white; but the ample charms of a genuine Dutch country tea-table, in the sumptuous time of autumn. Such heaped-up platters of cakes of various and almost indescribable kinds, known only to experienced Dutch housewives! There was the doughty doughnut, the tender olykoek,<sup>1</sup> and the crisp and crumbling cruller; sweet cakes and short cakes, ginger cakes and honey cakes, and the whole family of cakes. And then there were apple pies, and peach pies, and pumpkin pies; besides slices of ham and smoked beef; and moreover delec-

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *ō'-li-cook*, from a Dutch word that means *oil-cake*. A cake of dough sweetened and fried in lard, — something like the cruller, but richer and tenderer.



table dishes of preserved plums, and peaches, and pears, and quinces ; not to mention broiled shad and roasted chickens ; together with bowls of milk and cream, all mingled higgledy-piggledy, pretty much as I have enumerated them, with the motherly teapot sending up its clouds of vapor from the midst — Heaven bless the mark ! I want breath and time to discuss this banquet as it deserves, and am too eager to get on with my story. Happily, Ichabod Crane was not in so great a hurry as his historian, but did ample justice to every dainty.

He was a kind and thankful creature, whose heart dilated in proportion as his skin was filled with good cheer, and whose spirits rose with eating, as some men's do with drink. He could not help, too, rolling his large eyes round him as he ate, and chuckling with the possibility that he might one day be lord of all this scene of almost unimaginable luxury and splendor. Then, he thought, how soon he'd turn his back upon the old school-house ; snap his fingers in the face of Hans Van Ripper, and every other niggardly patron, and kick any itinerant pedagogue out of doors that should dare to call him comrade !

Old Baltus Van Tassel moved about among his guests with a face dilated with content and good-humor, round and jolly as the harvest moon. His hospitable attentions were brief, but expressive, being confined to a shake of the hand, a slap on the shoulder, a loud laugh, and a pressing invitation to "fall to, and help themselves."

And now the sound of the music from the common room, or hall, summoned to the dance. The musician was an old gray-headed negro, who had been the itinerant orchestra of the neighborhood for more than



half a century. His instrument was as old and battered as himself. The greater part of the time he scraped on two or three strings, accompanying every movement of the bow with a motion of the head; bowing almost to the ground, and stamping with his foot whenever a fresh couple were to start.

Ichabod prided himself upon his dancing as much as upon his vocal powers. Not a limb, not a fibre about him was idle; and to have seen his loosely hung frame in full motion, and clattering about the room, you would have thought St. Vitus himself, that blessed patron of the dance, was figuring before you in person. He was the admiration of all the negroes; who, having gathered, of all ages and sizes, from the farm and the neighborhood, stood forming a pyramid of shining black faces at every door and window; gazing with delight at the scene; rolling their white eye-balls, and showing grinning rows of ivory from ear to ear. How could the flogger of urchins be otherwise than animated and joyous? the lady of his heart was his partner in the dance, and smiling graciously in reply to all his amorous oglings; while Brom Bones, sorely smitten with love and jealousy, sat brooding by himself in one corner.

When the dance was at an end, Ichabod was attracted to a knot of the sager folks, who, with Old Van Tassel, sat smoking at one end of the piazza, gossiping over former times, and drawing out long stories about the war.

This neighborhood, at the time of which I am speaking, was one of those highly favored places which abound with chronicle and great men. The British and American line had run near it during the war; it had, therefore, been the scene of marauding

and infested with refugees, cow-boys, and all kinds of border chivalry. Just sufficient time had elapsed to enable each story-teller to dress up his tale with a little becoming fiction, and, in the indistinctness of his recollection, to make himself the hero of every exploit.

There was the story of Doffue Martling, a large blue-bearded Dutchman, who had nearly taken a British frigate with an old iron nine-pounder from a mud breastwork, only that his gun burst at the sixth discharge. And there was an old gentleman who shall be nameless, being too rich a *mynheer*<sup>1</sup> to be lightly mentioned, who, in the battle of White Plains, being an excellent master of defence, parried a musket-ball with a small-sword, insomuch that he absolutely felt it whiz round the blade, and glance off at the hilt; in proof of which he was ready at any time to show the sword, with the hilt a little bent. There were several more that had been equally great in the field, not one of whom but was persuaded that he had a considerable hand in bringing the war to a happy termination.

But all these were nothing to the tales of ghosts and apparitions that succeeded. The neighborhood is rich in legendary treasures of the kind. Local tales and superstitions thrive best in these sheltered, long-settled retreats; but are trampled under foot by the shifting throng that forms the population of most of our country places. Besides, there is no encouragement for ghosts in most of our villages, for they have scarcely had time to finish their first nap and turn

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *mīn-hār'*. Literally, *my lord*. It is the ordinary title of address among Dutchmen, corresponding to *sir* or *Mr.* in English use. Hence, a Dutchman.

themselves in their graves, before their surviving friends have travelled away from the neighborhood; so that when they turn out at night to walk their rounds, they have no acquaintance left to call upon. This is perhaps the reason why we so seldom hear of ghosts except in our long-established Dutch communities.

The immediate cause, however, of the prevalence of supernatural stories in these parts, was doubtless owing to the vicinity of Sleepy Hollow. There was a contagion in the very air that blew from that haunted region; it breathed forth an atmosphere of dreams and fancies infecting all the land. Several of the Sleepy Hollow people were present at Van Tassel's, and, as usual, were doling out their wild and wonderful legends. Many dismal tales were told about funeral trains, and mourning cries and wailings heard and seen about the great tree where the unfortunate Major André was taken, and which stood in the neighborhood. Some mention was made also of the woman in white, that haunted the dark glen at Raven Rock, and was often heard to shriek on winter nights before a storm, having perished there in the snow. The chief part of the stories, however, turned upon the favorite spectre of Sleepy Hollow, the Headless Horseman, who had been heard several times of late, patrolling the country; and, it was said, tethered his horse nightly among the graves in the churchyard.

The sequestered situation of this church seems always to have made it a favorite haunt of troubled spirits. It stands on a knoll, surrounded by locust-trees and lofty elms, from among which its decent, whitewashed walls shine modestly forth, like Christian purity beaming through the shades of retirement. A

gentle slope descends from it to a silver sheet of water, bordered by high trees, between which, peeps may be caught at the blue hills of the Hudson. To look upon its grass-grown yard, where the sunbeams seem to sleep so quietly, one would think that there at least the dead might rest in peace. On one side of the church extends a wide woody dell, along which raves a large brook among broken rocks and trunks of fallen trees. Over a deep black part of the stream, not far from the church, was formerly thrown a wooden bridge; the road that led to it, and the bridge itself, were thickly shaded by overhanging trees, which cast a gloom about it, even in the daytime; but occasioned a fearful darkness at night. Such was one of the favorite haunts of the Headless Horseman, and the place where he was most frequently encountered. The tale was told of old Brouwer, a most heretical disbeliever in ghosts, how he met the Horseman returning from his foray into Sleepy Hollow, and was obliged to get up behind him; how they galloped over bush and brake, over hill and swamp, until they reached the bridge; when the Horseman suddenly turned into a skeleton, threw old Brouwer into the brook, and sprang away over the tree-tops with a clap of thunder.

This story was immediately matched by a thrice marvellous adventure of Brom Bones, who made light of the Galloping Hessian as an arrant jockey. He affirmed that on returning one night from the neighboring village of Sing Sing, he had been overtaken by this midnight trooper; that he had offered to race with him for a bowl of punch, and should have won it too, for Daredevil beat the goblin horse all hollow, but just as they came to the church bridge, the Hessian bolted, and vanished in a flash of fire.



All these tales, told in that drowsy undertone with which men talk in the dark, the countenances of the listeners only now and then receiving a casual gleam from the glare of a pipe, sank deep in the mind of Ichabod. He repaid them in kind with large extracts from his invaluable author, Cotton Mather, and added many marvellous events that had taken place in his native State of Connecticut, and fearful sights which he had seen in his nightly walks about Sleepy Hollow.

The revel now gradually broke up. The old farmers gathered together their families in their wagons, and were heard for some time rattling along the hollow roads, and over the distant hills. Some of the damsels mounted on pillions behind their favorite swains, and their light-hearted laughter, mingling with the clatter of hoofs, echoed along the silent woodlands, sounding fainter and fainter, until they gradually died away, — and the late scene of noise and frolic was all silent and deserted. Ichabod only lingered behind, according to the custom of country lovers, to have a tête-à-tête with the heiress; fully convinced that he was now on the high road to success. What passed at this interview I will not pretend to say, for in fact I do not know. Something, however, I fear me, must have gone wrong, for he certainly sallied forth, after no very great interval, with an air quite desolate and chapfaller. Oh, these women! these women! Could that girl have been playing off any of her coquettish tricks? Was her encouragement of the poor pedagogue all a mere sham to secure her conquest of his rival? Heaven only knows, not I! Let it suffice to say, Ichabod stole forth with the air of one who had been sacking a henroost, rather

than a fair lady's heart. Without looking to the right or left to notice the scene of rural wealth, on which he had so often gloated, he went straight to the stable, and with several hearty cuffs and kicks roused his steed most uncourteously from the comfortable quarters in which he was soundly sleeping, dreaming of mountains of corn and oats, and whole valleys of timothy and clover.

It was the very witching time of night<sup>1</sup> that Ichabod, heavy-hearted and crest-fallen, pursued his travels homewards, along the sides of the lofty hills which rise above Tarry Town, and which he had traversed so cheerily in the afternoon. The hour was as dismal as himself. Far below him the Tappan Zee spread its dusky and indistinct waste of waters, with here and there the tall mast of a sloop, riding quietly at anchor under the land. In the dead hush of midnight, he could even hear the barking of the watchdog from the opposite shore of the Hudson; but it was so vague and faint as only to give an idea of his distance from this faithful companion of man. Now and then, too, the long-drawn crowing of a cock, accidentally awakened, would sound far, far off, from some farmhouse away among the hills — but it was like a dreaming sound in his ear. No signs of life occurred near him, but occasionally the melancholy chirp of a cricket, or perhaps the guttural twang of a bull-frog from a neighboring marsh, as if sleeping uncomfortably and turning suddenly in his bed.

All the stories of ghosts and goblins that he had heard in the afternoon now came crowding upon his recollection. The night grew darker and darker; the

<sup>1</sup> " 'Tis now the very witching time of night  
When churchyards yawn." — *Hamlet*.

stars seemed to sink deeper in the sky, and driving clouds occasionally hid them from his sight. He had never felt so lonely and dismal. He was, moreover, approaching the very place where many of the scenes of the ghost stories had been laid. In the centre of the road stood an enormous tulip-tree, which towered like a giant above all the other trees of the neighborhood, and formed a kind of landmark. Its limbs were gnarled and fantastic, large enough to form trunks for ordinary trees, twisting down almost to the earth, and rising again into the air. It was connected with the tragical story of the unfortunate André, who had been taken prisoner hard by; and was universally known by the name of Major André's tree. The common people regarded it with a mixture of respect and superstition, partly out of sympathy for the fate of its ill-starred namesake, and partly from the tales of strange sights, and doleful lamentations, told concerning it.

As Ichabod approached this fearful tree, he began to whistle; he thought his whistle was answered; it was but a blast sweeping sharply through the dry branches. As he approached a little nearer, he thought he saw something white, hanging in the midst of the tree: he paused, and ceased whistling; but, on looking more narrowly, perceived that it was a place where the tree had been scathed by lightning, and the white wood laid bare. Suddenly he heard a groan — his teeth chattered, and his knees smote against the saddle: it was but the rubbing of one huge bough upon another, as they were swayed about by the breeze. He passed the tree in safety, but new perils lay before him.

About two hundred yards from the tree, a small

brook crossed the road, and ran into a marshy and thickly-wooded glen, known by the name of Wiley's Swamp. A few rough logs, laid side by side, served for a bridge over this stream. On that side of the road where the brook entered the wood, a group of oaks and chestnuts, matted thick with wild grape-vines, threw a cavernous gloom over it. To pass this bridge was the severest trial. It was at this identical spot that the unfortunate André was captured, and under the covert of those chestnuts and vines were the sturdy yeomen concealed who surprised him. This has ever since been considered a haunted stream, and fearful are the feelings of the school-boy who has to pass it alone after dark.

As he approached the stream, his heart began to thump; he summoned up, however, all his resolution, gave his horse half a score of kicks in the ribs, and attempted to dash briskly across the bridge; but instead of starting forward, the perverse old animal made a lateral movement, and ran broadside against the fence. Ichabod, whose fears increased with the delay, jerked the reins on the other side, and kicked lustily with the contrary foot: it was all in vain; his steed started, it is true, but it was only to plunge to the opposite side of the road into a thicket of brambles and alder-bushes. The schoolmaster now bestowed both whip and heel upon the starveling ribs of old Gunpowder, who dashed forward, snuffing and snorting, but came to a stand just by the bridge, with a suddenness that had nearly sent his rider sprawling over his head. Just at this moment a plashy tramp by the side of the bridge caught the sensitive ear of Ichabod. In the dark shadow of the grove, on the margin of the brook, he beheld something huge, misshapen,



and towering. It stirred not, but seemed gathered up in the gloom, like some gigantic monster ready to spring upon the traveller.

The hair of the affrighted pedagogue rose upon his head with terror. What was to be done? To turn and fly was now too late; and besides, what chance was there of escaping ghost or goblin, if such it was, which could ride upon the wings of the wind? Summoning up, therefore, a show of courage, he demanded in stammering accents, "Who are you?" He received no reply. He repeated his demand in a still more agitated voice. Still there was no answer. Once more he cudgelled the sides of the inflexible Gunpowder, and, shutting his eyes, broke forth with involuntary fervor into a psalm tune. Just then the shadowy object of alarm put itself in motion, and with a scramble and a bound stood at once in the middle of the road. Though the night was dark and dismal, yet the form of the unknown might now in some degree be ascertained. He appeared to be a horseman of large dimensions, and mounted on a black horse of powerful frame. He made no offer of molestation or sociability, but kept aloof on one side of the road, jogging along on the blind side of old Gunpowder, who had now got over his fright and waywardness.

Ichabod, who had no relish for this strange midnight companion, and bethought himself of the adventure of Brom Bones with the Galloping Hessian, now quickened his steed in hopes of leaving him behind. The stranger, however, quickened his horse to an equal pace. Ichabod pulled up, and fell into a walk, thinking to lag behind, — the other did the same. His heart began to sink within him; he endeavored to

resume his psalm tune, but his parched tongue clove to the roof of his mouth, and he could not utter a stave. There was something in the moody and dogged silence of this pertinacious companion that was mysterious and appalling. It was soon fearfully accounted for. On mounting a rising ground, which brought the figure of his fellow-traveller in relief against the sky, gigantic in height, and muffled in a cloak, Ichabod was horror-struck on perceiving that he was headless! but his horror was still more increased on observing that the head, which should have rested on his shoulders, was carried before him on the pommel of his saddle! His terror rose to desperation; he rained a shower of kicks and blows upon Gunpowder, hoping by a sudden movement to give his companion the slip; but the spectre started full jump with him. Away, then, they dashed through thick and thin; stones flying and sparks flashing at every bound. Ichabod's flimsy garments fluttered in the air, as he stretched his long lank body away over his horse's head, in the eagerness of his flight.

They had now reached the road which turns off to Sleepy Hollow; but Gunpowder, who seemed possessed with a demon, instead of keeping up it, made an opposite turn, and plunged headlong down hill to the left. This road leads through a sandy hollow, shaded by trees for about a quarter of a mile, where it crosses the bridge famous in goblin story; and just beyond swells the green knoll on which stands the whitewashed church.

As yet the panic of the steed had given his unskilful rider an apparent advantage in the chase; but just as he had got half way through the hollow, the girths of the saddle gave way, and he felt it slipping

from under him. He seized it by the pommel, and endeavored to hold it firm, but in vain; and had just time to save himself by clasping old Gunpowder round the neck, when the saddle fell to the earth, and he heard it trampled under foot by his pursuer. For a moment the terror of Hans Van Ripper's wrath passed across his mind, — for it was his Sunday saddle; but this was no time for petty fears; the goblin was hard on his haunches; and (unskilful rider that he was!) he had much ado to maintain his seat; sometimes slipping on one side, sometimes on another, and sometimes jolted on the high ridge of his horse's backbone, with a violence that he verily feared would cleave him asunder.

An opening in the trees now cheered him with the hopes that the church bridge was at hand. The wavering reflection of a silver star in the bosom of the brook told him that he was not mistaken. He saw the walls of the church dimly glaring under the trees beyond. He recollected the place where Brom Bones' ghostly competitor had disappeared. "If I can but reach that bridge,"<sup>1</sup> thought Ichabod, "I am safe." Just then he heard the black steed panting and blowing close behind him; he even fancied that he felt his hot breath. Another convulsive kick in the ribs, and old Gunpowder sprang upon the bridge; he thundered over the resounding planks; he

<sup>1</sup> It was a superstitious belief that witches could not cross the middle of a stream. In Burns's tale of *Tam O'Shanter* the hero is represented as urging his horse to gain the keystone of the bridge so as to escape the hotly pursuing witches:—

"Now, do thy speedy utmost, Meg,  
And win the keystone of the brig:  
There at them thou thy tail may toss,—  
A running stream they dare not cross!"

gained the opposite side ; and now Ichabod cast a look behind to see if his pursuer should vanish, according to rule, in a flash of fire and brimstone. Just then he saw the goblin rising in his stirrups, and in the very act of hurling his head at him. Ichabod endeavored to dodge the horrible missile, but too late. It encountered his cranium with a tremendous crash, — he was tumbled headlong into the dust, and Gunpowder, the black steed, and the goblin rider, passed by like a whirlwind.

The next morning the old horse was found without his saddle, and with the bridle under his feet, soberly cropping the grass at his master's gate. Ichabod did not make his appearance at breakfast ; dinner-hour came, but no Ichabod. The boys assembled at the schoolhouse, and strolled idly about the banks of the brook ; but no schoolmaster. Hans Van Ripper now began to feel some uneasiness about the fate of poor Ichabod, and his saddle. An inquiry was set on foot, and after diligent investigation they came upon his traces. In one part of the road leading to the church was found the saddle trampled in the dirt ; the tracks of horses' hoofs deeply dented in the road, and evidently at furious speed, were traced to the bridge, beyond which, on the bank of a broad part of the brook, where the water ran deep and black, was found the hat of the unfortunate Ichabod, and close beside it a shattered pumpkin.

The brook was searched, but the body of the schoolmaster was not to be discovered. Hans Van Ripper, as executor of his estate, examined the bundle which contained all his worldly effects. They consisted of two shirts and a half ; two stocks for the neck ; a pair or two of worsted stockings ; an old pair of corduroy



small-clothes; a rusty razor; a book of psalm tunes full of dog's-ears; and a broken pitch-pipe. As to the books and furniture of the schoolhouse, they belonged to the community, excepting Cotton Mather's History of Witchcraft, a New England Almanac, and a book of dreams and fortune-telling; in which last was a sheet of foolscap much scribbled and blotted in several fruitless attempts to make a copy of verses in honor of the heiress of Van Tassel. These magic books and the poetic scrawl were forthwith consigned to the flames by Hans Van Ripper; who, from that time forward, determined to send his children no more to school; observing that he never knew any good come of this same reading and writing. Whatever money the schoolmaster possessed, and he had received his quarter's pay but a day or two before, he must have had about his person at the time of his disappearance.

The mysterious event caused much speculation at the church on the following Sunday. Knots of gazers and gossips were collected in the churchyard, at the bridge, and at the spot where the hat and pumpkin had been found. The stories of Brouwer, of Bones, and a whole budget of others were called to mind; and when they had diligently considered them all, and compared them with the symptoms of the present case, they shook their heads, and came to the conclusion that Ichabod had been carried off by the Galloping Hessian. As he was a bachelor, and in nobody's debt, nobody troubled his head any more about him; the school was removed to a different quarter of the Hollow, and another pedagogue reigned in his stead.

It is true, an old farmer, who had been down to New York on a visit several years after, and from whom this account of the ghostly adventure was re-

ceived, brought home the intelligence that Ichabod Crane was still alive ; that he had left the neighborhood partly through fear of the goblin and Hans Van Ripper, and partly in mortification at having been suddenly dismissed by the heiress ; that he had changed his quarters to a distant part of the country ; had kept school and studied law at the same time ; had been admitted to the bar ; turned politician ; electioneered ; written for the newspapers ; and finally had been made a justice of the ten pound court.<sup>1</sup> Brom Bones, too, who, shortly after his rival's disappearance conducted the blooming Katrina in triumph to the altar, was observed to look exceedingly knowing whenever the story of Ichabod was related, and always burst into a hearty laugh at the mention of the pumpkin ; which led some to suspect that he knew more about the matter than he chose to tell.

The old country wives, however, who are the best judges of these matters, maintain to this day that Ichabod was spirited away by supernatural means ; and it is a favorite story often told about the neighborhood round the winter evening fire. The bridge became more than ever an object of superstitious awe ; and that may be the reason why the road has been altered of late years, so as to approach the church by the border of the mill-pond. The schoolhouse being deserted soon fell to decay, and was reported to be haunted by the ghost of the unfortunate pedagogue ; and the plough-boy, loitering homeward of a still summer evening, has often fancied his voice at a distance, chanting a melancholy psalm tune among the tranquil solitudes of Sleepy Hollow.

<sup>1</sup> A court of justice authorized to deal with cases in which the amount of money involved does not exceed ten pounds.

## POSTSCRIPT.

FOUND IN THE HANDWRITING OF MR. KNICKERBOCKER.

THE preceding tale is given almost in the precise words in which I heard it related at a Corporation meeting of the ancient city of the Manhattoes,<sup>1</sup> at which were present many of its sagest and most illustrious burghers. The narrator was a pleasant, shabby, gentlemanly old fellow in pepper-and-salt clothes, with a sadly humorous face; and one whom I strongly suspected of being poor, — he made such efforts to be entertaining. When his story was concluded there was much laughter and approbation, particularly from two or three deputy aldermen, who had been asleep the greater part of the time. There was, however, one tall, dry-looking old gentleman, with beetling eyebrows, who maintained a grave and rather severe face throughout; now and then folding his arms, inclining his head, and looking down upon the floor, as if turning a doubt over in his mind. He was one of your wary men, who never laugh but upon good grounds, — when they have reason and the law on their side. When the mirth of the rest of the company had subsided, and silence was restored, he leaned one arm on the elbow of his chair, and sticking the other akimbo, demanded, with a slight but exceedingly sage motion

<sup>1</sup> The city of New York, as it is named in *Diedrich Knickerbocker's* (Irving's) *History of New York*.

of the head, and contraction of the brow, what was the moral of the story, and what it went to prove.

The story-teller, who was just putting a glass of wine to his lips, as a refreshment after his toils, paused for a moment, looked at his inquirer with an air of infinite deference, and, lowering the glass slowly to the table, observed that the story was intended most logically to prove : —

“That there is no situation in life but has its advantages and pleasures, provided we will but take a joke as we find it;

“That, therefore, he that runs races with goblin troopers is likely to have rough riding of it;

“Ergo, for a country schoolmaster to be refused the hand of a Dutch heiress is a certain step to high preferment in the state.”

The cautious old gentleman knit his brows tenfold closer after this explanation, being sorely puzzled by the ratiocination of the syllogism; while, methought, the one in pepper-and-salt eyed him with something of a triumphant leer. At length he observed that all this was very well, but still he thought the story a little on the extravagant; there were one or two points on which he had his doubts.

“Faith, sir,” replied the story-teller, “as to that matter, I don’t believe one half of it myself.”

D. K.



## ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

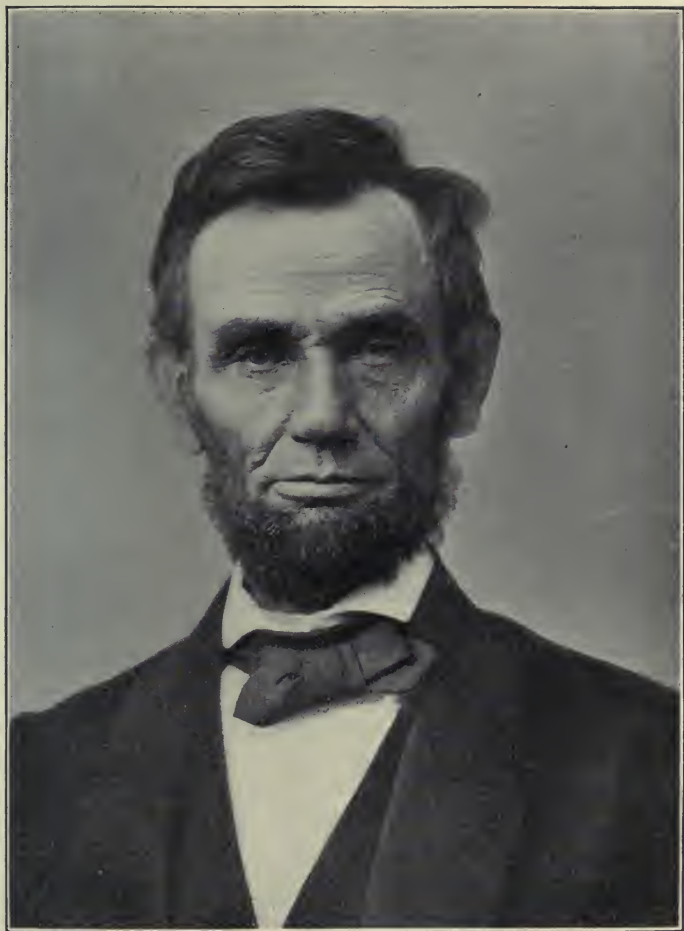
---

SPEECH AT THE DEDICATION OF THE NATIONAL CEMETERY,  
GETTYSBURG, PENNSYLVANIA, NOVEMBER 19, 1863.

The great battles fought at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, in July, 1863, made that spot historic ground. It was early perceived that the battles were critical, and they are now looked upon by many as the turning-point of the war for the Union. The ground where the fiercest conflict raged was taken for a national cemetery, and the dedication of the place was made an occasion of great solemnity. The orator of the day was Edward Everett, who was regarded as the most finished public speaker in the country. Mr. Everett made a long and eloquent address, and was followed by the President in a little speech which instantaneously affected the country, whether people were educated or unlettered, as a great speech. The impression created has deepened with time. Ralph Waldo Emerson in his essay on *Eloquence* says: "I believe it to be true that when any orator at the bar or the Senate rises in his thought, he descends in his language, that is, when he rises to any height of thought or passion, he comes down to a language level with the ear of all his audience. It is the merit of John Brown and of Abraham Lincoln—one at Charlestown, one at Gettysburg—in the two best specimens of eloquence we have had in this country."

It is worth while to listen to Mr. Lincoln's own account of the education which prepared him for public speaking. Before he was nominated for the presidency he had attracted the notice of people by a remarkable contest in debate with a famous Illinois statesman, Stephen Arnold Douglas. As a consequence Mr. Lincoln received a great many invitations to speak in the Eastern States, and made, among others, a notable speech at the Cooper Union, New York. Shortly after, he spoke also at New Haven, and the Rev. J. P. Gulliver, in a paper in the *New York*

NOTE. A biographical sketch of Lincoln has been deemed superfluous, as there are so many now available.



COPYRIGHT 1891, BY M. P. RICE

ABRAHAM LINCOLN IN 1864



*Independent*, Sept. 1, 1864, thus reports a conversation which he held with him when traveling in the same railroad car : —

“‘Ah, that reminds me,’ he said, ‘of a most extraordinary circumstance, which occurred in New Haven, the other day. They told me that the Professor of Rhetoric in Yale College — a very learned man, is n’t he ?’ ‘Yes, sir, and a very fine critic, too.’ ‘Well, I suppose so ; he ought to be, at any rate — They told me that he came to hear me and took notes of my speech, and gave a lecture on it to his class the next day ; and, not satisfied with that, he followed me up to Meriden the next evening, and heard me again for the same purpose. Now, if this is so, it is to my mind very extraordinary. I have been sufficiently astonished at my success in the West. It has been most unexpected. But I had no thought of any marked success at the East, and least of all that I should draw out such commendations from literary and learned men !’

“‘That suggests, Mr. Lincoln, an inquiry which has several times been upon my lips during this conversation. I want very much to know how you got this unusual power of “putting things.” It must have been a matter of education. No man has it by nature alone. What has your education been ?’

“‘Well, as to education, the newspapers are correct. I never went to school more than six months in my life. But, as you say, this must be a product of culture in some form. I have been putting the question you ask me to myself while you have been talking. I say this, that among my earliest recollections, I remember how, when a mere child, I used to get irritated when anybody talked to me in a way I could not understand. I don’t think I ever got angry at anything else in my life. But that always disturbed my temper, and has ever since. I can remember going to my little bedroom, after hearing the neighbors talk of an evening with my father, and spending no small part of the night walking up and down, and trying to make out what was the exact meaning of some of their, to me, dark sayings. I could not sleep, though I often tried to, when I got on such a hunt after an idea, until I had caught it ; and when I thought I had got it, I was not satisfied until I had repeated it over and over, until I had put it in language plain enough, as I thought, for any boy I knew to comprehend. This was a kind of passion with me, and it has stuck by me, for I am never easy now, when I am handling a thought, till I have bounded it north and bounded it



south and bounded it east and bounded it west. Perhaps that accounts for the characteristic you observe in my speeches, though I never put the two things together before.'” But to the speech itself.

FOURSCORE and seven years ago, our fathers brought forth on this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. We are met on a great battlefield of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting-place for those who here gave their lives that that nation might live. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this. But in a larger sense we cannot dedicate, we cannot consecrate, we cannot hallow this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here, have consecrated it far above our poor power to add or detract. The world will little note, nor long remember, what we say here, but it can never forget what they did here. It is for us, the living, rather to be dedicated here to the unfinished work which they who fought here have thus far so nobly advanced. It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the great task remaining before us, — that from these honored dead we take increased devotion to that cause for which they gave the last full measure of devotion, — that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain, — that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom, — and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth.

# NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE.

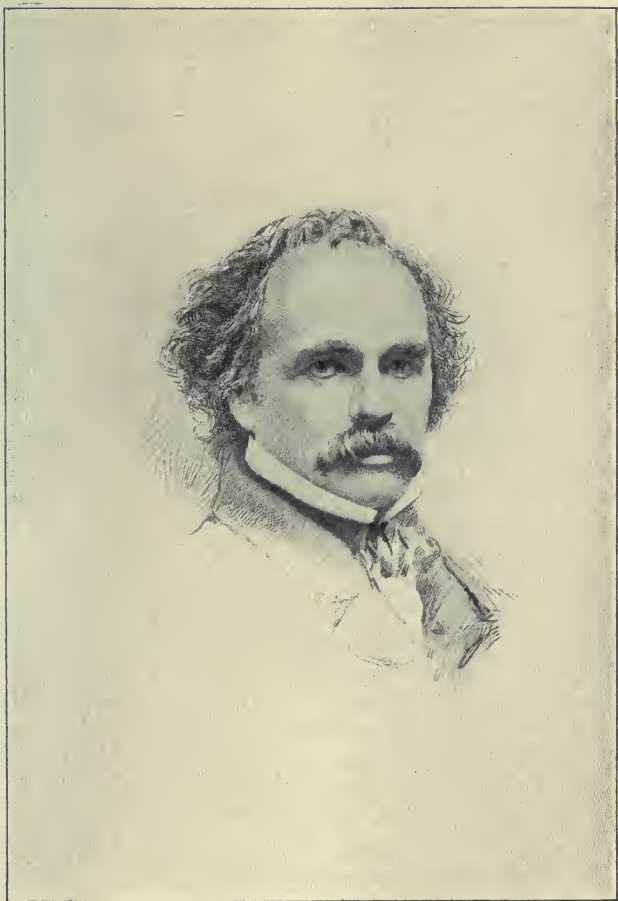
---

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

IT was Hawthorne's wont to keep note-books, in which he recorded his observations and reflections; sometimes he spoke in them of himself, his plans, and his prospects. He began the practice early, and continued it through life; and after his death selections from these note-books were published in six volumes, under the titles: *Passages from the American Note-Books of Nathaniel Hawthorne*, *Passages from the English Note-Books of Nathaniel Hawthorne*, and *Passages from the French and Italian Note-Books of Nathaniel Hawthorne*. In these books, and in prefaces which appear in the front of the volumes containing his collected stories, one finds many frank expressions of the interest which Hawthorne took in his work, and the author appeals very ingenuously to the reader, speaking with an almost confidential closeness of his stories and sketches. Then the *Note-Books* contain the unwrought material of the books which the writer put out in his lifetime. One finds there the suggestions of stories, and frequently pages of observation and reflection, which were afterward transferred, almost as they stood, into the author's works. It is very interesting labor to trace Hawthorne's stories and sketches back to these records in his note-books, and to compare the finished work with the rough material. It seems, also, as if each reader was admitted into the privacy of the author's mind. That is the first impression, but a closer study reveals two

facts very clearly. One is stated by Hawthorne himself in his preface to *The Snow-Image and other Twice-Told Tales*: "I have been especially careful [in my Introductions] to make no disclosures respecting myself which the most indifferent observer might not have been acquainted with, and which I was not perfectly willing that my worst enemy should know. . . . I have taken facts which relate to myself [when telling stories] because they chance to be nearest at hand, and likewise are my own property. And, as for egotism, a person who has been burrowing, to his utmost ability, into the depths of our common nature for the purposes of psychological romance — and who pursues his researches in that dusky region, as he needs must, as well by the tact of sympathy as by the light of observation — will smile at incurring such an imputation in virtue of a little preliminary talk about his external habits, his abode, his casual associates, and other matters entirely upon the surface. These things hide the man instead of displaying him. You must make quite another kind of inquest, and look through the whole range of his fictitious characters, good and evil, in order to detect any of his essential traits."

There has rarely been a writer of fiction, then, whose personality has been so absolutely separate from that of each character created by him, and at the same time has so intimately penetrated the whole body of his writing. Of no one of his characters, male or female, is one ever tempted to say, This is Hawthorne, except in the case of Miles Coverdale in *The Blithedale Romance*, where the circumstances of the story tempt one into an identification; yet all Hawthorne's work is stamped emphatically with his mark. Hawthorne wrote it, is very simple and easy to say of all but the merest trifle in his collected works; but the world has yet to learn who Hawthorne was, and even if he had not forbidden a biography of himself, it is scarcely likely that any Life could have disclosed more than he has chosen himself to reveal.



*Nathaniel Hawthorne.*





The advantage of this is that it leaves the student free to concentrate his attention upon the writings rather than on the man. Hawthorne, in the passage quoted above, speaks of himself as one "who has been burrowing, to his utmost ability, into the depths of our common nature for the purposes of psychological romance;" and this states, as closely as so short a sentence can, the controlling purpose and end of the author. The vitality of Hawthorne's characters is derived but little from any external description; it resides in the truthfulness with which they respond to some permanent and controlling operation of the human soul. Looking into his own heart, and always, when studying others, in search of fundamental rather than occasional motives, he proceeded to develop these motives in conduct and life. Hence he had a leaning toward the allegory, where human figures are merely masks for spiritual activities, and sometimes he employed the simple allegory, as in *The Celestial Railroad*. More often in his short stories he has a spiritual truth to illustrate, and uses the simplest, most direct means, taking no pains to conceal his purpose, yet touching his characters quietly or playfully with human sensibilities, and investing them with just so much real life as answers the purpose of the story. This is exquisitely done in *The Snow-Image*. The consequence of this "burrowing into the depths of our common nature" has been to bring much of the darker and concealed life into the movement of his stories. The fact of evil is the terrible fact of life, and its workings in the human soul had more interest for Hawthorne than the obvious physical manifestations. Since his observations are less of the men and women whom everybody sees and recognizes than of the souls which are hidden from most eyes, it is not strange that his stories should often lay bare secrets of sin, and that a somewhat dusky light should seem to be the atmosphere of much of his work. Now and then, especially when dealing with childhood, a warm, sunny glow spreads over the pages of his books; but the reader must

be prepared for the most part to read stories which lie in the shadow of life.

There was one class of subjects which had a peculiar interest for Hawthorne, and in a measure affected his work. He had a strong taste for New England history, and he found in the scenes and characters of that history favorable material for the representation of spiritual conflict. He was himself the most New English of New Englanders, and held an extraordinary sympathy with the very soil of his section of the country. By this sympathy, rather than by any painful research, he was singularly acquainted with the historic life of New England. His stories, based directly on historic facts, are true to the spirit of the times in something more than an archæological way. One is astonished at the ease with which he seized upon characteristic features, and reproduced them in a word or phrase. Merely careful and diligent research would never be adequate to give the life-likeness of the images in *Howe's Masquerade*.

There is, then, a second fact discovered by a study of Hawthorne, that while one finds in the *Note-Books*, for example, the material out of which stories and sketches seem to have been constructed, and while the facts of New England history have been used without exaggeration or distortion, the result in stories and romances is something far beyond a mere report of what has been seen and read. The charm of a vivifying imagination is the crowning charm of Hawthorne's stories, and its medium is a graceful and often exquisitely apt diction. Hawthorne's sense of touch as a writer is very fine. He knows when to be light, and when to press heavily; a very conspicuous quality is what one is likely to term quaintness, — a gentle pleasantry which seems to spring from the author's attitude toward his own work, as if he looked upon that, too, as a part of the spiritual universe which he was surveying.

Hawthorne spent much of his life silently, and there are touching passages in his note-books regarding his sense of

loneliness and his wish for recognition from the world. His early writings were short stories, sketches, and biographies, scattered in magazines and brought together into *Twice-Told Tales*, in two volumes, published, the first in 1837, the second in 1842; *Mosses from an Old Manse*, in 1846; *The Snow-Image and other Twice-Told Tales*, in 1851. They had a limited circle of readers. Some recognized his genius, but it was not until the publication of *The Scarlet Letter*, in 1850, that Hawthorne's name was fairly before the world as a great and original writer of romance. *The House of the Seven Gables* followed in 1851; *The Blithedale Romance* in 1852. He spent the years 1853-1860 in Europe, and the immediate result of his life there is in *Our Old Home: A Series of English Sketches*, published in 1863 and *The Marble Faun, or the Romance of Monte Beni*, in 1860. For young people he wrote *Grandfather's Chair*, a collection of stories from New England history, *The Wonder-Book* and *Tanglewood Tales*, containing stories out of classic mythology. There are a few other scattered writings which have been collected into volumes and published in the complete series of his works.

Hawthorne was born July 4, 1804, and died May 19, 1864.

The student of Hawthorne will find in G. P. Lathrop's *A Study of Hawthorne*, and Henry James, Jr.'s *Hawthorne*, in the series *English Men of Letters*, material which will assist him. Dr. Holmes published, shortly after Hawthorne's death, a paper of reminiscences which is included in *Soundings from the Atlantic*; and Longfellow welcomed *Twice-Told Tales* with a glowing article in the *North American Review*, xlviii. 59, which is reproduced in his prose works. The reader will find it an agreeable task to discover what the poets, Longfellow, Lowell, Stedman, and others, have said of this man of genius.



## THE GREAT STONE FACE.

ONE afternoon, when the sun was going down, a mother and her little boy sat at the door of their cottage, talking about the Great Stone Face. They had but to lift their eyes, and there it was plainly to be seen, though miles away, with the sunshine brightening all its features.

And what was the Great Stone Face?

Embosomed amongst a family of lofty mountains there was a valley so spacious that it contained many thousand inhabitants. Some of these good people dwelt in log huts, with the black forest all around them, on the steep and difficult hillsides. Others had their homes in comfortable farm-houses, and cultivated the rich soil on the gentle slopes or level surfaces of the valley. Others, again, were congregated into populous villages, where some wild, highland rivulet, tumbling down from its birthplace in the upper mountain region, had been caught and tamed by human cunning and compelled to turn the machinery of cotton-factories. The inhabitants of this valley, in short, were numerous, and of many modes of life. But all of them, grown people and children, had a kind of familiarity with the Great Stone Face, although some possessed the gift of distinguishing this grand natural phenomenon more perfectly than many of their neighbors.

The Great Stone Face, then, was a work of Nature

in her mood of majestic playfulness, formed on the perpendicular side of a mountain by some immense **rocks**, which had been thrown together in such a position as, when viewed at a proper distance, precisely to resemble the features of the human countenance. It seemed as if an enormous giant, or a Titan, had sculptured his own likeness on the precipice. There was the broad arch of the forehead, a hundred feet in height; the nose, with its long bridge; and the vast lips, which, if they could have spoken, would have rolled their thunder accents from one end of the valley to the other. True it is, that if the spectator approached too near he lost the outline of the gigantic visage, and could discern only a heap of ponderous and gigantic rocks, piled in chaotic ruin one upon another. Retracing his steps, however, the wondrous features would again be seen; and the farther he withdrew from them, the more like a human face, with all its original divinity intact, did they appear; until, as it grew dim in the distance, with the clouds and glorified vapor of the mountains clustering about it, the Great Stone Face seemed positively to be alive.

It was a happy lot for children to grow up to manhood or womanhood with the Great Stone Face before their eyes, for all the features were noble, and the expression was at once grand and sweet, as if it were the glow of a vast, warm heart, that embraced all mankind in its affections, and had room for more. It was an education only to look at it. According to the belief of many people, the valley owed much of its fertility to this benign aspect that was continually beaming over it, illuminating the clouds, and infusing its tenderness into the sunshine.

As we began with saying, a mother and her little

boy sat at their cottage-door, gazing at the Great Stone Face, and talking about it. The child's name was Ernest.

"Mother," said he, while the Titanic visage smiled at him, "I wish that it could speak, for it looks so very kindly that its voice must needs be pleasant. If I were to see a man with such a face, I should love him dearly."

"If an old prophecy should come to pass," answered his mother, "we may see a man, some time or other, with exactly such a face as that."

"What prophecy do you mean, dear mother?" eagerly inquired Ernest. "Pray tell me all about it!"

So his mother told him a story that her own mother had told to her, when she herself was younger than little Ernest; a story, not of things that were past, but of what was yet to come; a story, nevertheless, so very old, that even the Indians, who formerly inhabited this valley, had heard it from their forefathers, to whom, as they affirmed, it had been murmured by the mountain streams, and whispered by the wind among the tree-tops. The purport was, that, at some future day, a child should be born hereabouts, who was destined to become the greatest and noblest personage of his time, and whose countenance, in manhood, should bear an exact resemblance to the Great Stone Face. Not a few old-fashioned people, and young ones likewise, in the ardor of their hopes, still cherished an enduring faith in this old prophecy. But others, who had seen more of the world, had watched and waited till they were weary, and had beheld no man with such a face, nor any man that proved to be much greater or nobler than his neighbors, concluded

it to be nothing but an idle tale. At all events, the great man of the prophecy had not yet appeared.

“O mother, dear mother!” cried Ernest, clapping his hands above his head, “I do hope that I shall live to see him!”

His mother was an affectionate and thoughtful woman, and felt that it was wisest not to discourage the generous hopes of her little boy. So she only said to him, “Perhaps you may.”

And Ernest never forgot the story that his mother told him. It was always in his mind, whenever he looked upon the Great Stone Face. He spent his childhood in the log cottage where he was born, and was dutiful to his mother, and helpful to her in many things, assisting her much with his little hands, and more with his loving heart. In this manner, from a happy yet often pensive child, he grew up to be a mild, quiet, unobtrusive boy, and sun-browned with labor in the fields, but with more intelligence brightening his aspect than is seen in many lads who have been taught at famous schools. Yet Ernest had had no teacher, save only that the Great Stone Face became one to him. When the toil of the day was over, he would gaze at it for hours, until he began to imagine that those vast features recognized him, and gave him a smile of kindness and encouragement, responsive to his own look of veneration. We must not take upon us to affirm that this was a mistake, although the face may have looked no more kindly at Ernest than at all the world besides. But the secret was, that the boy's tender and confiding simplicity discerned what other people could not see; and thus the love, which was meant for all, became his peculiar portion.



About this time there went a rumor throughout the valley, that the great man, foretold from ages long ago, who was to bear a resemblance to the Great Stone Face, had appeared at last. It seems that, many years before, a young man had migrated from the valley and settled at a distant seaport, where, after getting together a little money, he had set up as a shopkeeper. His name — but I could never learn whether it was his real one, or a nickname that had grown out of his habits and success in life — was Gathergold. Being shrewd and active, and endowed by Providence with that inscrutable faculty which develops itself in what the world calls luck, he became an exceedingly rich merchant, and owner of a whole fleet of bulky-bottomed ships. All the countries of the globe appeared to join hands for the mere purpose of adding heap after heap to the mountainous accumulation of this one man's wealth. The cold regions of the north, almost within the gloom and shadow of the Arctic Circle, sent him their tribute in the shape of furs; hot Africa sifted for him the golden sands of her rivers, and gathered up the ivory tusks of her great elephants out of the forests; the East came bringing him the rich shawls, and spices, and teas, and the effulgence of diamonds, and the gleaming purity of large pearls. The ocean, not to be behind-hand with the earth, yielded up her mighty whales, that Mr. Gathergold might sell their oil, and make a profit on it. Be the original commodity what it might, it was gold within his grasp. It might be said of him, as of Midas in the fable, that whatever he touched with his finger immediately glistened, and grew yellow, and was changed at once into sterling metal, or, which suited him still better, into piles of

coin. And, when Mr. Gathergold had become so very rich that it would have taken him a hundred years only to count his wealth, he bethought himself of his native valley, and resolved to go back thither, and end his days where he was born. With this purpose in view, he sent a skilful architect to build him such a palace as should be fit for a man of his vast wealth to live in.

As I have said above, it had already been rumored in the valley that Mr. Gathergold had turned out to be the prophetic personage so long and vainly looked for, and that his visage was the perfect and undeniable similitude of the Great Stone Face. People were the more ready to believe that this must needs be the fact, when they beheld the splendid edifice that rose, as if by enchantment, on the site of his father's old weather-beaten farmhouse. The exterior was of marble, so dazlingly white that it seemed as though the whole structure might melt away in the sunshine, like those humbler ones which Mr. Gathergold, in his young play-days, before his fingers were gifted with the touch of transmutation, had been accustomed to build of snow. It had a richly ornamented portico, supported by tall pillars, beneath which was a lofty door, studded with silver knobs, and made of a kind of variegated wood that had been brought from beyond the sea. The windows, from the floor to the ceiling of each stately apartment, were composed, respectively, of but one enormous pane of glass, so transparently pure that it was said to be a finer medium than even the vacant atmosphere. Hardly anybody had been permitted to see the interior of this palace; but it was reported, and with good semblance of truth, to be far more gorgeous than the outside, insomuch that whatever

was iron or brass in other houses was silver or gold in this; and Mr. Gathergold's bedchamber, especially, made such a glittering appearance that no ordinary man would have been able to close his eyes there. But, on the other hand, Mr. Gathergold was now so inured to wealth, that perhaps he could not have closed his eyes unless where the gleam of it was certain to find its way beneath his eyelids.

In due time, the mansion was finished; next came the upholsterers, with magnificent furniture; then a whole troop of black and white servants, the harbingers of Mr. Gathergold, who, in his own majestic person, was expected to arrive at sunset. Our friend Ernest, meanwhile, had been deeply stirred by the idea that the great man, the noble man, the man of prophecy, after so many ages of delay, was at length to be made manifest to his native valley. He knew, boy as he was, that there were a thousand ways in which Mr. Gathergold, with his vast wealth, might transform himself into an angel of beneficence, and assume a control over human affairs as wide and benignant as the smile of the Great Stone Face. Full of faith and hope, Ernest doubted not that what the people said was true, and that now he was to behold the living likeness of those wondrous features on the mountain-side. While the boy was still gazing up the valley, and fancying, as he always did, that the Great Stone Face returned his gaze and looked kindly at him, the rumbling of wheels was heard, approaching swiftly along the winding road.

"Here he comes!" cried a group of people who were assembled to witness the arrival. "Here comes the great Mr. Gathergold!"

A carriage drawn by four horses dashed round the

turn of the road. Within it, thrust partly out of the window, appeared the physiognomy of a little old man, with a skin as yellow as if his own Midas-hand had transmuted it. He had a low forehead, small, sharp eyes, puckered about with innumerable wrinkles, and very thin lips, which he made still thinner by pressing them forcibly together.

"The very image of the Great Stone Face!" shouted the people. "Sure enough, the old prophecy is true; and here we have the great man come, at last!"

And, what greatly perplexed Ernest, they seemed actually to believe that here was the likeness which they spoke of. By the roadside there chanced to be an old beggar-woman and two little beggar-children, stragglers from some far-off region, who, as the carriage rolled onward, held out their hands and lifted up their doleful voices, most piteously beseeching charity. A yellow claw — the very same that had clawed together so much wealth — poked itself out of the coach-window, and dropped some copper coins upon the ground; so that, though the great man's name seems to have been Gathergold, he might just as suitably have been nicknamed Scattercopper. Still, nevertheless, with an earnest shout, and evidently with as much good faith as ever, the people bellowed, —

"He is the very image of the Great Stone Face!"

But Ernest turned sadly from the wrinkled shrewdness of that sordid visage, and gazed up the valley, where, amid a gathering mist, gilded by the last sunbeams, he could still distinguish those glorious features which had impressed themselves into his soul. Their aspect cheered him. What did the benign lips seem to say?



“He will come! Fear not, Ernest; the man will come!”

The years went on, and Ernest ceased to be a boy. He had grown to be a young man now. He attracted little notice from the other inhabitants of the valley; for they saw nothing remarkable in his way of life, save that, when the labor of the day was over, he still loved to go apart and gaze and meditate upon the Great Stone Face. According to their idea of the matter, it was a folly, indeed, but pardonable, inasmuch as Ernest was industrious, kind, and neighborly, and neglected no duty for the sake of indulging this idle habit. They knew not that the Great Stone Face had become a teacher to him, and that the sentiment which was expressed in it would enlarge the young man's heart, and fill it with wider and deeper sympathies than other hearts. They knew not that thence would come a better wisdom than could be learned from books, and a better life than could be moulded on the defaced example of other human lives. Neither did Ernest know that the thoughts and affections which came to him so naturally, in the fields and at the fireside, and wherever he communed with himself, were of a higher tone than those which all men shared with him. A simple soul, — simple as when his mother first taught him the old prophecy, — he beheld the marvellous features beaming adown the valley, and still wondered that their human counterpart was so long in making his appearance.

By this time poor Mr. Gathergold was dead and buried; and the oddest part of the matter was, that his wealth, which was the body and spirit of his existence, had disappeared before his death, leaving nothing of him but a living skeleton, covered over

with a wrinkled, yellow skin. Since the melting away of his gold, it had been very generally conceded that there was no such striking resemblance, after all, betwixt the ignoble features of the ruined merchant and that majestic face upon the mountain-side. So the people ceased to honor him during his lifetime, and quietly consigned him to forgetfulness after his decease. Once in a while, it is true, his memory was brought up in connection with the magnificent palace which he had built, and which had long ago been turned into a hotel for the accommodation of strangers, multitudes of whom came every summer to visit that famous natural curiosity, the Great Stone Face. Thus, Mr. Gathergold being discredited and thrown into the shade, the man of prophecy was yet to come.

It so happened that a native-born son of the valley, many years before, had enlisted as a soldier, and, after a great deal of hard fighting, had now become an illustrious commander. Whatever he may be called in history, he was known in camps and on the battlefield under the nickname of Old Blood-and-Thunder. This war-worn veteran, being now infirm with age and wounds, and weary of the turmoil of a military life, and of the roll of the drum and the clangor of the trumpet, that had so long been ringing in his ears, had lately signified a purpose of returning to his native valley, hoping to find repose where he remembered to have left it. The inhabitants, his old neighbors and their grown-up children, were resolved to welcome the renowned warrior with a salute of cannon and a public dinner; and all the more enthusiastically, it being affirmed that now, at last, the likeness of the Great Stone Face had actually appeared. An aide-de-camp of Old Blood-and-Thunder, travelling

through the valley, was said to have been struck with the resemblance. Moreover the schoolmates and early acquaintances of the general were ready to testify, on oath, that to the best of their recollection, the aforesaid general had been exceedingly like the majestic image, even when a boy, only that the idea had never occurred to them at that period. Great, therefore, was the excitement throughout the valley; and many people, who had never once thought of glancing at the Great Stone Face for years before, now spent their time in gazing at it, for the sake of knowing exactly how General Blood-and-Thunder looked.

On the day of the great festival, Ernest, with all the other people of the valley, left their work, and proceeded to the spot where the sylvan banquet was prepared. As he approached, the loud voice of the Rev. Dr. Battleblast was heard, beseeching a blessing on the good things set before them, and on the distinguished friend of peace in whose honor they were assembled. The tables were arranged in a cleared space of the woods, shut in by the surrounding trees, except where a vista opened eastward, and afforded a distant view of the Great Stone Face. Over the general's chair, which was a relic from the home of Washington, there was an arch of verdant boughs, with the laurel profusely intermixed, and surmounted by his country's banner, beneath which he had won his victories. Our friend Ernest raised himself on his tip-toes, in hopes to get a glimpse of the celebrated guest; but there was a mighty crowd about the tables anxious to hear the toasts and speeches, and to catch any word that might fall from the general in reply; and a volunteer company, doing duty as a guard, pricked ruthlessly with their bayonets at any particu-

larly quiet person among the throng. So Ernest, being of an unobtrusive character, was thrust quite into the background, where he could see no more of Old Blood-and-Thunder's physiognomy than if it had been still blazing on the battle-field. To console himself, he turned towards the Great Stone Face, which, like a faithful and long-remembered friend, looked back and smiled upon him through the vista of the forest. Meantime, however, he could overhear the remarks of various individuals, who were comparing the features of the hero with the face on the distant mountain-side.

"'Tis the same face, to a hair!" cried one man, cutting a caper for joy.

"Wonderfully like, that's a fact!" responded another.

"Like! why, I call it Old Blood-and-Thunder himself in a monstrous looking-glass!" cried a third. "And why not? He's the greatest man of this or any other age, beyond a doubt."

And then all three of the speakers gave a great shout, which communicated electricity to the crowd, and called forth a roar from a thousand voices, that went reverberating for miles among the mountains, until you might have supposed that the Great Stone Face had poured its thunder-breath into the cry. All these comments, and this vast enthusiasm, served the more to interest our friend; nor did he think of questioning that now, at length, the mountain-visage had found its human counterpart. It is true, Ernest had imagined that this long-looked-for personage would appear in the character of a man of peace, uttering wisdom, and doing good, and making people happy. But, taking an habitual breadth of view, with all his



simplicity, he contended that Providence should choose its own method of blessing mankind, and could conceive that this great end might be effected even by a warrior and a bloody sword, should inscrutable wisdom see fit to order matters so.

"The general! the general!" was now the cry. "Hush! silence! Old Blood-and-Thunder's going to make a speech."

Even so; for, the cloth being removed, the general's health had been drunk amid shouts of applause, and he now stood upon his feet to thank the company. Ernest saw him. There he was, over the shoulders of the crowd, from the two glittering epaulets and embroidered collar upward, beneath the arch of green boughs with intertwined laurel, and the banner drooping as if to shade his brow! And there, too, visible in the same glance, through the vista of the forest, appeared the Great Stone Face! And was there, indeed, such a resemblance as the crowd had testified? Alas, Ernest could not recognize it. He beheld a war-worn and weather-beaten countenance, full of energy, and expressive of an iron will; but the gentle wisdom, the deep, broad, tender sympathies, were altogether wanting in Old Blood-and-Thunder's visage; and even if the Great Stone Face had assumed his look of stern command, the milder traits would still have tempered it.

"This is not the man of prophecy," sighed Ernest to himself, as he made his way out of the throng. "And must the world wait longer yet?"

The mists had congregated about the distant mountain-side, and there were seen the grand and awful features of the Great Stone Face, awful but benignant, as if a mighty angel were sitting among the hills and

enrobing himself in a cloud-vesture of gold and purple. As he looked, Ernest could hardly believe but that a smile beamed over the whole visage, with a radiance still brightening, although without motion of the lips. It was probably the effect of the western sunshine, melting through the thinly diffused vapors that had swept between him and the object that he gazed at. But — as it always did — the aspect of his marvellous friend made Ernest as hopeful as if he had never hoped in vain.

“Fear not, Ernest,” said his heart, even as if the Great Face were whispering him, — “fear not, Ernest; he will come.”

More years sped swiftly and tranquilly away. Ernest still dwelt in his native valley, and was now a man of middle age. By imperceptible degrees, he had become known among the people. Now, as heretofore, he labored for his bread, and was the same simple-hearted man that he had always been. But he had thought and felt so much, he had given so many of the best hours of his life to unworldly hopes for some great good to mankind, that it seemed as though he had been talking with the angels, and had imbibed a portion of their wisdom unawares. It was visible in the calm and well-considered beneficence of his daily life, the quiet stream of which had made a wide green margin all along its course. Not a day passed by that the world was not the better because this man, humble as he was, had lived. He never stepped aside from his own path, yet would always reach a blessing to his neighbor. Almost involuntarily, too, he had become a preacher. The pure and high simplicity of his thought, which, as one of its manifestations, took shape in the good deeds that dropped silently from his

hand, flowed also forth in speech. He uttered truths that wrought upon and moulded the lives of those who heard him. His auditors, it may be, never suspected that Ernest, their own neighbor and familiar friend, was more than an ordinary man; least of all did Ernest himself suspect it; but, inevitably as the murmur of a rivulet, came thoughts out of his mouth that no other human lips had spoken.

When the people's minds had had a little time to cool, they were ready enough to acknowledge their mistake in imagining a similarity between General Blood-and-Thunder's truculent physiognomy and the benign visage on the mountain-side. But now, again, there were reports and many paragraphs in the newspapers, affirming that the likeness of the Great Stone Face had appeared upon the broad shoulders of a certain eminent statesman. He, like Mr. Gathergold and Old Blood-and-Thunder, was a native of the valley, but had left it in his early days, and taken up the trades of law and politics. Instead of the rich man's wealth and the warrior's sword, he had but a tongue, and it was mightier than both together. So wonderfully eloquent was he, that whatever he might choose to say, his auditors had no choice but to believe him; wrong looked like right, and right like wrong; for when it pleased him he could make a kind of illuminated fog with his mere breath, and obscure the natural daylight with it. His tongue, indeed, was a magic instrument; sometimes it rumbled like the thunder; sometimes it warbled like the sweetest music. It was the blast of war, — the song of peace; and it seemed to have a heart in it, when there was no such matter. In good truth, he was a wondrous man; and when his tongue had acquired him all other im-

agidable success, — when it had been heard in halls of state, and in the courts of princes and potentates, — after it had made him known all over the world, even as a voice crying from shore to shore, — it finally persuaded his countrymen to select him for the Presidency. Before this time, — indeed, as soon as he began to grow celebrated, — his admirers had found out the resemblance between him and the Great Stone Face; and so much were they struck by it that throughout the country this distinguished gentleman was known by the name of Old Stony Phiz. The phrase was considered as giving a highly favorable aspect to his political prospects; for, as is likewise the case with the Popedom, nobody ever becomes President without taking a name other than his own.

While his friends were doing their best to make him President, Old Stony Phiz, as he was called, set out on a visit to the valley where he was born. Of course, he had no other object than to shake hands with his fellow-citizens, and neither thought nor cared about any effect which his progress through the country might have upon the election. Magnificent preparations were made to receive the illustrious statesman; a cavalcade of horsemen set forth to meet him at the boundary line of the State, and all the people left their business and gathered along the wayside to see him pass. Among these was Ernest. Though more than once disappointed, as we have seen, he had such a hopeful and confiding nature, that he was always ready to believe in whatever seemed beautiful and good. He kept his heart continually open, and thus was sure to catch the blessing from on high, when it should come. So now again, as buoyantly as ever, he went forth to behold the likeness of the Great Stone Face.



The cavalcade came prancing along the road, with a great clattering of hoofs and a mighty cloud of dust, which rose up so dense and high that the visage of the mountain-side was completely hidden from Ernest's eyes. All the great men of the neighborhood were there on horseback; militia officers, in uniform; the member of Congress; the sheriff of the county; the editors of newspapers; and many a farmer, too, had mounted his patient steed, with his Sunday coat upon his back. It really was a very brilliant spectacle, especially as there were numerous banners flaunting over the cavalcade, on some of which were gorgeous portraits of the illustrious statesman and the Great Stone Face, smiling familiarly at one another, like two brothers. If the pictures were to be trusted, the mutual resemblance, it must be confessed, was marvellous. We must not forget to mention that there was a band of music, which made the echoes of the mountains ring and reverberate with the loud triumph of its strains; so that airy and soul-thrilling melodies broke out among all the heights and hollows, as if every nook of his native valley had found a voice to welcome the distinguished guest. But the grandest effect was when the far-off mountain precipice flung back the music; for then the Great Stone Face itself seemed to be swelling the triumphant chorus, in acknowledgment that, at length, the man of prophecy was come.

All this while the people were throwing up their hats and shouting, with enthusiasm so contagious that the heart of Ernest kindled up, and he likewise threw up his hat, and shouted, as loudly as the loudest, "Huzza for the great man! Huzza for Old Stony Phiz!" But as yet he had not seen him.

"Here he is now!" cried those who stood near Ernest. "There! There! Look at Old Stony Phiz and then at the Old Man of the Mountain, and see if they are not as like as two twin-brothers!"

In the midst of all this gallant array, came an open barouche, drawn by four white horses; and in the barouche, with his massive head uncovered, sat the illustrious statesman, Old Stony Phiz himself.

"Confess it," said one of Ernest's neighbors to him, "the Great Stone Face has met its match at last!"

Now, it must be owned that, at his first glimpse of the countenance which was bowing and smiling from the barouche, Ernest did fancy that there was a resemblance between it and the old familiar face upon the mountain-side. The brow, with its massive depth and loftiness, and all the other features, indeed, were boldly and strongly hewn, as if in emulation of a more than heroic, of a Titanic model. But the sublimity and stateliness, the grand expression of a divine sympathy, that illuminated the mountain visage, and etherealized its ponderous granite substance into spirit, might here be sought in vain. Something had been originally left out, or had departed. And therefore the marvellously gifted statesman had always a weary gloom in the deep caverns of his eyes, as of a child that has outgrown its playthings, or a man of mighty faculties and little aims, whose life, with all its high performances, was vague and empty, because no high purpose had endowed it with reality.

Still Ernest's neighbor was thrusting his elbow into his side, and pressing him for an answer.

"Confess! confess! Is not he the very picture of your Old Man of the Mountain?"

"No!" said Ernest, bluntly, "I see little or no likeness."

"Then so much the worse for the Great Stone Face!" answered his neighbor; and again he set up a shout for Old Stony Phiz.

But Ernest turned away, melancholy, and almost despondent; for this was the saddest of his disappointments, to behold a man who might have fulfilled the prophecy, and had not willed to do so. Meantime, the cavalcade, the banners, the music, the barouches swept past him, with the vociferous crowd in the rear, leaving the dust to settle down, and the Great Stone Face to be revealed again, with the grandeur that it had worn for untold centuries.

"Lo, here I am, Ernest!" the benign lips seemed to say. "I have waited longer than thou, and am not yet weary. Fear not; the man will come."

The years hurried onward, treading in their haste on one another's heels. And now they began to bring white hairs, and scatter them over the head of Ernest; they made reverend wrinkles across his forehead, and furrows in his cheeks. He was an aged man. But not in vain had he grown old: more than the white hairs on his head were the sage thoughts in his mind; his wrinkles and furrows were inscriptions that Time had graved, and in which he had written legends of wisdom that had been tested by the tenor of a life. And Ernest had ceased to be obscure. Unsought for, undesired, had come the fame which so many seek, and made him known in the great world, beyond the limits of the valley in which he had dwelt so quietly. College professors, and even the active men of cities, came from far to see and converse with Ernest; for the report had gone abroad that this simple husband-

man had ideas unlike those of other men, not gained from books, but of a higher tone, — a tranquil and familiar majesty, as if he had been talking with the angels as his daily friends. Whether it were sage, statesman, or philanthropist, Ernest received these visitors with the gentle sincerity that had characterized him from boyhood, and spoke freely with them of whatever came uppermost, or lay deepest in his heart or their own. While they talked together his face would kindle, unawares, and shine upon them, as with a mild evening light. Pensive with the fulness of such discourse, his guests took leave and went their way ; and passing up the valley, paused to look at the Great Stone Face, imagining that they had seen its likeness in a human countenance, but could not remember where.

While Ernest had been growing up and growing old, a bountiful Providence had granted a new poet to this earth. He, likewise, was a native of the valley, but had spent the greater part of his life at a distance from that romantic region, pouring out his sweet music amid the bustle and din of cities. Often, however, did the mountains which had been familiar to him in his childhood lift their snowy peaks into the clear atmosphere of his poetry. Neither was the Great Stone Face forgotten, for the poet had celebrated it in an ode which was grand enough to have been uttered by its own majestic lips. The man of genius, we may say, had come down from heaven with wonderful endowments. If he sang of a mountain, the eyes of all mankind beheld a mightier grandeur reposing on its breast, or soaring to its summit, than had before been seen there. If his theme were a lovely lake, a celestial smile had now been thrown over



it, to gleam forever on its surface. If it were the vast old sea, even the deep immensity of its dread bosom seemed to swell the higher, as if moved by the emotions of the song. Thus the world assumed another and a better aspect from the hour that the poet blessed it with his happy eyes. The Creator had bestowed him, as the last best touch to his own handiwork. Creation was not finished till the poet came to interpret, and so complete it.

The effect was no less high and beautiful when his human brethren were the subject of his verse. The man or woman, sordid with the common dust of life, who crossed his daily path, and the little child who played in it, were glorified if he beheld them in his mood of poetic faith. He showed the golden links of the great chain that intertwined them with an angelic kindred; he brought out the hidden traits of a celestial birth that made them worthy of such kin. Some, indeed, there were, who thought to show the soundness of their judgment by affirming that all the beauty and dignity of the natural world existed only in the poet's fancy. Let such men speak for themselves, who undoubtedly appear to have been spawned forth by Nature with a contemptuous bitterness; she having plastered them up out of her refuse stuff, after all the swine were made. As respects all things else, the poet's ideal was the truest truth.

The songs of this poet found their way to Ernest. He read them after his customary toil, seated on the bench before his cottage door, where for such a length of time he had filled his repose with thought, by gazing at the Great Stone Face. And now as he read stanzas that caused the soul to thrill within him, he lifted his eyes to the vast countenance beaming on him so benignly.

"O majestic friend," he murmured, addressing the Great Stone Face, "is not this man worthy to resemble thee?"

The Face seemed to smile, but answered not a word.

Now it happened that the poet, though he dwelt so far away, had not only heard of Ernest, but had meditated much upon his character, until he deemed nothing so desirable as to meet this man, whose untaught wisdom walked hand in hand with the noble simplicity of his life. One summer morning, therefore, he took passage by the railroad, and, in the decline of the afternoon, alighted from the cars at no great distance from Ernest's cottage. The great hotel, which had formerly been the palace of Mr. Gathergold, was close at hand, but the poet, with his carpet-bag on his arm, inquired at once where Ernest dwelt, and was resolved to be accepted as his guest.

Approaching the door, he there found the good old man, holding a volume in his hand, which alternately he read, and then, with a finger between the leaves, looked lovingly at the Great Stone Face.

"Good evening," said the poet. "Can you give a traveller a night's lodging?"

"Willingly," answered Ernest; and then he added, smiling, "methinks I never saw the Great Stone Face look so hospitably at a stranger."

The poet sat down on the bench beside him, and he and Ernest talked together. Often had the poet held intercourse with the wittiest and the wisest, but never before with a man like Ernest, whose thoughts and feelings gushed up with such a natural freedom, and who made great truths so familiar by his simple utterance of them. Angels, as had been so often said, seemed to have wrought with him at his labor in the

fields ; angels seemed to have sat with him by the fire-side ; and, dwelling with angels as friend with friends, he had imbibed the sublimity of their ideas, and imbued it with the sweet and lowly charm of household words. So thought the poet. And Ernest, on the other hand, was moved and agitated by the living images which the poet flung out of his mind, and which peopled all the air about the cottage door with shapes of beauty, both gay and pensive. The sympathies of these two men instructed them with a profounder sense than either could have attained alone. Their minds accorded into one strain, and made delightful music which neither of them could have claimed as all his own, nor distinguished his own share from the other's. They led one another, as it were, into a high pavilion of their thoughts, so remote, and hitherto so dim, that they had never entered it before, and so beautiful that they desired to be there always.

As Ernest listened to the poet, he imagined that the Great Stone Face was bending forward to listen too. He gazed earnestly into the poet's glowing eyes.

"Who are you, my strangely gifted guest?" he said.

The poet laid his finger on the volume that Ernest had been reading.

"You have read these poems," said he. "You know me, then, — for I wrote them."

Again, and still more earnestly than before, Ernest examined the poet's features ; then turned towards the Great Stone Face ; then back, with an uncertain aspect, to his guest. But his countenance fell ; he shook his head, and sighed.

"Wherefore are you sad?" inquired the poet.

"Because," replied Ernest, "all through life I have awaited the fulfilment of a prophecy ; and, when

I read these poems, I hoped that it might be fulfilled in you."

"You hoped," answered the poet, faintly smiling, "to find in me the likeness of the Great Stone Face. And you are disappointed, as formerly with Mr. Gathergold, and Old Blood-and-Thunder, and Old Stony Phiz. Yes, Ernest, it is my doom. You must add my name to the illustrious three, and record another failure of your hopes. For — in shame and sadness do I speak it, Ernest — I am not worthy to be typified by yonder benign and majestic image."

"And why?" asked Ernest. He pointed to the volume. "Are not those thoughts divine?"

"They have a strain of the Divinity," replied the poet. "You can hear in them the far-off echo of a heavenly song. But my life, dear Ernest, has not corresponded with my thought. I have had grand dreams, but they have been only dreams, because I have lived — and that, too, by my own choice — among poor and mean realities. Sometimes even — shall I dare to say it? — I lack faith in the grandeur, the beauty, and the goodness, which my own works are said to have made more evident in nature and in human life. Why, then, pure seeker of the good and true, shouldst thou hope to find me in yonder image of the divine?"

The poet spoke sadly, and his eyes were dim with tears. So, likewise, were those of Ernest.

At the hour of sunset, as had long been his frequent custom, Ernest was to discourse to an assemblage of the neighboring inhabitants in the open air. He and the poet, arm in arm, still talking together as they went along, proceeded to the spot. It was a small nook among the hills, with a gray precipice behind,



the stern front of which was relieved by the pleasant foliage of many creeping plants, that made a tapestry for the naked rock, by hanging their festoons from all its rugged angles. At a small elevation above the ground, set in a rich framework of verdure, there appeared a niche, spacious enough to admit a human figure, with freedom for such gestures as spontaneously accompany earnest thought and genuine emotion. Into this natural pulpit Ernest ascended, and threw a look of familiar kindness around upon his audience. They stood, or sat, or reclined upon the grass, as seemed good to each, with the departing sunshine falling obliquely over them, and mingling its subdued cheerfulness with the solemnity of a grove of ancient trees, beneath and amid the boughs of which the golden rays were constrained to pass. In another direction was seen the Great Stone Face, with the same cheer, combined with the same solemnity, in its benignant aspect.

Ernest began to speak, giving to the people of what was in his heart and mind. His words had power, because they accorded with his thoughts; and his thoughts had reality and depth, because they harmonized with the life which he had always lived. It was not mere breath that this preacher uttered; they were the words of life, because a life of good deeds and holy love was melted into them. Pearls, pure and rich, had been dissolved into this precious draught. The poet, as he listened, felt that the being and character of Ernest were a nobler strain of poetry than he had ever written. His eyes glistening with tears, he gazed reverentially at the venerable man, and said within himself that never was there an aspect so worthy of a prophet and a sage as that mild, sweet, thoughtful

countenance, with the glory of white hair diffused about it. At a distance, but distinctly to be seen, high up in the golden light of the setting sun, appeared the Great Stone Face, with hoary mists around it, like the white hairs around the brow of Ernest. Its look of grand beneficence seemed to embrace the world.

At that moment, in sympathy with a thought which he was about to utter, the face of Ernest assumed a grandeur of expression, so imbued with benevolence, that the poet,<sup>1</sup> by an irresistible impulse, threw his arms aloft, and shouted, —

“Behold! Behold! Ernest is himself the likeness of the Great Stone Face!”

Then all the people looked and saw that what the deep-sighted poet said was true. The prophecy was fulfilled. But Ernest, having finished what he had to say, took the poet's arm, and walked slowly homeward, still hoping that some wiser and better man than himself would by and by appear, bearing a resemblance to the GREAT STONE FACE.

## MY VISIT TO NIAGARA.

NEVER did a pilgrim approach Niagara with deeper enthusiasm than mine. I had lingered away from it, and wandered to other scenes, because my treasury of anticipated enjoyments, comprising all the wonders of

<sup>1</sup> That the poet should have been the one to discover the resemblance accords with the conception of the poet himself in this little apologue. Poetic insight is still separable from integrity of character, and it was quite possible for this poet to see the ideal beauty in another, while conscious of his own defect. The humility of Ernest, as the last word of the story, completes the certainty of the likeness.

the world, had nothing else so magnificent, and I was loath to exchange the pleasures of hope for those of memory so soon. At length the day came. The stage-coach, with a Frenchman and myself on the back seat, had already left Lewiston, and in less than an hour would set us down in Manchester. I began to listen for the roar of the cataract, and trembled with a sensation like dread, as the moment drew nigh, when its voice of ages must roll, for the first time, on my ear. The French gentleman stretched himself from the window, and expressed loud admiration, while, by a sudden impulse, I threw myself back and closed my eyes. When the scene shut in, I was glad to think, that for me the whole burst of Niagara was yet in futurity. We rolled on, and entered the village of Manchester, bordering on the falls.

I am quite ashamed of myself here. Not that I ran like a madman to the falls, and plunged into the thickest of the spray, — never stopping to breathe, till breathing was impossible ; not that I committed this, or any other suitable extravagance. On the contrary, I alighted with perfect decency and composure, gave my cloak to the black waiter, pointed out my baggage, and inquired, not the nearest way to the cataract, but about the dinner-hour. The interval was spent in arranging my dress. Within the last fifteen minutes, my mind had grown strangely benumbed, and my spirits apathetic, with a slight depression, not decided enough to be termed sadness. My enthusiasm was in a deathlike slumber. Without aspiring to immortality, as he did, I could have imitated that English traveller, who turned back from the point where he first heard the thunder of Niagara, after crossing the ocean to behold it. Many a Western trader, by the by, has

performed a similar act of heroism with more heroic simplicity, deeming it no such wonderful feat to dine at the hotel and resume his route to Buffalo or Lewiston, while the cataract was roaring unseen.

Such has often been my apathy, when objects, long sought, and earnestly desired, were placed within my reach. After dinner — at which an unwonted and perverse epicurism detained me longer than usual — I lighted a cigar and paced the piazza, minutely attentive to the aspect and business of a very ordinary village. Finally, with reluctant step, and the feeling of an intruder, I walked towards Goat Island. At the toll-house, there were farther excuses for delaying the inevitable moment. My signature was required in a huge ledger, containing similar records innumerable, many of which I read. The skin of a great sturgeon, and other fishes, beasts, and reptiles; a collection of minerals, such as lie in heaps near the falls; some Indian moccasins, and other trifles, made of deer-skin and embroidered with beads; several newspapers, from Montreal, New York, and Boston, — all attracted me in turn. Out of a number of twisted sticks, the manufacture of a Tuscarora Indian, I selected one of curled maple, curiously convoluted, and adorned with the carved images of a snake and a fish. Using this as my pilgrim's staff, I crossed the bridge. Above and below me were the rapids, a river of impetuous snow, with here and there a dark rock amid its whiteness, resisting all the physical fury, as any cold spirit did the moral influences of the scene. On reaching Goat Island, which separates the two great segments of the falls, I chose the right-hand path, and followed it to the edge of the American cascade. There, while the falling sheet was yet invisible,



I saw the vapor that never vanishes, and the Eternal Rainbow of Niagara.

It was an afternoon of glorious sunshine, without a cloud, save those of the cataracts. I gained an insulated rock, and beheld a broad sheet of brilliant and unbroken foam, not shooting in a curved line from the top of the precipice, but falling headlong down from height to depth. A narrow stream diverged from the main branch, and hurried over the crag by a channel of its own, leaving a little pine-clad island and a streak of precipice between itself and the larger sheet. Below arose the mist, on which was painted a dazzling sunbow with two concentric shadows, — one, almost as perfect as the original brightness; and the other, drawn faintly round the broken edge of the cloud.

Still I had not half seen Niagara. Following the verge of the island, the path led me to the Horseshoe, where the real, broad St. Lawrence, rushing along on a level with its banks, pours its whole breadth over a concave line of precipice, and thence pursues its course between lofty crags towards Ontario. A sort of bridge, two or three feet wide, stretches out along the edge of the descending sheet, and hangs upon the rising mist, as if that were the foundation of the frail structure. Here I stationed myself in the blast of wind, which the rushing river bore along with it. The bridge was tremulous beneath me, and marked the tremor of the solid earth. I looked along the whitening rapids, and endeavored to distinguish a mass of water far above the falls, to follow it to their verge, and go down with it, in fancy, to the abyss of clouds and storm. Casting my eyes across the river, and every side, I took in the whole scene at a glance, and tried to comprehend it in one vast idea. After an

hour thus spent, I left the bridge, and by a staircase, winding almost interminably round a post, descended to the base of the precipice. From that point, my path lay over slippery stones, and among great fragments of the cliff, to the edge of the cataract, where the wind at once enveloped me in spray, and perhaps dashed the rainbow round me. Were my long desires fulfilled? And had I seen Niagara?

Oh that I had never heard of Niagara till I beheld it! Blessed were the wanderers of old, who heard its deep roar, sounding through the woods, as the summons to an unknown wonder, and approached its awful brink, in all the freshness of native feeling. Had its own mysterious voice been the first to warn me of its existence, then, indeed, I might have knelt down and worshipped. But I had come thither, haunted with a vision of foam and fury, and dizzy cliffs, and an ocean tumbling down out of the sky, — a scene, in short, which nature had too much good taste and calm simplicity to realize. My mind had struggled to adapt these false conceptions to the reality, and finding the effort vain, a wretched sense of disappointment weighed me down. I climbed the precipice, and threw myself on the earth, feeling that I was unworthy to look at the Great Falls, and careless about beholding them again. . . .

All that night, as there has been and will be for ages past and to come, a rushing sound was heard, as if a great tempest were sweeping through the air. It mingled with my dreams, and made them full of storm and whirlwind. Whenever I awoke, and heard this dread sound in the air, and the windows rattling as with a mighty blast, I could not rest again, till looking forth, I saw how bright the stars were, and that

every leaf in the garden was motionless. Never was a summer night more calm to the eye, nor a gale of autumn louder to the ear. The rushing sound proceeds from the rapids, and the rattling of the casements is but an effect of the vibration of the whole house, shaken by the jar of the cataract. The noise of the rapids draws the attention from the true voice of Niagara, which is a dull, muffled thunder, resounding between the cliffs. I spent a wakeful hour at midnight, in distinguishing its reverberations, and rejoiced to find that my former awe and enthusiasm were reviving.

Gradually, and after much contemplation, I came to know, by my own feelings, that Niagara is indeed a wonder of the world, and not the less wonderful, because time and thought must be employed in comprehending it. Casting aside all preconceived notions, and preparation to be dire-struck or delighted, the beholder must stand beside it in the simplicity of his heart, suffering the mighty scene to work its own impression. Night after night, I dreamed of it, and was gladdened every morning by the consciousness of a growing capacity to enjoy it. Yet I will not pretend to the all-absorbing enthusiasm of some more fortunate spectators, nor deny that very trifling causes would draw my eyes and thoughts from the cataract.

The last day that I was to spend at Niagara, before my departure for the Far West, I sat upon the Table Rock. This celebrated station did not now, as of old, project fifty feet beyond the line of the precipice, but was shattered by the fall of an immense fragment, which lay distant on the shore below. Still, on the utmost verge of the rock, with my feet hanging over it, I felt as if suspended in the open air. Never be



fore had my mind been in such perfect unison with the scene. There were intervals, when I was conscious of nothing but the great river, rolling calmly into the abyss, rather descending than precipitating itself, and acquiring tenfold majesty from its unhurried motion. It came like the march of Destiny. It was not taken by surprise, but seemed to have anticipated, in all its course through the broad lakes, that it must pour their collected waters down this height. The perfect foam of the river, after its descent, and the ever-varying shapes of mist, rising up, to become clouds in the sky, would be the very picture of confusion, were it merely transient, like the rage of a tempest. But when the beholder has stood awhile, and perceives no lull in the storm, and considers that the vapor and the foam are as everlasting as the rocks which produce them, all this turmoil assumes a sort of calmness. It soothes, while it awes the mind.

Leaning over the cliff, I saw the guide conducting two adventurers behind the falls. It was pleasant, from that high seat in the sunshine, to observe them struggling against the eternal storm of the lower regions, with heads bent down, now faltering, now pressing forward, and finally swallowed up in their victory. After their disappearance, a blast rushed out with an old hat, which it had swept from one of their heads. The rock, to which they were directing their unseen course, is marked, at a fearful distance on the exterior of the sheet, by a jet of foam. The attempt to reach it appears both poetical and perilous to a looker-on, but may be accomplished without much more difficulty or hazard than in stemming a violent northeaster. In a few moments, forth came the children of the mist. Dripping and breathless, they crept



along the base of the cliff, ascended to the guide's cottage, and received, I presume, a certificate of their achievement, with three verses of sublime poetry on the back.

My contemplations were often interrupted by strangers who came down from Forsyth's to take their first view of the falls. A short, ruddy, middle-aged gentleman, fresh from Old England, peeped over the rock, and evinced his approbation by a broad grin. His spouse, a very robust lady, afforded a sweet example of maternal solicitude, being so intent on the safety of her little boy that she did not even glance at Niagara. As for the child, he gave himself wholly to the enjoyment of a stick of candy. Another traveller, a native American, and no rare character among us, produced a volume of Captain Hall's tour, and labored earnestly to adjust Niagara to the captain's description, departing, at last, without one new idea or sensation of his own. The next comer was provided, not with a printed book, but with a blank sheet of foolscap, from top to bottom of which, by means of an ever-pointed pencil, the cataract was made to thunder. In a little talk which we had together, he awarded his approbation to the general view, but censured the position of Goat Island, observing that it should have been thrown farther to the right, so as to widen the American falls, and contract those of the Horseshoe. Next appeared two traders of Michigan, who declared, that, upon the whole, the sight was worth looking at; there certainly was an immense water-power here; but that, after all, they would go twice as far to see the noble stone-works of Lockport, where the Grand Canal is locked down a descent of sixty feet. They were succeeded by a young fellow, in a homespun cotton dress, with a staff in his

hand, and a pack over his shoulders. He advanced close to the edge of the rock, where his attention, at first wavering among the different components of the scene, finally became fixed in the angle of the Horse-shoe falls, which is, indeed, the central point of interest. His whole soul seemed to go forth and be transported thither, till the staff slipped from his relaxed grasp, and falling down — down — down — struck upon the fragment of the Table Rock.

In this manner I spent some hours, watching the varied impression, made by the cataract, on those who disturbed me, and returning to unwearied contemplation, when left alone. At length my time came to depart. There is a grassy footpath through the woods, along the summit of the bank, to a point whence a causeway, hewn in the side of the precipice, goes winding down to the Ferry, about half a mile below the Table Rock. The sun was near setting, when I emerged from the shadow of the trees, and began the descent. The indirectness of my downward road continually changed the point of view, and showed me, in rich and repeated succession, now, the whitening rapids and majestic leap of the main river, which appeared more deeply massive as the light departed; now, the lovelier picture, yet still sublime, of Goat Island, with its rocks and grove, and the lesser falls, tumbling over the right bank of the St. Lawrence, like a tributary stream; now, the long vista of the river, as it eddied and whirled between the cliffs, to pass through Ontario toward the sea, and everywhere to be wondered at, for this one unrivalled scene. The golden sunshine tinged the sheet of the American cascade, and painted on its heaving spray the broken semicircle of a rainbow, heaven's own beauty crown-

ing earth's sublimity. My steps were slow, and I paused long at every turn of the descent, as one lingers and pauses who discerns a brighter and brightening excellence in what he must soon behold no more. The solitude of the old wilderness now reigned over the whole vicinity of the falls. My enjoyment became the more rapturous, because no poet shared it, nor wretch devoid of poetry profaned it; but the spot so famous through the world was all my own!

## JOHN GREENLEAF WHITTIER.

---

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

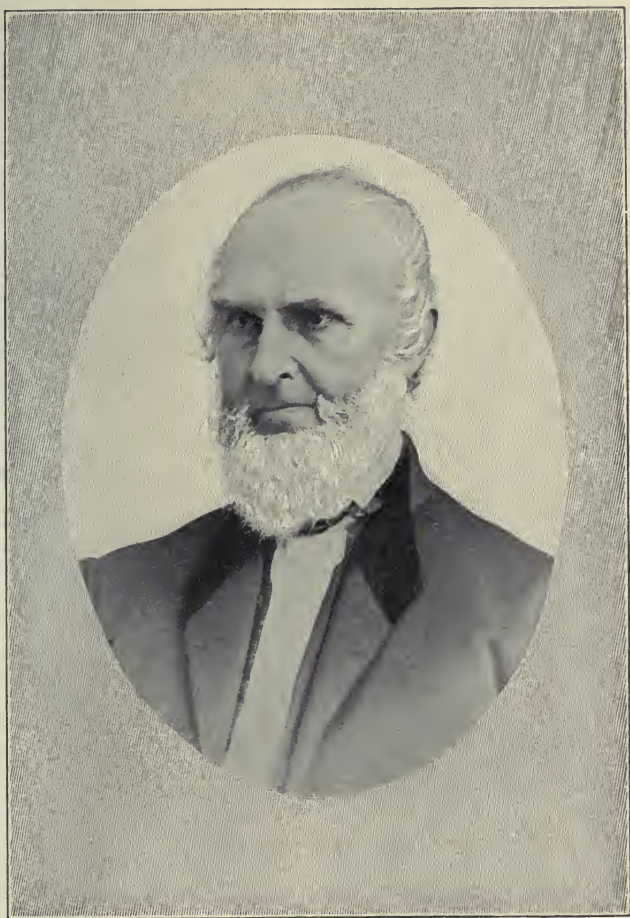
JOHN GREENLEAF WHITTIER, of Quaker birth in Puritan surroundings, was born at the homestead near Haverhill, Massachusetts, December 17, 1807. Until his eighteenth year he lived at home, working upon the farm and in the little shoemaker's shop which nearly every farm then had as a resource in the otherwise idle hours of winter. The manual, homely labor upon which he was employed was in part the foundation of that deep interest which the poet never has ceased to take in the toil and plain fortunes of the people. Throughout his poetry runs this golden thread of sympathy with honorable labor and enforced poverty, and many poems are directly inspired by it. While at work with his father he sent poems to the *Haverhill Gazette*, and that he was not in subjection to his work is very evident by the fact that he translated it and similar occupations into *Songs of Labor*. He had two years' academic training, and in 1829 became editor in Boston of the *American Manufacturer*, a paper published in the interest of the tariff. In 1831 he published his *Legends of New England*, prose sketches in a department of literature which has always had strong claims upon his interest. No American writer, unless Irving be excepted, has done so much to throw a graceful veil of poetry and legend over the country of his daily life. Essex County, in Massachusetts, and the beaches lying between Newburyport and Portsmouth blossom with flowers of Whittier's planting. He has made rare use of



the homely stories which he had heard in his childhood, and learned afterward from familiar intercourse with country people, and he has himself used invention delicately and in harmony with the spirit of the New England coast. Although of a body of men who in earlier days had been persecuted by the Puritans of New England, his generous mind has not failed to detect all the good that was in the stern creed and life of the persecutors, and to bring it forward into the light of his poetry.

In 1836 he published *Mogg Megone*, a poem which stood first in the collected edition of his poems issued in 1857, and was admitted there with some reluctance, apparently, by the author. In that and the *Bridal of Pennacook* he draws his material from the relation held between the Indians and the settlers. His sympathy was always with the persecuted and oppressed, and while historically he found an object of pity and self-reproach in the Indian, his profoundest compassion and most stirring indignation were called out by African slavery. From the earliest he was upon the side of the abolition party. Year after year poems fell from his pen in which with all the eloquence of his nature he sought to enlist his countrymen upon the side of emancipation and freedom. It is not too much to say that in the slow development of public sentiment Whittier's steady song was one of the most powerful advocates that the slave had, all the more powerful that it was free from malignity or unjust accusation.

Whittier's poems have been issued in a number of small volumes, and collected into single larger volumes. Besides those already indicated, there are a number which owe their origin to his tender regard for domestic life and the simple experience of the men and women about him. Of these *Snow-Bound* is the most memorable. Then his fondness for a story has led him to use the ballad form in many cases, and *Mabel Martin* is one of a number, in which the narrative is blended with a fine and strong charity. The catholic mind of this writer and his instinct for discovering the pure



John George Hutton



moral in human action are disclosed by a number of poems, drawn from a wide range of historical fact, dealing with a great variety of religious faiths and circumstances of life, but always pointing to some sweet and strong truth of the divine life. Of such are *The Brother of Mercy*, *The Gift of Tritemius*, *The Two Rabbis*, and others. Whittier's *Prose Works* are comprised in three volumes, and consist mainly of his contributions to journals and of *Leaves from Margaret Smith's Journal*, a fictitious diary of a visitor to New England in 1678.

Mr. Whittier died at Hampton Falls, N. H., September 7, 1892. His life has been written by his literary executor, Samuel T. Pickard, under the title *Life and Letters of John Greenleaf Whittier*.



## SNOW-BOUND.

### A WINTER IDYL.

"As the Spirits of Darkness be stronger in the dark, so good Spirits which be Angels of Light are augmented not only by the Divine light of the Sun, but also by our common Wood fire : and as the Celestial Fire drives away dark spirits, so also this our Fire of Wood doth the same." — COR. AGRIPPA, *Occult Philosophy*, Book I. ch. v.

"Announced by all the trumpets of the sky,  
Arrives the snow ; and, driving o'er the fields,  
Seems nowhere to alight ; the whited air  
Hides hills and woods, the river and the heaven,  
And veils the farm-house at the garden's end.  
The sled and traveller stopped, the courier's feet  
Delayed, all friends shut out, the housemates sit  
Around the radiant fireplace, inclosed  
In a tumultuous privacy of storm."

EMERSON, *The Snow-Storm*.

THE sun that brief December day  
Rose cheerless over hills of gray,  
And, darkly circled, gave at noon  
A sadder light than waning moon.  
Slow tracing down the thickening sky  
Its mute and ominous prophecy,  
A portent seeming less than threat,  
It sank from sight before it set.  
A chill no coat, however stout,  
Of homespun stuff could quite shut out,

[5

10

A hard, dull bitterness of cold,  
That checked, mid-vein, the circling race  
Of life-blood in the sharpened face,  
The coming of the snow-storm told.  
The wind blew east; we heard the roar 15  
Of Ocean on his wintry shore,  
And felt the strong pulse throbbing there  
Beat with low rhythm our inland air.

Meanwhile we did our nightly chores,—  
Brought in the wood from out of doors, 20  
Littered the stalls, and from the mows  
Raked down the herd's-grass for the cows:  
Heard the horse whinnying for his corn;  
And, sharply clashing horn on horn,  
Impatient down the stanchion rows 25  
The cattle shake their walnut bows;  
While, peering from his early perch  
Upon the scaffold's pole of birch,  
The cock his crested helmet bent  
And down his querulous challenge sent. 30  
Unwarmed by any sunset light  
The gray day darkened into night,  
A night made hoary with the swarm  
And whirl-dance of the blinding storm,  
As zigzag wavering to and fro 35  
Crossed and recrossed the wingéd snow:  
And ere the early bedtime came  
The white drift piled the window-frame,  
And through the glass the clothes-line posts  
Looked in like tall and sheeted ghosts. 40

So all night long the storm roared on;  
The morning broke without a sun;

In tiny spherule traced with lines  
Of Nature's geometric signs,  
In starry flake and pellicle 45  
All day the hoary meteor fell ;  
And, when the second morning shone,  
We looked upon a world unknown,  
On nothing we could call our own.  
Around the glistening wonder bent 50  
The blue walls of the firmament,  
No cloud above, no earth below, —  
A universe of sky and snow !  
The old familiar sights of ours  
Took marvellous shapes ; strange domes and towers  
Rose up where sty or corn-crib stood, 55  
Or garden-wall, or belt of wood ;  
A smooth white mound the brush-pile showed,  
A fenceless drift what once was road ;  
The bridle-post an old man sat 60  
With loose-flung coat and high cocked hat ;  
The well-curb had a Chinese roof ;  
And even the long sweep, high aloof,  
In its slant splendor, seemed to tell  
Of Pisa's leaning miracle. 65

A prompt, decisive man, no breath  
Our father wasted : " Boys, a path ! "

65. The Leaning Tower of Pisa, in Italy, which inclines from the perpendicular a little more than six feet in eighty, is a campanile, or bell-tower, built of white marble, very beautiful, but so famous for its singular deflection from perpendicularity as to be known almost wholly as a curiosity. Opinions differ as to the leaning being the result of accident or design, but the better judgment makes it an effect of the character of the soil on which it is built. The Cathedral to which it belongs has suffered so much from a similar cause that there is not a vertical line in it.

Well pleased, (for when did farmer boy  
 Count such a summons less than joy ?)  
 Our buskins on our feet we drew ; 70

With mittened hands, and caps drawn low  
 To guard our necks and ears from snow,  
 We cut the solid whiteness through.  
 And, where the drift was deepest, made  
 A tunnel walled and overlaid 75

With dazzling crystal : we had read  
 Of rare Aladdin's wondrous cave,  
 And to our own his name we gave,  
 With many a wish the luck were ours  
 To test his lamp's supernal powers. 80

We reached the barn with merry din,  
 And roused the prisoned brutes within.  
 The old horse thrust his long head out,  
 And grave with wonder gazed about ;  
 The cock his lusty greeting said, 85  
 And forth his speckled harem led ;

The oxen lashed their tails, and hooked,  
 And mild reproach of hunger looked ;  
 The hornéd patriarch of the sheep,  
 Like Egypt's Amun roused from sleep, 90  
 Shook his sage head with gesture mute,  
 And emphasized with stamp of foot.

All day the gusty north-wind bore  
 The loosening drift its breath before ;  
 Low circling round its southern zone, 95  
 The sun through dazzling snow-mist shone,  
 No church-bell lent its Christian tone

90. *Amun*, or *Ammon*, was an Egyptian being, representing an attribute of Deity under the form of a ram.



To the savage air, no social smoke  
Curled over woods of snow-hung oak.  
A solitude made more intense 100  
By dreary-voicéd elements,  
The shrieking of the mindless wind,  
The moaning tree-boughs swaying blind,  
And on the glass the unmeaning beat  
Of ghostly finger-tips of sleet. 105  
Beyond the circle of our hearth  
No welcome sound of toil or mirth  
Unbound the spell, and testified  
Of human life and thought outside.  
We minded that the sharpest ear 110  
The buried brooklet could not hear,  
The music of whose liquid lip  
Had been to us companionship,  
And, in our lonely life, had grown  
To have an almost human tone. 115

As night drew on, and, from the crest  
Of wooded knolls that ridged the west,  
The sun, a snow-blown traveller, sank  
From sight beneath the smothering bank,  
We piled with care our nightly stack 120  
Of wood against the chimney-back, —  
The oaken log, green, huge, and thick,  
And on its top the stout back-stick;  
The knotty forestick laid apart,  
And filled between with curious art 125  
The ragged brush; then, hovering near,  
We watched the first red blaze appear,  
Heard the sharp crackle, caught the gleam  
On whitewashed wall and sagging beam,  
Until the old, rude-furnished room 130

Burst, flower-like, into rosy bloom ;  
While radiant with a mimic flame  
Outside the sparkling drift became,  
And through the bare-boughed lilac-tree  
Our own warm hearth seemed blazing free. 135  
The crane and pendent trammels showed,  
The Turk's heads on the andirons glowed ;  
While childish fancy, prompt to tell  
The meaning of the miracle,  
Whispered the old rhyme : "*Under the tree* 140  
*When fire outdoors burns merrily,*  
*There the witches are making tea.*"

The moon above the eastern wood  
Shone at its full ; the hill-range stood  
Transfigured in the silver flood, 145  
Its blown snows flashing cold and keen,  
Dead white, save where some sharp ravine  
Took shadow, or the sombre green  
Of hemlocks turned to pitchy black  
Against the whiteness of their back. 150  
For such a world and such a night  
Most fitting that unwarming light,  
Which only seemed where'er it fell  
To make the coldness visible.

Shut in from all the world without, 155  
We sat the clean-winged hearth about,  
Content to let the north-wind roar  
In baffled rage at pane and door,  
While the red logs before us beat  
The frost-line back with tropic heat ; 160  
And ever, when a louder blast  
Shook beam and rafter as it passed,

The merrier up its roaring draught  
The great throat of the chimney laughed,  
The house-dog on his paws outspread 165  
Laid to the fire his drowsy head,  
The cat's dark silhouette on the wall  
A couchant tiger's seemed to fall ;  
And, for the winter fireside meet,  
Between the andirons' straddling feet, 170  
The mug of cider simmered slow,  
The apples sputtered in a row,  
And, close at hand, the basket stood  
With nuts from brown October's wood.

What matter how the night behaved ? 175  
What matter how the north-wind raved ?  
Blow high, blow low, not all its snow  
Could quench our hearth-fire's ruddy glow.  
O Time and Change ! — with hair as gray  
As was my sire's that winter day, 180  
How strange it seems, with so much gone  
Of life and love, to still live on !  
Ah, brother ! only I and thou  
Are left of all that circle now, —  
The dear home faces whereupon 185  
That fitful firelight paled and shone.  
Henceforward, listen as we will,  
The voices of that hearth are still ;  
Look where we may, the wide earth o'er,  
Those lighted faces smile no more. 190  
We tread the paths their feet have worn,  
We sit beneath their orchard trees,  
We hear, like them, the hum of bees  
And rustle of the bladed corn ;  
We turn the pages that they read, 195

Their written words we linger o'er,  
 But in the sun they cast no shade,  
 No voice is heard, no sign is made,  
 No step is on the conscious floor !  
 Yet Love will dream and Faith will trust 200  
 (Since He who knows our need is just)  
 That somehow, somewhere, meet we must.  
 Alas for him who never sees  
 The stars shine through his cypress-trees !  
 Who, hopeless, lays his dead away, 205  
 Nor looks to see the breaking day  
 Across the mournful marbles play !  
 Who hath not learned, in hours of faith,  
 The truth to flesh and sense unknown,  
 That Life is ever lord of Death, 210  
 And Love can never lose its own !

We sped the time with stories old,  
 Wrought puzzles out, and riddles told,  
 Or stammered from our school-book lore  
 "The chief of Gambia's golden shore." 215  
 How often since, when all the land  
 Was clay in Slavery's shaping hand,  
 As if a far-blown trumpet stirred  
 The languorous, sin-sick air, I heard :  
 "Does not the voice of reason cry, 220  
 Claim the first right which Nature gave,  
 From the red scourge of bondage fly,  
 Nor deign to live a burdened slave !"  
 Our father rode again his ride

215. This line and lines 220-223 are taken from *The African Chief*, a poem by Mrs. Sarah Wentworth Morton, which was included in Caleb Bingham's *The American Preceptor*, a school-book used in Whittier's boyhood.



On Memphremagog's wooded side ; 226  
Sat down again to moose and samp  
In trapper's hut and Indian camp ;  
Lived o'er the old idyllic ease  
Beneath St. François' hemlock-trees ;  
Again for him the moonlight shone 230  
On Norman cap and bodiced zone ;  
Again he heard the violin play  
Which led the village dance away,  
And mingled in its merry whirl  
The grandam and the laughing girl. 235  
Or, nearer home, our steps he led  
Where Salisbury's level marshes spread  
Mile-wide as flies the laden bee ;  
Where merry mowers, hale and strong,  
Swept, scythe on scythe, their swaths along 240  
The low green prairies of the sea.  
We shared the fishing off Boar's Head,  
And round the rocky Isles of Shoals  
The hake-broil on the driftwood coals ;  
The chowder on the sand-beach made, 245  
Dipped by the hungry, steaming hot,  
With spoons of clam-shell from the pot.  
We heard the tales of witchcraft old,  
And dream and sign and marvel told  
To sleepy listeners as they lay 250  
Stretched idly on the salted hay,  
Adrift along the winding shores,  
When favoring breezes deigned to blow  
The square sail of the gundelow,  
And idle lay the useless oars. 255

Our mother, while she turned her wheel  
Or run the new-knit stocking heel,

Told how the Indian hordes came down  
 At midnight on Cochecho town,  
 And how her own great-uncle bore 260  
 His cruel scalp-mark to fourscore.  
 Recalling, in her fitting phrase,  
     So rich and picturesque and free  
     (The common unrhymed poetry  
 Of simple life and country ways), 265  
 The story of her early days, —  
 She made us welcome to her home ;  
 Old hearths grew wide to give us room ;  
 We stole with her a frightened look  
 At the gray wizard's conjuring-book, 270  
 The fame whereof went far and wide  
 Through all the simple country-side ;  
 We heard the hawks at twilight play,  
 The boat-horn on Piscataqua,  
 The loon's weird laughter far away ; 275  
 We fished her little trout-brook, knew  
 What flowers in wood and meadow grew,  
 What sunny hillsides autumn-brown  
 She climbed to shake the ripe nuts down,  
 Saw where in sheltered cove and bay 280  
 The duck's black squadron anchored lay,  
 And heard the wild geese calling loud  
 Beneath the gray November cloud.  
 Then, haply, with a look more grave,  
 And soberer tone, some tale she gave 285  
 From painful Sewel's ancient tome,

259. Dover in New Hampshire.

286. William Sewel was the historian of the Quakers. Charles Lamb seemed to have as good an opinion of the book as Whittier. In his essay *A Quakers' Meeting*, in *Essays of Elia*, he says :  
 " Reader, if you are not acquainted with it, I would recommend

Beloved in every Quaker home,  
 Of faith fire-winged by martyrdom,  
 Or Chalkley's Journal, old and quaint, —  
 Gentlest of skippers, rare sea-saint! —  
 Who, when the dreary calms prevailed,  
 And water-butt and bread-cask failed,  
 And cruel, hungry eyes pursued  
 His portly presence, mad for food,  
 With dark hints muttered under breath  
 Of casting lots for life or death,

290

295

to you, above all church-narratives, to read Sewel's *History of the Quakers*. . . . It is far more edifying and affecting than anything you will read of Wesley or his colleagues."

289. Thomas Chalkley was an Englishman of Quaker parentage, born in 1675, who travelled extensively as a preacher, and finally made his home in Philadelphia. He died in 1749; his *Journal* was first published in 1747. His own narrative of the incident which the poet relates is as follows: "To stop their murmuring, I told them they should not need to cast lots, which was usual in such cases, which of us should die first, for I would freely offer up my life to do them good. One said, 'God bless you! I will not eat any of you.' Another said, 'He would rather die before he would eat any of me;' and so said several. I can truly say, on that occasion, at that time, my life was not dear to me, and that I was serious and ingenuous in my proposition: and as I was leaning over the side of the vessel, thoughtfully considering my proposal to the company, and looking in my mind to Him that made me, a very large dolphin came up towards the top or surface of the water, and looked me in the face; and I called the people to put a hook into the sea, and take him, for here is one come to redeem me (I said to them). And they put a hook into the sea, and the fish readily took it, and they caught him. He was longer than myself. I think he was about six feet long, and the largest that ever I saw. This plainly showed us that we ought not to distrust the providence of the Almighty. The people were quieted by this act of Providence, and murmured no more. We caught enough to eat plentifully of, till we got into the capes of Delaware."

Offered, if Heaven withheld supplies,  
To be himself the sacrifice.

Then, suddenly, as if to save

The good man from his living grave,

300

A ripple on the water grew,

A school of porpoise flashed in view.

"Take, eat," he said, "and be content;

These fishes in my stead are sent

By Him who gave the tangled ram

305

To spare the child of Abraham."

Our uncle, innocent of books,

Was rich in lore of fields and brooks,

The ancient teachers never dumb

Of Nature's unhoused lyceum.

310

In moons and tides and weather wise,

He read the clouds as prophecies,

And foul or fair could well divine,

By many an occult hint and sign,

Holding the cunning-warded keys

315

To all the woodcraft mysteries;

Himself to Nature's heart so near

That all her voices in his ear

Of beast or bird had meanings clear,

Like Apollonius of old,

320

Who knew the tales the sparrows told,

Or Hermes, who interpreted

310. The measure requires the accent ly'ceum, but in stricter use the accent is lyce'um.

320. A philosopher born in the first century of the Christian era, of whom many strange stories were told, especially regarding his converse with birds and animals.

322. Hermes Trismegistus, a celebrated Egyptian priest and philosopher, to whom was attributed the revival of geometry, arithmetic, and art among the Egyptians. He was little later than Apollonius.



What the sage cranes of Nilus said ;  
 A simple, guileless, childlike man,  
 Content to live where life began ; 325  
 Strong only on his native grounds,  
 The little world of sights and sounds  
 Whose girdle was the parish bounds,  
 Whereof his fondly partial pride  
 The common features magnified, 330  
 As Surrey hills to mountains grew  
 In White of Selborne's loving view, —  
 He told how teal and loon he shot,  
 And how the eagle's eggs he got,  
 The feats on pond and river done, 335  
 The prodigies of rod and gun ;  
 Till, warming with the tales he told,  
 Forgotten was the outside cold,  
 The bitter wind unheeded blew,  
 From ripening corn the pigeons flew, 340  
 The partridge drummed i' the wood, the mink  
 Went fishing down the river-brink.  
 In fields with bean or clover gay,  
 The woodchuck, like a hermit gray,  
     Peered from the doorway of his cell ; 345  
 The muskrat plied the mason's trade,  
 And tier by tier his mud-walls laid ;  
 And from the shagbark overhead  
     The grizzled squirrel dropped his shell.

Next, the dear aunt, whose smile of cheer 350  
 And voice in dreams I see and hear, —

332. Gilbert White, of Selborne, England, was a clergyman who wrote the *Natural History of Selborne*, a minute, affectionate, and charming description of what could be seen, as it were, from his own doorstep. The accuracy of his observation and the delightfulness of his manner have kept the book a classic.

The sweetest woman ever Fate  
 Perverse denied a household mate,  
 Who, lonely, homeless, not the less  
 Found peace in love's unselfishness, 355  
 And welcome whereso'er she went,  
 A calm and gracious element,  
 Whose presence seemed the sweet income  
 And womanly atmosphere of home, —  
 Called up her girlhood memories, 360  
 The huskings and the apple-bees,  
 The sleigh-rides and the summer sails,  
 Weaving through all the poor details  
 And homespun warp of circumstance  
 A golden woof-thread of romance. 365  
 For well she kept her genial mood  
 And simple faith of maidenhood;  
 Before her still a cloud-land lay,  
 The mirage loomed across her way;  
 The morning dew, that dried so soon 370  
 With others, glistened at her noon;  
 Through years of toil and soil and care,  
 From glossy tress to thin gray hair,  
 All unprofaned she held apart  
 The virgin fancies of the heart. 375  
 Be shame to him of woman born  
 Who hath for such but thought of scorn.

There, too, our elder sister plied  
 Her evening task the stand beside;  
 A full, rich nature, free to trust, 380  
 Truthful and almost sternly just,  
 Impulsive, earnest, prompt to act,  
 And make her generous thought a fact,  
 Keeping with many a light disguise

The secret of self-sacrifice.

385

O heart sore-tried ! thou hast the best  
That Heaven itself could give thee, — rest,  
Rest from all bitter thoughts and things !

How many a poor one's blessing went  
With thee beneath the low green tent  
Whose curtain never outward swings !

390

As one who held herself a part  
Of all she saw, and let her heart  
Against the household bosom lean,

Upon the motley-braided mat  
Our youngest and our dearest sat,  
Lifting her large, sweet, asking eyes,  
Now bathed within the fadeless green  
And holy peace of Paradise.

396

Oh, looking from some heavenly hill,  
Or from the shade of saintly palms,  
Or silver reach of river calms,

400

Do those large eyes behold me still ?

With me one little year ago : —

The chill weight of the winter snow

405

For months upon her grave has lain ;  
And now, when summer south-winds blow

And brier and harebell bloom again,  
I tread the pleasant paths we trod,

I see the violet-sprinkled sod,  
Whereon she leaned, too frail and weak

410

The hillside flowers she loved to seek,

Yet following me where'er I went

With dark eyes full of love's content.

The birds are glad ; the brier-rose fills

415

398. *Th' unfading green* would be harsher, but more correct, since the termination *less* is added to nouns and not to verbs.

The air with sweetness ; all the hills  
Stretch green to June's unclouded sky ;  
But still I wait with ear and eye  
For something gone which should be nigh,  
A loss in all familiar things, 420  
In flower that blooms, and bird that sings.  
And yet, dear heart ! remembering thee,  
Am I not richer than of old ?  
Safe in thy immortality,  
What change can reach the wealth I hold ? 425  
What chance can mar the pearl and gold  
Thy love hath left in trust with me ?  
And while in life's late afternoon,  
Where cool and long the shadows grow,  
I walk to meet the night that soon 430  
Shall shape and shadow overflow,  
I cannot feel that thou art far,  
Since near at need the angels are,  
And when the sunset gates unbar,  
Shall I not see thee waiting stand, 435  
And, white against the evening star,  
The welcome of thy beckoning hand ?

Brisk wielder of the birch and rule,  
The master of the district school  
Held at the fire his favored place ; 440  
Its warm glow lit a laughing face  
Fresh-hued and fair, where scarce appeared  
The uncertain prophecy of beard.  
He teased the mitten-blinded cat,  
Played cross-pins on my uncle's hat, 445  
Sang songs, and told us what befalls  
In classic Dartmouth's college halls.  
Born the wild Northern hills among,



From whence his yeoman father wrung  
By patient toil subsistence scant, 450  
Not competence and yet not want,  
He early gained the power to pay  
His cheerful, self-reliant way ;  
Could doff at ease his scholar's gown  
To peddle wares from town to town ; 455  
Or through the long vacation's reach  
In lonely lowland districts teach,  
Where all the droll experience found  
At stranger hearths in boarding round,  
The moonlit skater's keen delight, 460  
The sleigh-drive through the frosty night,<sup>a</sup>  
The rustic party, with its rough  
Accompaniment of blind-man's-buff,  
And whirling plate, and forfeits paid,  
His winter task a pastime made. 465  
Happy the snow-locked homes wherein  
He tuned his merry violin,  
Or played the athlete in the barn,  
Or held the good dame's winding yarn,  
Or mirth-provoking versions told 470  
Of classic legends rare and old,  
Wherein the scenes of Greece and Rome  
Had all the commonplace of home,  
And little seemed at best the odds  
'Twixt Yankee pedlers and old gods ; 475  
Where Pindus-born Arachthus took  
The guise of any grist-mill brook,  
And dread Olympus at his will

476. Pindus is the mountain chain which, running from north to south, nearly bisects Greece. Five rivers take their rise from the central peak, the Aöus, the Arachthus, the Haliaemon, the Penëus, and the Achelöus.

Became a huckleberry hill.  
 A careless boy that night he seemed ; 480  
     But at his desk he had the look  
 And air of one who wisely schemed,  
     And hostage from the future took  
     In trained thought and lore of book.  
 Large-brained, clear-eyed, — of such as he 485  
 Shall Freedom's young apostles be, -  
 Who, following in War's bloody trail,  
 Shall every lingering wrong assail ;  
 All chains from limb and spirit strike,  
 Uplift the black and white alike ; 490  
 Scatter before their swift advance  
 The darkness and the ignorance,  
 The pride, the lust, the squalid sloth,  
 Which nurtured Treason's monstrous growth,  
 Made murder pastime, and the hell 495  
 Of prison-torture possible ;  
 The cruel lie of caste refute,  
 Old forms remould, and substitute  
 For Slavery's lash the freeman's will,  
 For blind routine, wise-handed skill ; 500  
 A school-house plant on every hill,  
 Stretching in radiate nerve-lines thence  
 The quick wires of intelligence ;  
 Till North and South together brought  
 Shall own the same electric thought, 505  
 In peace a common flag salute,  
     And, side by side in labor's free  
     And unresentful rivalry,  
 Harvest the fields wherein they fought.

Another guest that winter night 510  
 Flashed back from lustrous eyes the light.

Unmarked by time, and yet not young,  
 The honeyed music of her tongue  
 And words of meekness scarcely told  
 A nature passionate and bold,  
 Strong, self-concentred, spurning guide,  
 Its milder features dwarfed beside  
 Her unbent will's majestic pride.

515

She sat among us, at the best,  
 A not unfeared, half-welcome guest,  
 Rebuking with her cultured phrase  
 Our homeliness of words and ways.

520

A certain pard-like, treacherous grace  
 Swayed the lithe limbs and dropped the lash,  
 Lent the white teeth their dazzling flash;  
 And under low brows, black with night,  
 Rayed out at times a dangerous light;

525

The sharp heat-lightnings of her face  
 Presaging ill to him whom Fate  
 Condemned to share her love or hate.

530

A woman tropical, intense  
 In thought and act, in soul and sense,  
 She blended in a like degree  
 The vixen and the devotee,  
 Revealing with each freak or feint

535

The temper of Petruchio's Kate,  
 The raptures of Siena's saint.

Her tapering hand and rounded wrist  
 Had facile power to form a fist;  
 The warm, dark languish of her eyes  
 Was never safe from wrath's surprise.

540

Brows saintly calm and lips devout

536. See Shakespeare's comedy of the *Taming of the Shrew*.

537. St. Catherine of Siena, who is represented as having wonderful visions. She made a vow of silence for three years.

Knew every change of scowl and pout ;  
 And the sweet voice had notes more high  
 And shrill for social battle-cry. 545  
 Since then what old cathedral town  
 Has missed her pilgrim staff and gown,  
 What convent-gate has held its lock  
 Against the challenge of her knock !  
 Through Smyrna's plague-hushed thoroughfares, 550  
 Up sea-set Malta's rocky stairs,  
 Gray olive slopes of hills that hem  
 Thy tombs and shrines, Jerusalem,  
 Or startling on her desert throne  
 The crazy Queen of Lebanon 555  
 With claims fantastic as her own,  
 Her tireless feet have held their way ;  
 And still, unrestful, bowed, and gray,  
 She watches under Eastern skies,  
     With hope each day renewed and fresh, 560  
     The Lord's quick coming in the flesh,  
 Whereof she dreams and prophecies !

555. An interesting account of Lady Hester Stanhope, an English gentlewoman who led a singular life on Mount Lebanon in Syria, will be found in Kinglake's *Eothen*, chapter viii.

562. This *not unfear'd, half-welcome guest* was Miss Harriet Livermore, daughter of Judge Livermore of New Hampshire. She was a woman of fine powers, but wayward, wild, and enthusiastic. She went on an independent mission to the Western Indians, whom she, in common with some others, believed to be remnants of the lost tribes of Israel. At the time of this narrative she was about twenty-eight years old, but much of her life afterward was spent in the Orient. She was at one time the companion and friend of Lady Hester Stanhope, but finally quarrelled with her about the use of the holy horses kept in the stable in waiting for the Lord's ride to Jerusalem at the second advent.



Where'er her troubled path may be,  
The Lord's sweet pity with her go!  
The outward wayward life we see,  
The hidden springs we may not know.

563

Nor is it given us to discern  
What threads the fatal sisters spun,  
Through what ancestral years has run

570

The sorrow with the woman born,  
What forged her cruel chain of moods,  
What set her feet in solitudes,

And held the love within her mute,  
What mingled madness in the blood,

A lifelong discord and annoy,

575

Water of tears with oil of joy,

And hid within the folded bud

Perversities of flower and fruit.

It is not ours to separate

The tangled skein of will and fate,

580

To show what metes and bounds should stand

Upon the soul's debatable land,

And between choice and Providence

Divide the circle of events ;

But He who knows our frame is just,

585

Merciful and compassionate,

And full of sweet assurances

And hope for all the language is,

That He remembereth we are dust!

At last the great logs, crumbling low,

590

Sent out a dull and duller glow,

The bull's-eye watch that hung in view,

Ticking its weary circuit through,

Pointed with mutely-warning sign

Its black hand to the hour of nine.

595

That sign the pleasant circle broke :  
My uncle ceased his pipe to smoke,  
Knocked from its bowl the refuse gray,  
And laid it tenderly away,  
Then roused himself to safely cover 600  
The dull red brand with ashes over.  
And while, with care, our mother laid  
The work aside, her steps she stayed  
One moment, seeking to express  
Her grateful sense of happiness 605  
For food and shelter, warmth and health,  
And love's contentment more than wealth,  
With simple wishes (not the weak,  
Vain prayers which no fulfilment seek,  
But such as warm the generous heart, 610  
O'er-prompt to do with Heaven its part)  
That none might lack, that bitter night,  
For bread and clothing, warmth and light.

Within our beds awhile we heard  
The wind that round the gables roared, 615  
With now and then a ruder shock,  
Which made our very bedsteads rock.  
We heard the loosened clapboards tost,  
The board-nails snapping in the frost ;  
And on us, through the unplastered wall, 620  
Felt the light sifted snow-flakes fall,  
But sleep stole on, as sleep will do  
When hearts are light and life is new ;  
Faint and more faint the murmurs grew,  
Till in the summer-land of dreams 625  
They softened to the sound of streams,  
Low stir of leaves, and dip of oars,  
And lapsing waves on quiet shores.

Next morn we wakened with the shout  
 Of merry voices high and clear ; 639  
 And saw the teamsters drawing near  
 To break the drifted highways out.  
 Down the long hillside treading slow  
 We saw the half-buried oxen go,  
 Shaking the snow from heads uptost, 640  
 Their straining nostrils white with frost.  
 Before our door the straggling train  
 Drew up, an added team to gain.  
 The elders threshed their hands a-cold,  
 Passed, with the cider-mug, their jokes 641  
 From lip to lip ; the younger folks  
 Down the loose snow-banks, wrestling, rolled,  
 Then toiled again the cavalcade  
 O'er windy hill, through clogged ravine,  
 And woodland paths that wound between 642  
 Low drooping pine-boughs winter-weighed.  
 From every barn a team afoot,  
 At every house a new recruit,  
 Where, drawn by Nature's subtlest law,  
 Haply the watchful young men saw 643  
 Sweet doorway pictures of the curls  
 And curious eyes of merry girls,  
 Lifting their hands in mock defence  
 Against the snow-balls' compliments,  
 And reading in each missive tost 644  
 The charm with Eden never lost.

We heard once more the sleigh-bells' sound ;  
 And, following where the teamsters led,  
 The wise old Doctor went his round,

659. The *wise old Doctor* was Dr. Weld of Haverhill, an able man, who died at the age of ninety-six.

Just pausing at our door to say 660  
 In the brief autocratic way  
 Of one who, prompt at Duty's call,  
 Was free to urge her claim on all,  
     That some poor neighbor sick abed  
 At night our mother's aid would need. 665  
 For, one in generous thought and deed,  
     What mattered in the sufferer's sight  
     The Quaker matron's inward light,  
 The Doctor's mail of Calvin's creed ?  
 All hearts confess the saints elect 670  
     Who, twain in faith, in love agree,  
 And melt not in an acid sect  
     The Christian pearl of charity !

So days went on : a week had passed  
 Since the great world was heard from last. 675  
 The Almanac we studied o'er,  
 Read and reread our little store  
 Of books and pamphlets, scarce a score ;  
 One harmless novel, mostly hid  
 From younger eyes, a book forbid, 680  
 And poetry, (or good or bad,  
 A single book was all we had,)  
 Where Ellwood's meek, drab-skirted Muse,  
     A stranger to the heathen Nine,  
     Sang, with a somewhat nasal whine, 685

683. Thomas Ellwood, one of the Society of Friends, a contemporary and friend of Milton, and the suggestor of *Paradise Regained*, wrote an epic poem in five books, called *Davideis*, the life of King David of Israel. He wrote the book, we are told, for his own diversion, so it was not necessary that others should be diverted by it. Ellwood's autobiography, a quaint and delightful book, is included in Howells's series of *Choice Autobiographies*.



The wars of David and the Jews.  
 At last the floundering carrier bore  
 The village paper to our door.  
 Lo ! broadening outward as we read,  
 To warmer zones the horizon spread ;  
 In panoramic length unrolled  
 We saw the marvels that it told.  
 Before us passed the painted Creeks,  
     And daft McGregor on his raids  
     In Costa Rica's everglades.  
     And up Taygetus winding slow  
 Rode Ypsilanti's Mainote Greeks,  
     A Turk's head at each saddle bow !  
 Welcome to us its week old news,  
 Its corner for the rustic Muse,  
     Its monthly gauge of snow and rain,  
 Its record, mingling in a breath  
 The wedding knell and dirge of death ;  
 Jest, anecdote, and love-lorn tale,  
 The latest culprit sent to jail ;  
 Its hue and cry of stolen and lost,  
 Its vendue sales and goods at cost,  
     And traffic calling loud for gain.  
 We felt the stir of hall and street,  
 The pulse of life that round us beat ;  
 The chill embargo of the snow

690

696

706

706

710

693. Referring to the removal of the Creek Indians from Georgia to beyond the Mississippi.

694. In 1822 Sir Gregor McGregor, a Scotchman, began an ineffectual attempt to establish a colony in Costa Rica.

697. Taygetus is a mountain on the Gulf of Messenia in Greece, and near by is the district of Maina, noted for its robbers and pirates. It was from these mountaineers that Ypsilanti, a Greek patriot, drew his cavalry in the struggle with Turkey which resulted in the independence of Greece.

Was melted in the genial glow ;  
 Wide swung again our ice-locked door,  
 And all the world was ours once more !

Clasp, Angel of the backward look 715  
     And folded wings of ashen gray  
     And voice of echoes far away,  
 The brazen covers of thy book ;  
 The weird palimpsest old and vast,  
 Wherein thou hid'st the spectral past ; 720  
 Where, closely mingling, pale and glow  
 The characters of joy and woe ;  
 The monographs of outlived years,  
 Or smile-illumed or dim with tears,  
 Green hills of life that slope to death, 725  
     And haunts of home, whose vistaed trees  
     Shade off to mournful cypresses  
 With the white amaranths underneath.  
 Even while I look, I can but heed  
     The restless sands' incessant fall, 730  
 Importunate hours that hours succeed,  
 Each clamorous with its own sharp need,  
     And duty keeping pace with all.  
 Shut down and clasp the heavy lids ;  
 I hear again the voice that bids 735  
 The dreamer leave his dream midway  
     For larger hopes and graver fears :  
     Life greatens in these later years,  
 The century's aloe flowers to-day !

Yet, haply, in some lull of life, 740  
 Some Truce of God which breaks its strife,

741. The name is drawn from a historic compact in 1040,  
 when the Church forbade barons to make any attack on each

The worldling's eyes shall gather dew,  
 Dreaming in throngful city ways  
 Of winter joys his boyhood knew;  
 And dear and early friends — the few 745  
 Who yet remain — shall pause to view  
 These Flemish pictures of old days;  
 Sit with me by the homestead hearth,  
 And stretch the hands of memory forth  
 To warm them at the wood-fire's blaze! 750  
 And thanks untraced to lips unknown  
 Shall greet me like the odors blown  
 From unseen meadows newly mown,  
 Or lilies floating in some pond,  
 Wood-fringed, the wayside gaze beyond; 755  
 The traveller owns the grateful sense  
 Of sweetness near, he knows not whence,  
 And, pausing, takes with forehead bare  
 The benediction of the air.

1866.

### THE SHIP-BUILDERS.

THE sky is ruddy in the east,  
 The earth is gray below,  
 And, spectral in the river-mist,  
 The ship's white timbers show.  
 Then let the sounds of measured stroke 5  
 And grating saw begin;

other between sunset on Wednesday and sunrise on the following Monday, or upon any ecclesiastical fast or feast day. It also provided that no man was to molest a laborer working in the fields, or to lay hands on any implement of husbandry, on pain of excommunication.

747. The Flemish school of painting was chiefly occupied with homely interiors.

The broad-axe to the gnarléd oak,  
The mallet to the pin !

Hark ! roars the bellows, blast on blast,  
The sooty smithy jars, 10  
And fire-sparks, rising far and fast,  
Are fading with the stars.  
All day for us the smith shall stand  
Beside that flashing forge ;  
All day for us his heavy hand 15  
The groaning anvil scourge.

From far-off hills, the panting team  
For us is toiling near ;  
For us the raftsmen down the stream  
Their island barges steer. 20  
Rings out for us the axe-man's stroke  
In forests old and still ;  
For us the century-circled oak  
Falls crashing down his hill.

Up ! up ! in nobler toil than ours 25  
No craftsmen bear a part :  
We make of Nature's giant powers  
The slaves of human Art.  
Lay rib to rib and beam to beam,  
And drive the treenails free ; 30  
Nor faithless joint nor yawning seam  
Shall tempt the searching sea !

Where'er the keel of our good ship  
The sea's rough field shall plough ;  
Where'er her tossing spars shall drip 35  
With salt-spray caught below ;



That ship must heed her master's beck,  
Her helm obey his hand,  
And seamen tread her reeling deck  
As if they trod the land.

40

Her oaken ribs the vulture-beak  
Of Northern ice may peel ;  
The sunken rock and coral peak  
May grate along her keel ;  
And know we well the painted shell  
We give to wind and wave,  
Must float, the sailor's citadel,  
Or sink, the sailor's grave !

45

Ho ! strike away the bars and blocks,  
And set the good ship free !  
Why lingers on these dusty rocks  
The young bride of the sea ?  
Look ! how she moves adown the grooves,  
In graceful beauty now !  
How lowly on the breast she loves  
Sinks down her virgin prow !

50

55

God bless her ! wheresoe'er the breeze  
Her snowy wing shall fan,  
Aside the frozen Hebrides,  
Or sultry Hindostan !  
Where'er, in mart or on the main,  
With peaceful flag unfurled,  
She helps to wind the silken chain  
Of commerce round the world !

60

Speed on the ship ! But let her bear  
No merchandise of sin,

65

No groaning cargo of despair  
Her roomy hold within ;  
No Lethean drug for Eastern lands,  
Nor poison-draught for ours ; 70  
But honest fruits of toiling hands  
And Nature's sun and showers.

Be hers the Prairie's golden grain,  
The Desert's golden sand,  
The clustered fruits of sunny Spain, 75  
The spice of Morning-land !  
Her pathway on the open main  
May blessings follow free,  
And glad hearts welcome back again  
Her white sails from the sea ! 80

## THE WORSHIP OF NATURE.

THE harp at Nature's advent strung  
Has never ceased to play ;  
The song the stars of morning sung  
Has never died away.

And prayer is made, and praise is given, 5  
By all things near and far ;  
The ocean looketh up to heaven,  
And mirrors every star.

Its waves are kneeling on the strand,  
As kneels the human knee, 10  
Their white locks bowing to the sand,  
The priesthood of the sea !

They pour their glittering treasures forth,  
Their gifts of pearl they bring,

And all the listening hills of earth  
Take up the song they sing. 15

The green earth sends her incense up  
From many a mountain shrine ;  
From folded leaf and dewy cup  
She pours her sacred wine. 20

The mists above the morning rills  
Rise white as wings of prayer ;  
The altar-curtains of the hills  
Are sunset's purple air.

The winds with hymns of praise are loud,  
Or low with sobs of pain, —  
The thunder-organ of the cloud,  
The dropping tears of rain. 25

With drooping head and branches crossed  
The twilight forest grieves,  
Or speaks with tongues of Pentecost  
From all its sunlit leaves. 30

The blue sky is the temple's arch,  
Its transept earth and air,  
The music of its starry march  
The chorus of a prayer. 35

So Nature keeps the reverent frame  
With which her years began,  
And all her signs and voices shame  
The prayerless heart of man. 40

## JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL.

---

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL was born February 22, 1819, at Elmwood, Cambridge, Massachusetts, in the house where he died August 12, 1891. His early life was spent in Cambridge, and he has sketched many of the scenes in it very delightfully in *Cambridge Thirty Years Ago*, in his volume of *Fireside Travels*, as well as in his early poem, *An Indian Summer Reverie*. His father was a Congregationalist minister of Boston, and the family to which he belonged has had a strong representation in Massachusetts. His grandfather, John Lowell, was an eminent jurist, the Lowell Institute of Boston owes its endowment to John Lowell, a cousin of the poet, and the city of Lowell was named after Francis Cabot Lowell, an uncle, who was one of the first to begin the manufacturing of cotton in New England.

Lowell was a student at Harvard, and was graduated in 1838, when he gave a class poem, and in 1841 his first volume of poems, *A Year's Life*, was published. His bent from the beginning was more decidedly literary than that of any contemporary American poet. That is to say, the history and art of literature divided his interest with the production of literature, and he carries the unusual gift of rare critical power, joined to hearty, spontaneous creation. It may indeed be guessed that the keenness of judgment and incisiveness of wit which characterize his examination of literature have sometimes interfered with his poetic power,



and made him liable to question his art when he would rather have expressed it unchecked. In connection with Robert Carter, a *littérateur* who has lately died, he began, in 1843, the publication of *The Pioneer, a Literary and Critical Magazine*, which lived a brilliant life of three months. A volume of poetry followed in 1844, and the next year he published *Conversations on Some of the Old Poets*, — a book which is now out of print, but interesting as marking the enthusiasm of a young scholar, treading a way then almost wholly neglected in America, and intimating a line of thought and study in which he afterward made most noteworthy ventures. Another series of poems followed in 1848, and in the same year *The Vision of Sir Launfal*. Perhaps it was in reaction from the marked sentiment of his poetry that he issued now a *jeu d'esprit*, *A Fable for Critics*, in which he hit off, with a rough and ready wit, the characteristics of the writers of the day, not forgetting himself in these lines : —

“There is Lowell, who ’s striving Parnassus to climb  
 With a whole bale of *isms* tied together with rhyme ;  
 He might get on alone, spite of brambles and boulders,  
 But he can’t with that bundle he has on his shoulders ;  
 The top of the hill he will ne’er come nigh reaching  
 Till he learns the distinction ’twixt singing and preaching ;  
 His lyre has some chords that would ring pretty well,  
 But he ’d rather by half make a drum of the shell,  
 And rattle away till he ’s old as Methusalem,  
 At the head of a march to the last new Jerusalem.”

This, of course, is but a half serious portrait of himself, and it touches but a single feature ; others can say better that Lowell’s ardent nature showed itself in the series of satirical poems which made him famous, *The Biglow Papers*, written in a spirit of indignation and fine scorn, when the Mexican War was causing many Americans to blush with shame at the use of the country by a class for its own ignoble ends. The true patriotism which marked these and



*J. M. Lowell*



other of his early poems burned with a steady glow in after years, and illumined poems of which we shall speak presently.

After a year and a half spent in travel, Lowell was appointed in 1855 to the Belles Lettres professorship at Harvard, previously held by Longfellow. When the *Atlantic Monthly* was established in 1857 he became its editor, and soon after relinquishing that post he assumed part editorship of the *North American Review*. In these two magazines, as also in *Putnam's Monthly*, he published poems, essays, and critical papers, which have been gathered into volumes. His prose writings, besides the volumes already mentioned, include two series of *Among my Books*, historical and critical studies, chiefly in English literature; and *My Study Windows*, including, with similar subjects, observations of nature and contemporary life. During the war for the Union he published a second series of the *Biglow Papers*, in which, with the wit and fun of the earlier series, there was mingled a deeper strain of feeling and a larger tone of patriotism. The limitations of his style in these satires forbade the fullest expression of his thought and emotion; but afterward in a succession of poems, occasioned by the honors paid to student-soldiers in Cambridge, the death of Agassiz, and the celebration of national anniversaries during the years 1875 and 1876, he sang in loftier, more ardent strains. The interest which readers have in Lowell is still divided between his rich, abundant prose, and his thoughtful, often passionate verse. The sentiment of his early poetry, always humane, was greatly enriched by larger experience; so that the themes which he chose for his later work demanded and received a broad treatment, full of sympathy with the most generous instincts of their time, and built upon historic foundations.

In 1877 he went to Spain as Minister Plenipotentiary. In 1880 he was transferred to England as Minister Plenipotentiary near the Court of St. James. His duties as



American Minister did not prevent him from producing occasional writings, chiefly in connection with public events. Notable among these are his address at the unveiling of a statue of Fielding, and his address on Democracy.

Mr. Lowell returned to the United States in 1885, and was not afterward engaged in public affairs, but passed the rest of his life quietly in his Cambridge home, prevented by failing health from doing much literary work. He made a collection of his later poems in 1888, under the title *Heartsease and Rue*, and carefully revised his complete works, published in ten volumes in 1890.

## THE VISION OF SIR LAUNFAL.

[AUTHOR'S NOTE. — According to the mythology of the Romancers, the San Greal, or Holy Grail, was the cup out of which Jesus Christ partook of the last supper with his disciples. It was brought into England by Joseph of Arimathea, and remained there, an object of pilgrimage and adoration, for many years, in the keeping of his lineal descendants. It was incumbent upon those who had charge of it to be chaste in thought, word, and deed ; but one of the keepers having broken this condition, the Holy Grail disappeared. From that time it was a favorite enterprise of the Knights of Arthur's court to go in search of it. Sir Galahad was at last successful in finding it, as may be read in the seventeenth book of the Romance of King Arthur. Tennyson has made Sir Galahad the subject of one of the most exquisite of his poems.

The plot (if I may give that name to anything so slight) of the following poem is my own, and, to serve its purposes, I have enlarged the circle of competition in search of the miraculous cup in such a manner as to include not only other persons than the heroes of the Round Table, but also a period of time subsequent to the supposed date of King Arthur's reign.]

### PRELUDE TO PART FIRST.

OVER his keys the musing organist,  
Beginning doubtfully and far away,  
First lets his fingers wander as they list,  
And builds a bridge from Dreamland for his  
lay:  
Then, as the touch of his loved instrument 5  
Gives hope and fervor, nearer draws his theme,

First guessed by faint auroral flushes sent  
 Along the wavering vista of his dream.

---

Not only around our infancy  
 Doth heaven with all its splendors lie ; 10  
 Daily, with souls that cringe and plot,  
 We Sinais climb and know it not.

Over our manhood bend the skies ;  
 Against our fallen and traitor lives  
 The great winds utter prophecies ; 15  
 With our faint hearts the mountain strives ;  
 Its arms outstretched, the druid wood  
 Waits with its benedicite ;  
 And to our age's drowsy blood  
 Still shouts the inspiring sea. 20

Earth gets its price for what Earth gives us ;  
 The beggar is taxed for a corner to die in,  
 The priest hath his fee who comes and shrives us,  
 We bargain for the graves we lie in ;  
 At the Devil's booth are all things sold, 25  
 Each ounce of dross costs its ounce of gold ;  
 For a cap and bells our lives we pay,

9. In allusion to Wordsworth's

“ Heaven lies about us in our infancy,”

in his ode, *Intimations of Immortality from Recollections of Early Childhood*.

27. In the Middle Ages kings and noblemen had in their courts jesters to make sport for the company ; as every one then wore a dress indicating his rank or occupation, so the jester wore a cap hung with bells. The fool of Shakespeare's plays is the king's jester at his best.

Bubbles we buy with a whole soul's tasking :

'T is heaven alone that is given away,

'T is only God may be had for the asking ; 30

No price is set on the lavish summer ;

June may be had by the poorest comer.

And what is so rare as a day in June ?

Then, if ever, come perfect days ;

Then Heaven tries earth if it be in tune, 35

And over it softly her warm ear lays :

Whether we look, or whether we listen,

We hear life murmur, or see it glisten ;

Every clod feels a stir of might,

An instinct within it that reaches and towers, 40

And, groping blindly above it for light,

Climbs to a soul in grass and flowers ;

The flush of life may well be seen

Thrilling back over hills and valleys ;

The cowslip startles in meadows green, 45

The buttercup catches the sun in its chalice,

And there's never a leaf nor a blade too mean

To be some happy creature's palace ;

The little bird sits at his door in the sun,

Atilt like a blossom among the leaves, 50

And lets his illumined being o'errun

With the deluge of summer it receives ;

His mate feels the eggs beneath her wings,

And the heart in her dumb breast flutters and  
sings ;

He sings to the wide world, and she to her nest, — 55

In the nice ear of Nature which song is the best ?

Now is the high-tide of the year,

And whatever of life hath ebbd away



Comes flooding back with a ripply cheer,  
 Into every bare inlet and creek and bay ; 60  
 Now the heart is so full that a drop overfills it,  
 We are happy now because God wills it ;  
 No matter how barren the past may have been,  
 'T is enough for us now that the leaves are green ;  
 We sit in the warm shade and feel right well 65  
 How the sap creeps up and the blossoms swell ;  
 We may shut our eyes, but we cannot help knowing  
 That skies are clear and grass is growing ;  
 The breeze comes whispering in our ear,  
 That dandelions are blossoming near, 70  
 That maize has sprouted, that streams are flowing,  
 That the river is bluer than the sky,  
 That the robin is plastering his house hard by ;  
 And if the breeze kept the good news back,  
 For other couriers we should not lack ; 75  
 We could guess it all by yon heifer's lowing, —  
 And hark ! how clear bold chanticleer,  
 Warmed with the new wine of the year,  
 Tells all in his lusty crowing !

Joy comes, grief goes, we know not how ; 80  
 Everything is happy now,  
 Everything is upward striving ;  
 'T is as easy now for the heart to be true  
 As for grass to be green or skies to be blue, —  
 'T is the natural way of living : 85  
 Who knows whither the clouds have fled ?  
 In the unscarred heaven they leave no wake ;  
 And the eyes forget the tears they have shed,  
 The heart forgets its sorrow and ache ;  
 The soul partakes of the season's youth, 90  
 And the sulphurous rifts of passion and woe

Lie deep 'neath a silence pure and smooth,  
Like burnt-out craters healed with snow.  
What wonder if Sir Launfal now  
Remembered the keeping of his vow?

95

## PART FIRST.

## I.

“My golden spurs now bring to me,  
And bring to me my richest mail,  
For to-morrow I go over land and sea  
In search of the Holy Grail ;  
Shall never a bed for me be spread,  
Nor shall a pillow be under my head,  
Till I begin my vow to keep ;  
Here on the rushes will I sleep,  
And perchance there may come a vision true  
Ere day create the world anew.”

100

105

Slowly Sir Launfal's eyes grew dim,  
Slumber fell like a cloud on him,  
And into his soul the vision flew.

## II.

The crows flapped over by twos and threes,  
In the pool drowsed the cattle up to their knees, 110  
The little birds sang as if it were  
The one day of summer in all the year,  
And the very leaves seemed to sing on the trees :  
The castle alone in the landscape lay  
Like an outpost of winter, dull and gray ; 115  
'T was the proudest hall in the North Countree,  
And never its gates might opened be,  
Save to lord or lady of high degree ;

Summer besieged it on every side,  
But the churlish stone her assaults defied, 120  
She could not scale the chilly wall,  
Though around it for leagues her pavilions tall  
Stretched left and right,  
Over the hills and out of sight ;  
Green and broad was every tent, 125  
And out of each a murmur went  
Till the breeze fell off at night.

## III.

The drawbridge dropped with a surly clang,  
And through the dark arch a charger sprang,  
Bearing Sir Launfal, the maiden knight, 130  
In his gilded mail, that flamed so bright  
It seemed the dark castle had gathered all  
Those shafts the fierce sun had shot over its wall  
In his siege of three hundred summers long,  
And, binding them all in one blazing sheaf, 135  
Had cast them forth : so, young and strong,  
And lightsome as a locust-leaf,  
Sir Launfal flashed forth in his maiden mail,  
To seek in all climes for the Holy Grail.

## IV.

It was morning on hill and stream and tree, 140  
And morning in the young knight's heart ;  
Only the castle moodily  
Rebuffed the gifts of the sunshine free,  
And gloomed by itself apart ;  
The season brimmed all other things up 145  
Full as the rain fills the pitcher-plant's cup.

## V.

As Sir Launfal made morn through the darksome gate,  
He was 'ware of a leper, crouched by the same,  
Who begged with his hand and moaned as he sate ;  
And a loathing over Sir Launfal came ; 150  
The sunshine went out of his soul with a thrill,  
The flesh 'neath his armor 'gan shrink and crawl,  
And midway its leap his heart stood still.  
Like a frozen waterfall ;  
For this man, so foul and bent of stature, 155  
Rasped harshly against his dainty nature,  
And seemed the one blot on the summer morn, —  
So he tossed him a piece of gold in scorn.

## VI.

The leper raised not the gold from the dust :  
“ Better to me the poor man's crust, 160  
Better the blessing of the poor,  
Though I turn me empty from his door ;  
That is no true alms which the hand can hold ;  
He gives only the worthless gold  
Who gives from a sense of duty ; 165  
But he who gives but a slender mite,  
And gives to that which is out of sight,  
That thread of the all-sustaining Beauty  
Which runs through all and doth all unite, —  
The hand cannot clasp the whole of his alms, 170  
The heart outstretches its eager palms,  
For a god goes with it and makes it store  
To the soul that was starving in darkness before.”



## PRELUDE TO PART SECOND.

Down swept the chill wind from the mountain peak,  
 From the snow five thousand summers old ; 175  
 On open wold and hill-top bleak  
 It had gathered all the cold,  
 And whirled it like sleet on the wanderer's cheek ;  
 It carried a shiver everywhere  
 From the unleafed boughs and pastures bare ; 180  
 The little brook heard it and built a roof  
 'Neath which he could house him, winter-proof ;  
 All night by the white stars' frosty gleams  
 He groined his arches and matched his beams ;  
 Slender and clear were his crystal spars 185  
 As the lashes of light that trim the stars ;  
 He sculptured every summer delight  
 In his halls and chambers out of sight ;  
 Sometimes his tinkling waters slipt  
 Down through a frost-leaved forest-crypt, 190  
 Long, sparkling aisles of steel-stemmed trees  
 Bending to counterfeit a breeze ;  
 Sometimes the roof no fretwork knew  
 But silvery mosses that downward grew ;  
 Sometimes it was carved in sharp relief 195  
 With quaint arabesques of ice-fern leaf ;  
 Sometimes it was simply smooth and clear  
 For the gladness of heaven to shine through, and here  
 He had caught the nodding bulrush-tops  
 And hung them thickly with diamond drops, 200

174. Note the different moods that are indicated by the two preludes. The one is of June, the other of snow and winter. By these preludes the poet, like an organist, strikes a key which he holds in the subsequent part.

That crystall'd the beams of moon and sun,  
And made a star of every one :  
No mortal builder's most rare device  
Could match this winter-palace of ice ;  
'T was as if every image that mirrored lay 205  
In his depths serene through the summer day,  
Each fleeting shadow of earth and sky,  
Lest the happy model should be lost,  
Had been mimicked in fairy masonry  
By the elfin builders of the frost. 210

Within the hall are song and laughter,  
The cheeks of Christmas glow red and jolly,  
And sprouting is every corbel and rafter  
With lightsome green of ivy and holly ;  
Through the deep gulf of the chimney wide 215  
Wallows the Yule-log's roaring tide ;  
The broad flame-pennons droop and flap  
And belly and tug as a flag in the wind ;  
Like a locust shrills the imprisoned sap,  
Hunted to death in its galleries blind ; 220  
And swift little troops of silent sparks,  
Now pausing, now scattering away as in fear,  
Go threading the soot-forest's tangled darks  
Like herds of startled deer.

204. The Empress of Russia, Catherine II., in a magnificent freak, built a palace of ice, which was a nine-days' wonder. Cowper has given a poetical description of it in *The Task*, Book V. lines 131-176.

216. The Yule-log was anciently a huge log burned at the feast of Juul by our Scandinavian ancestors in honor of the god Thor. Juul-tid corresponded in time to Christmas tide, and when Christian festivities took the place of pagan, many ceremonies remained. The great log, still called the Yule-log, was dragged in and burned in the fireplace after Thor had been forgotten.

But the wind without was eager and sharp, 225  
 Of Sir Launfal's gray hair it makes a harp,  
     And rattles and wrings  
     The icy strings,  
 Singing, in dreary monotone,  
 A Christmas carol of its own, 230  
 Whose burden still, as he might guess,  
 Was — "Shelterless, shelterless, shelterless!"  
 The voice of the seneschal flared like a torch  
 As he shouted the wanderer away from the porch,  
 And he sat in the gateway and saw all night 235  
     The great hall-fire, so cheery and bold,  
     Through the window-slits of the castle old,  
 Build out its piers of ruddy light  
 Against the drift of the cold.

## PART SECOND.

## I.

There was never a leaf on bush or tree, 240  
 The bare boughs rattled shudderingly;  
 The river was dumb and could not speak,  
     For the weaver Winter its shroud had spun;  
 A single crow on the tree-top bleak  
     From his shining feathers shed off the cold sun; 245  
 Again it was morning, but shrunk and cold,  
 As if her veins were sapless and old,  
 And she rose up decrepitly  
 For a last dim look at earth and sea.

## II.

Sir Launfal turned from his own hard gate, 250  
 For another heir in the earldom sate;

An old, bent man, worn out and frail,  
He came back from seeking the Holy Grail ;  
Little he recked of his earldom's loss,  
No more on his surcoat was blazoned the cross, 255  
But deep in his soul the sign he wore,  
The badge of the suffering and the poor.

## III.

Sir Launfal's raiment thin and spare  
Was idle mail 'gainst the barbéd air,  
For it was just at the Christmas time ; 260  
So he mused, as he sat, of a sunnier clime,  
And sought for a shelter from cold and snow  
In the light and warmth of long-ago ;  
He sees the snake-like caravan crawl  
O'er the edge of the desert, black and small, 265  
Then nearer and nearer, till, one by one,  
He can count the camels in the sun,  
As over the red-hot sands they pass  
To where, in its slender necklace of grass,  
The little spring laughed and leapt in the shade, 270  
And with its own self like an infant played,  
And waved its signal of palms.

## IV.

"For Christ's sweet sake, I beg an alms ;" —  
The happy camels may reach the spring,  
But Sir Launfal sees only the grewsome thing, 275  
The leper, lank as the rain-blanchéd bone,  
That cowers beside him, a thing as lone  
And white as the ice-isles of Northern seas,  
In the desolate horror of his disease.



## V.

And Sir Launfal said, — “ I behold in thee 290  
 An image of Him who died on the tree ;  
 Thou also hast had thy crown of thorns, —  
 Thou also hast had the world’s buffets and scorns, —  
 And to thy life were not denied  
 The wounds in the hands and feet and side : 295  
 Mild Mary’s Son, acknowledge me ;  
 Behold, through him, I give to Thee ! ”

## VI.

Then the soul of the leper stood up in his eyes  
 And looked at Sir Launfal, and straightway he  
 Remembered in what a haughtier guise 290  
 He had flung an alms to leprosie,  
 When he girt his young life up in gilded mail  
 And set forth in search of the Holy Grail.  
 The heart within him was ashes and dust ;  
 He parted in twain his single crust, 295  
 He broke the ice on the streamlet’s brink,  
 And gave the leper to eat and drink,  
 ’T was a mouldy crust of coarse brown bread,  
 ’T was water out of a wooden bowl, —  
 Yet with fine wheaten bread was the leper fed, 300  
 And ’t was red wine he drank with his thirsty  
 soul.

## VII.

As Sir Launfal mused with a downcast face,  
 A light shone round about the place ;  
 The leper no longer crouched at his side,  
 But stood before him glorified, 305  
 Shining and tall and fair and straight  
 As the pillar that stood by the Beautiful Gate, —

Himself the Gate whereby men can  
Enter the temple of God in Man.

## VIII.

His words were shed softer than leaves from the  
pine, 310

And they fell on Sir Launfal as snows on the brine,  
That mingle their softness and quiet in one  
With the shaggy unrest they float down upon ;  
And the voice that was softer than silence said,  
“ Lo, it is I, be not afraid ! 315

In many climes, without avail,  
Thou hast spent thy life for the Holy Grail ;  
Behold, it is here, — this cup which thou  
Didst fill at the streamlet for me but now ;  
This crust is my body broken for thee, 320  
This water His blood that died on the tree ;  
The Holy Supper is kept, indeed,  
In whatso we share with another’s need :  
Not what we give, but what we share, —  
For the gift without the giver is bare ; 325  
Who gives himself with his alms feeds three, —  
Himself, his hungering neighbor, and me.”

## IX.

Sir Launfal awoke as from a swoond :  
“ The Grail in my castle here is found !  
Hang my idle armor up on the wall, 330  
Let it be the spider’s banquet hall ;  
He must be fenced with stronger mail  
Who would seek and find the Holy Grail.”

## X.

The castle gate stands open now,  
And the wanderer is welcome to the hall 335

As the hangbird is to the elm-tree bough ;  
No longer scowl the turrets tall,  
The Summer's long siege at last is o'er ;  
When the first poor outcast went in at the door,  
She entered with him in disguise, 343  
And mastered the fortress by surprise ;  
There is no spot she loves so well on ground,  
She lingers and smiles there the whole year round ;  
The meanest serf on Sir Launfal's land  
Has hall and bower at his command ; 345  
And there's no poor man in the North Countree  
But is lord of the earldom as much as he.

## WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT.

---

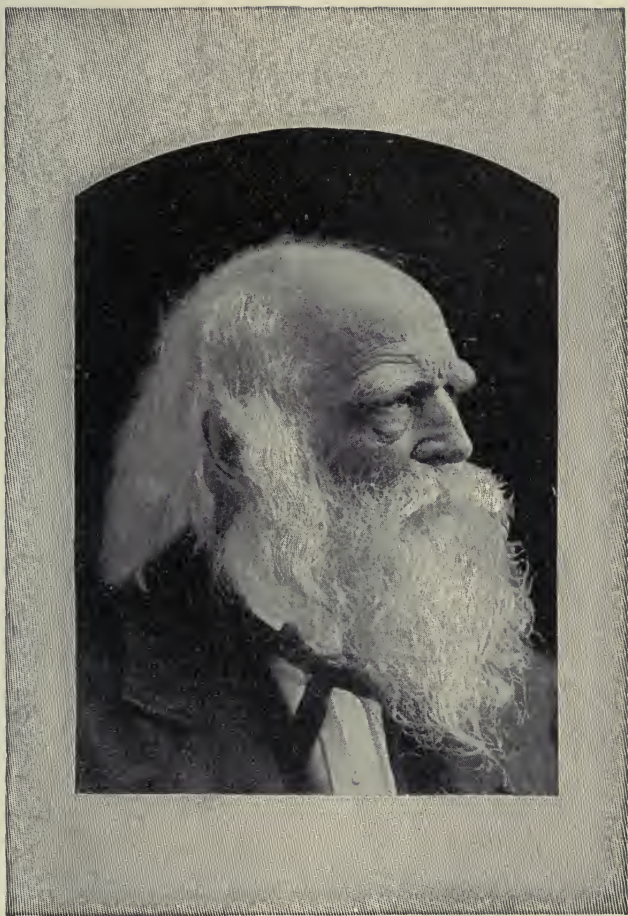
### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT was born at Cummington, Massachusetts, November 3, 1794; he died in New York, June 12, 1878. His first poem, *The Embargo*, was published in Boston in 1809, and was written when he was but thirteen years old; his last poem, *Our Fellow Worshippers*, was published in 1878. His long life thus was a long career as a writer, and his first published poem prefigured the twofold character of his literary life, for while it was in poetic form it was more distinctly a political article. He showed very early a taste for poetry, and was encouraged to read and write verse by his father, Dr. Peter Bryant, a country physician of strong character and cultivated tastes. He was sent to Williams College in the fall of 1810, where he remained two terms, when he decided to leave and enter Yale College; but pecuniary troubles interfered with his plans, and he never completed his college course. He pursued his literary studies at home, then began the study of law and was admitted to the bar in 1815. Meantime he had been continuing to write, and during this period wrote with many corrections and changes the poem by which he is still perhaps best known, *Thanatopsis*. It was published in the *North American Review* for September, 1817, and the same periodical published a few months afterward his lines *To a Waterfowl*, one of the most characteristic and lovely of Bryant's poems. Literature divided his attention with law, but evidently had his heart. In 1821 he was



invited to read a poem before the Phi Beta Kappa Society of Harvard College, and he read *The Ages*, a stately grave poem which shows his own poetic power, his familiarity with the great masters of literature, and his lofty, philosophic nature. Shortly after this he issued a small volume of poems, and his name began to be known as that of the first American who had written poetry that could take its place in universal literature. His own decided preference for literature, and the encouragement of friends, led to his abandonment of the law in 1825, and his removal to New York, where he undertook the associate editorship of *The New York Review and Athenæum Magazine*. Poetic genius is not caused or controlled by circumstance, but a purely literary life in a country not yet educated in literature was impossible to a man of no other means of support, and in a few months, after the *Review* had vainly tried to maintain life by a frequent change of name, Bryant accepted an appointment as assistant editor of the *Evening Post*. From 1826, then, until his death, Bryant was a journalist by profession. One effect of this change in his life was to eliminate from his poetry that political character which was displayed in his first published poem and had several times since shown itself. Thenceafter he threw into his journalistic occupation all those thoughts and experiences which made him by nature a patriot and political thinker; he reserved for poetry the calm reflection, love of nature, and purity of aspiration which made him a poet. His editorial writing was made strong and pure by his cultivated taste and lofty ideals, but he presented the rare combination of a poet who never sacrificed his love of high literature and his devotion to art, and of a publicist who retained a sound judgment and pursued the most practical ends.

His life outwardly was uneventful. He made four journeys to Europe, in 1834, 1845, 1852, 1857, and he made frequent tours in his own country. His observations on his travels were published in *Letters from a Traveller*, *Letters*



*William Cullen Bryant—)*



from the East, and Letters from Spain and other Countries. He never held public office, except that in 1860 he was a presidential elector, but he was connected intimately with important movements in society, literature, and politics, and was repeatedly called upon to deliver addresses commemorative of eminent citizens, as of Washington Irving, and James Fenimore Cooper, and at the unveiling of the bust of Mazzini in the Central Park. His *Orations and Addresses* have been gathered into a volume.

The bulk of his poetry apart from his poetic translations is not considerable, and is made up almost wholly of short poems which are chiefly inspired by his love of nature. R. H. Dana in his preface to *The Idle Man* says: "I shall never forget with what feeling my friend Bryant some years ago<sup>1</sup> described to me the effect produced upon him by his meeting for the first time with Wordsworth's *Ballads*. He lived, when quite young, where but few works of poetry were to be had; at a period, too, when Pope was still the great idol of the Temple of Art. He said that upon opening Wordsworth a thousand springs seemed to gush up at once in his heart, and the face of nature of a sudden to change into a strange freshness and life."

This was the interpreting power of Wordsworth suddenly disclosing to Bryant, not the secrets of nature, but his own powers of perception and interpretation. Bryant is in no sense an imitator of Wordsworth, but a comparison of the two poets would be of great interest as showing how individually each pursued the same general poetic end. Wordsworth's *Three Years She Grew in Sun and Shower* and Bryant's *O Fairest of the Rural Maids* offer an admirable opportunity for disclosing the separate treatment of similar subjects. In Bryant's lines, musical and full of a gentle reverery, the poet seems to go deeper and deeper into the forest, almost forgetful of the "fairest of the rural maids;" in Wordsworth's lines, with what simple yet profound feeling

<sup>1</sup> This was written in 1833.



the poet, after delicately disclosing the interchange of nature and human life, returns into those depths of human sympathy where nature must forever remain as a remote shadow.

Bryant translated many short poems from the Spanish, but his largest literary undertaking was the translation of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey* of Homer. He brought to this task great requisite powers, and if there is any failure it is in the absence of Homer's lightness and rapidity, qualities which the elasticity of the Greek language especially favored.

A pleasant touch of a simple humor appeared in some of his social addresses, and occasionally is found in his poems, as in *Robert of Lincoln*. Suggestions of personal experience will be read in such poems as *The Cloud on the Way*, *The Life that Is*, and in the half-autobiographic poem, *A Lifetime*.

## THANATOPSIS.

To him who in the love of Nature holds  
Communion with her visible forms, she speaks  
A various language ; for his gayer hours  
She has a voice of gladness, and a smile  
And eloquence of beauty, and she glides 5  
Into his darker musings, with a mild  
And healing sympathy, that steals away  
Their sharpness, ere he is aware. When thoughts  
Of the last bitter hour come like a blight  
Over the spirit, and sad images 10  
Of the stern agony, and shroud, and pall,  
And breathless darkness, and the narrow house,  
Make thee to shudder, and grow sick at heart ; —  
Go forth, under the open sky, and list  
To Nature's teachings, while from all around — 15  
Earth and her waters, and the depths of air —  
Comes a still voice — Yet a few days, and thee  
The all-beholding sun shall see no more  
In all his course ; nor yet in the cold ground,  
Where thy pale form was laid, with many tears, 20  
Nor in the embrace of ocean, shall exist  
Thy image. Earth, that nourished thee, shall claim  
Thy growth, to be resolved to earth again,  
And, lost each human trace, surrendering up  
Thine individual being, shalt thou go 25  
To mix for ever with the elements,  
To be a brother to the insensible rock

And to the sluggish clod, which the rude swain  
Turns with his share, and treads upon. The oak  
Shall send his roots abroad, and pierce thy mould. 30

Yet not to thine eternal resting-place  
Shalt thou retire alone, nor couldst thou wish  
Couch more magnificent. Thou shalt lie down  
With patriarchs of the infant world — with kings,  
The powerful of the earth — the wise, the good, 35  
Fair forms, and hoary seers of ages past,  
All in one mighty sepulchre. The hills  
Rock-ribbed and ancient as the sun, — the vales  
Stretching in pensive quietness between;  
The venerable woods — rivers that move 40  
In majesty, and the complaining brooks  
That make the meadows green; and, poured round  
all,

Old Ocean's gray and melancholy waste, —  
Are but the solemn decorations all  
Of the great tomb of man. The golden sun, 45  
The planets, all the infinite host of heaven,  
Are shining on the sad abodes of death,  
Through the still lapse of ages. All that tread  
The globe are but a handful to the tribes  
That slumber in its bosom. — Take the wings 50  
Of morning, pierce the Barcan wilderness,  
Or lose thyself in the continuous woods  
Where rolls the Oregon, and hears no sound,  
Save his own dashings — yet the dead are there:  
And millions in those solitudes, since first 55  
The flight of years began, have laid them down  
In their last sleep — the dead reign there alone.  
So shalt thou rest, and what if thou withdraw  
In silence from the living, and no friend

Take note of thy departure? All that breathe 60  
Will share thy destiny. The gay will laugh  
When thou art gone, the solemn brood of care  
Plod on, and each one as before will chase  
His favorite phantom; yet all these shall leave  
Their mirth and their employments, and shall come 65  
And make their bed with thee. As the long train  
Of ages glide away, the sons of men,  
The youth in life's green spring, and he who goes  
In the full strength of years, matron and maid,  
The speechless babe, and the gray-headed man — 70  
Shall one by one be gathered to thy side,  
By those, who in their turn shall follow them.

So live, that when thy summons comes to join  
The innumerable caravan, which moves  
To that mysterious realm, where each shall take 75  
His chamber in the silent halls of death,  
Thou go not, like the quarry-slave at night,  
Scourged to his dungeon, but, sustained and soothed  
By an unfaltering trust, approach thy grave,  
Like one who wraps the drapery of his couch 80  
About him, and lies down to pleasant dreams.

## TO A WATERFOWL.

WHITHER, midst falling dew,  
While glow the heavens with the last steps of day,  
Far, through their rosy depths, dost thou pursue  
Thy solitary way?

Vainly the fowler's eye 5  
Might mark thy distant flight to do thee wrong,



As, darkly painted on the crimson sky,  
Thy figure floats along.

Seek'st thou the plashy brink  
Of weedy lake, or marge of river wide, 10  
Or where the rocking billows rise and sink  
On the chafed ocean-side?

There is a Power whose care  
Teaches thy way along that pathless coast —  
The desert and illimitable air — 15  
Lone wandering, but not lost.

All day thy wings have fanned,  
At that far height, the cold, thin atmosphere,  
Yet stoop not, weary, to the welcome land,  
Though the dark night is near. 20

And soon that toil shall end ;  
Soon shalt thou find a summer home, and rest,  
And scream among thy fellows ; reeds shall bend,  
Soon, o'er thy sheltered nest.

Thou 'rt gone, the abyss of heaven 25  
Hath swallowed up thy form ; yet, on my heart  
Deeply hath sunk the lesson thou hast given,  
And shall not soon depart.

He who, from zone to zone,  
Guides through the boundless sky thy certain flight, 30  
In the long way that I must tread alone,  
Will lead my steps aright.

## OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES.

---

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES was born at Cambridge, Massachusetts, August 29, 1809. The house in which he was born stood between the sites now occupied by the Hemenway Gymnasium and the Law School of Harvard University, and was of historic interest as having been the headquarters of General Artemas Ward, and of the Committee of Safety in the days just before the Revolution. Upon the steps of the house stood President Langdon, of Harvard College, tradition says, and prayed for the men who, halting there a few moments, marched forward under Colonel Prescott's lead to throw up intrenchments on Bunker Hill on the night of June 16, 1775. Dr. Holmes's father carried forward the traditions of the old house, for he was Rev. Dr. Abiel Holmes, whose *American Annals* was the first careful record of American history written after the Revolution.

Born and bred in the midst of historic associations, Holmes had from the first a lively interest in American history and politics, and though possessed of strong humorous gifts often turned his song into patriotic channels, while the current of his literary life was distinctly American.

He began to write poetry when in college at Cambridge, and some of his best-known early pieces, like *Evening, by a Tailor*, *The Meeting of the Dryads*, *The Spectre Pig*, were contributed to the *Collegian*, an undergraduate journal, while he was studying law the year after his graduation. At the

same time he wrote the well-known poem *Old Ironsides*, a protest against the proposed breaking up of the frigate Constitution; the poem was printed in the *Boston Daily Advertiser*, and its indignation and fervor carried it through the country, and raised such a popular feeling that the ship was saved from an ignominious destruction. Holmes shortly gave up the study of law, went abroad to study medicine, and returned to take his degree at Harvard in 1836. At the same time he delivered a poem, *Poetry: a Metrical Essay*, before the Phi Beta Kappa Society of Harvard, and ever afterward his profession of medicine and his love of literature received his united care and thought. In 1838 he was appointed Professor of Anatomy and Physiology at Dartmouth College, but remained there only a year or two, when he returned to Boston, married, and practised medicine. In 1847 he was made Parkman Professor of Anatomy and Physiology in the Medical School of Harvard College, a position which he retained until the close of 1882, when he retired, to devote himself more exclusively to literature.

In 1857, when the *Atlantic Monthly* was established, Professor Lowell, who was asked to be editor, consented on condition that Dr. Holmes should be a regular contributor. Dr. Holmes at that time was known as the author of a number of poems of grace, life, and wit, and he had published several professional papers and books, but his brilliancy as a talker gave him a strong local reputation, and Lowell shrewdly guessed that he would bring to the new magazine a singularly fresh and unusual power. He was right, for *The Autocrat of the Breakfast-Table*, beginning in the first number, unquestionably insured the *Atlantic* its early success. The readers of the day had forgotten that Holmes, twenty-five years before, had begun a series with the same title in Buckingham's *New England Magazine*, a periodical of short life, so they did not at first understand why he should begin his first article, "I was just going to say when



*Oliver Wendell Holmes.*





I was interrupted." From that time Dr. Holmes was a frequent contributor to the magazine, and in it appeared successively, *The Autocrat of the Breakfast-Table*, *The Professor at the Breakfast-Table*, *The Professor's Story* (afterward called *Elsie Venner*), *The Guardian Angel*, *The Poet at the Breakfast-Table*, *The New Portfolio* (afterward called *A Mortal Antipathy*), *Our Hundred Days in Europe*, and *Over the Teacups*, — prose papers and stories with occasional insertion of verse; here also were first printed the many poems which he wrote so freely and so happily for festivals and public occasions, including the frequent poems at the yearly meetings of his college class. The wit and humor which have made his poetry so well known would never have given him his high rank had they not been associated with an admirable art which makes every word necessary and felicitous, and a generous nature which is quick to seize upon what touches a common life.

Dr. Holmes died at his home in Boston October 7, 1894. His life has been written by his wife's nephew, John T. Morse, Jr., and is published under the title *Life and Letters of Oliver Wendell Holmes*.

## GRANDMOTHER'S STORY OF BUNKER HILL BATTLE.

AS SHE SAW IT FROM THE BELFRY.

[This poem was first published in 1875, in connection with the centenary of the battle of Bunker Hill. The belfry could hardly have been that of Christ Church, since tradition says that General Gage was stationed there watching the battle, and we may make it to be what was known as the New Brick Church, built in 1721, on Hanover, corner of Richmond Street, Boston, rebuilt of stone in 1845, and pulled down at the widening of Hanover Street in 1871. There are many narratives of the battle of Bunker Hill. Frothingham's *History of the Siege of Boston* is one of the most comprehensive accounts, and has furnished material for many popular narratives. The centennial celebration of the battle called out magazine and newspaper articles, which give the story with little variation. There are not many disputed points in connection with the event, the principal one being the discussion as to who was the chief officer.]

'T IS like stirring living embers when, at eighty, one  
remembers  
All the achings and the quakings of "the times that  
tried men's souls ;"

2. In December, 1776, Thomas Paine, whose *Common Sense* had so remarkable a popularity as the first homely expression of public opinion on Independence, began issuing a series of tracts called *The Crisis*, eighteen numbers of which appeared. The familiar words quoted by the grandmother must often have been

When I talk of *Whig* and *Tory*, when I tell the *Rebel*  
story,  
To you the words are ashes, but to me they're burn-  
ing coals.

I had heard the muskets' rattle of the April running  
battle ;  
Lord Percy's hunted soldiers, I can see their red coats  
still ;  
But a deadly chill comes o'er me, as the day looms up  
before me,  
When a thousand men lay bleeding on the slopes of  
Bunker's Hill.

heard and used by her. They begin the first number of *The Crisis* : "These are the times that try men's souls : the summer soldier and the sunshine patriot will, in this crisis, shrink from the service of his country ; but he that stands it NOW deserves the love and thanks of man and woman."

3. The terms *Whig* and *Tory* were applied to the two parties in England who represented, respectively, the Whigs political and religious liberty, the Tories royal prerogative and ecclesiastical authority. The names first came into use in 1679 in the struggles at the close of Charles II.'s reign, and continued in use until a generation or so ago, when they gave place to somewhat corresponding terms of Liberal and Conservative. At the breaking out of the war for Independence, the Whigs in England opposed the measures taken by the crown in the management of the American colonies, while the Tories supported the crown. The names were naturally applied in America to the patriotic party, who were termed Whigs, and the loyalist party, termed Tories. The Tories in turn called the patriots rebels.

5. The Lexington and Concord affair of April 19, 1775, when Lord Percy's soldiers retreated in a disorderly manner to Charlestown, annoyed on the way by the Americans who followed and accompanied them.



'T was a peaceful summer's morning, when the first  
thing gave us warning

Was the booming of the cannon from the river and  
the shore : 10

"Child," says grandma, "what's the matter, what is  
all this noise and clatter ?

Have those scalping Indian devils come to murder us  
once more ? "

Poor old soul ! my sides were shaking in the midst of  
all my quaking,

To hear her talk of Indians when the guns began to  
roar :

She had seen the burning village, and the slaughter  
and the pillage, 15

When the Mohawks killed her father with their bul-  
lets through his door.

Then I said, "Now, dear old granny, don't you fret  
and worry any,

For I'll soon come back and tell you whether this is  
work or play ;

There can't be mischief in it, so I won't be gone a  
minute " —

For a minute then I started. I was gone the livelong  
day. 20

No time for bodice-lacing or for looking-glass grima-  
cing ;

16. The Mohawks, a formidable part of the Six Nations, were held in great dread, as they were the most cruel and warlike of all the tribes. In connection with the French they fell upon the frontier settlements during Queen Anne's war, early in the eighteenth century, and committed terrible deeds, long remembered in New England households.

Down my hair went as I hurried, tumbling half-way  
to my heels ;  
God forbid your ever knowing, when there 's blood  
around her flowing,  
How the lonely, helpless daughter of a quiet house-  
hold feels !

In the street I heard a thumping ; and I knew it was  
the stumping 25  
Of the Corporal, our old neighbor, on the wooden leg  
he wore,  
With a knot of women round him, — it was lucky I  
had found him,  
So I followed with the others, and the Corporal  
marched before.

They were making for the steeple, — the old soldier  
and his people ;  
The pigeons circled round us as we climbed the creak-  
ing stair, 30  
Just across the narrow river — Oh, so close it made  
me shiver ! —  
Stood a fortress on the hill-top that but yesterday was  
bare.

Not slow our eyes to find it ; well we knew who stood  
behind it,  
Though the earthwork hid them from us, and the stub-  
born walls were dumb :  
Here were sister, wife, and mother, looking wild upon  
each other, 35  
And their lips were white with terror as they said,  
THE HOUR HAS COME !

The morning slowly wasted, not a morsel had we  
tasted,  
And our heads were almost splitting with the cannons'  
deafening thrill,  
When a figure tall and stately round the rampart  
strode sedately ;  
It was PRESCOTT, one since told me ; he commanded  
on the hill. 40

Every woman's heart grew bigger when we saw his  
manly figure,  
With the banyan buckled round it, standing up so  
straight and tall ;  
Like a gentleman of leisure who is strolling out for  
pleasure,  
Through the storm of shells and cannon-shot he  
walked around the wall.

At eleven the streets were swarming, for the red-coats'  
ranks were forming ; 45  
At noon in marching order they were moving to the  
piers ;  
How the bayonets gleamed and glistened, as we looked  
far down, and listened  
To the trampling and the drum-beat of the belted  
grenadiers !

40. Colonel William Prescott, who commanded the detachment which marched from Cambridge, June 16, 1775, to fortify Breed's Hill, was the grandfather of William Hickling Prescott, the historian. He was in the field during the entire battle of the 17th, in command of the redoubt.

42. *Banyan* — a flowered morning gown which Prescott is said to have worn during the hot day, a good illustration of the unmilitary appearance of the soldiers engaged. His nonchalant walk upon the parapets is also a historic fact, and was for the encouragement of the troops within the redoubt.

At length the men have started, with a cheer (it  
seemed faint-hearted),  
In their scarlet regimentals, with their knapsacks on  
their backs, 50  
And the reddening, rippling water, as after a sea-  
fight's slaughter,  
Round the barges gliding onward blushed like blood  
along their tracks.

So they crossed to the other border, and again they  
formed in order ;  
And the boats came back for soldiers, came for sol-  
diers, soldiers still :  
The time seemed everlasting to us women faint and  
fasting, — 55  
At last they're moving, marching, marching proudly  
up the hill.

We can see the bright steel glancing all along the  
lines advancing —  
Now the front rank fires a volley — they have thrown  
away their shot ;  
For behind their earthwork lying, all the balls above  
them flying,  
Our people need not hurry ; so they wait and answer  
not. 60

Then the Corporal, our old cripple (he would swear  
sometimes and tittle), —  
He had heard the bullets whistle (in the old French  
war) before, —

62. Many of the officers as well as men on the American side  
had become familiarized with service through the old French  
war, which came to an end in 1763.



Calls out in words of jeering, just as if they all were  
 hearing, —  
 And his wooden leg thumps fiercely on the dusty bel-  
 fry floor : —

“ Oh ! fire away, ye villains, and earn King George’s  
 shillin’s, 65  
 But ye ’ll waste a ton of powder afore a ‘ rebel ’ falls ;  
 You may bang the dirt and welcome, they ’re as safe  
 as Dan’l Malcolm  
 Ten foot beneath the gravestone that you’ve splin-  
 tered with your balls ! ”

In the hush of expectation, in the awe and trepidation  
 Of the dread approaching moment, we are well-nigh  
 breathless all ; 70  
 Though the rotten bars are failing on the rickety bel-  
 fry railing,  
 We are crowding up against them like the waves  
 against a wall.

67. Dr. Holmes makes the following note to this line : “ The following epitaph is still to be read on a tall gravestone, standing as yet undisturbed among the transplanted monuments of the dead in Copp’s Hill Burial Ground, one of the three city [Boston] cemeteries which have been desecrated and ruined within my own remembrance : —

“ Here lies buried in a  
 Stone Grave 10 feet deep  
 Capt. DANIEL MALCOLM Mercht  
 Who departed this Life  
 October 23, 1769,  
 Aged 44 years,  
 A true son of Liberty,  
 A Friend to the Publick,  
 An Enemy to oppression,  
 And one of the foremost  
 In opposing the Revenue Acts  
 On America.”

Just a glimpse (the air is clearer), they are nearer,  
— nearer, — nearer,  
When a flash — a curling smoke-wreath — then a  
crash — the steeple shakes —  
The deadly truce is ended ; the tempest's shroud is  
rended ; 75  
Like a morning mist it gathered, like a thunder-cloud  
it breaks!

O the sight our eyes discover as the blue-black smoke  
blows over !  
The red-coats stretched in windrows as a mower rakes  
his hay ;  
Here a scarlet heap is lying, there a headlong crowd  
is flying  
Like a billow that has broken and is shivered into  
spray. 80

Then we cried, " The troops are routed ! they are  
beat — it can't be doubted !  
God be thanked, the fight is over ! " — Ah ! the grim  
old soldier's smile !  
" Tell us, tell us why you look so ? " (we could hardly  
speak we shook so), —  
" Are they beaten ? *Are* they beaten ? ARE they  
beaten ? " — " Wait a while."

O the trembling and the terror ! for too soon we saw  
our error : 85  
They are baffled, not defeated ; we have driven them  
back in vain ;  
And the columns that were scattered, round the colors  
that were tattered,  
Toward the sullen silent fortress turn their belted  
breasts again.

All at once, as we were gazing, lo ! the roofs of Charles-  
town blazing !

They have fired the harmless village ; in an hour it  
will be down ! 90

The Lord in Heaven confound them, rain his fire and  
brimstone round them, —

The robbing, murdering red-coats, that would burn a  
peaceful town !

They are marching, stern and solemn ; we can see  
each massive column

As they near the naked earth-mound with the slanting  
walls so steep.

Have our soldiers got faint-hearted, and in noiseless  
haste departed ? 95

Are they panic-struck and helpless ? Are they palsied  
or asleep ?

Now ! the walls they 're almost under ! scarce a rod  
the foes asunder !

Not a firelock flashed against them ! up the earthwork  
they will swarm !

But the words have scarce been spoken when the  
ominous calm is broken,

And a bellowing crash has emptied all the vengeance  
of the storm ! 100

So again, with murderous slaughter, pelted backwards  
to the water,

Fly Pigot's running heroes and the frightened braves  
of Howe ;

102. The generals on the British side were Howe, Clinton,  
and Pigot.

And we shout, "At last they're done for, it's their  
barges they have run for :

They are beaten, beaten, beaten ; and the battle's over  
now !"

And we looked, poor timid creatures, on the rough  
old soldier's features, 105

Our lips afraid to question, but he knew what we  
would ask :

"Not sure," he said ; "keep quiet, — once more, I  
guess, they'll try it —

Here's damnation to the cut-throats !" — then he  
handed me his flask,

Saying, "Gal, you're looking shaky ; have a drop of  
Old Jamaiky ;

I'm afeard there'll be more trouble afore the job is  
done ;" 110

So I took one scorching swallow ; dreadful faint I felt  
and hollow,

Standing there from early morning when the firing  
was begun.

All through those hours of trial I had watched a calm  
clock dial,

As the hands kept creeping, creeping, — they were  
creeping round to four,

When the old man said, "They're forming with their  
bagonets fixed for storming : 115

It's the death-grip that's a coming, — they will try  
the works once more."

With brazen trumpets blaring, the flames behind them  
glaring,



The deadly wall before them, in close array they  
come ;  
Still onward, upward toiling, like a dragon's fold un-  
coiling, —  
Like the rattlesnake's shrill warning the reverberating  
drum !

120

Over heaps all torn and gory — shall I tell the fearful  
story,  
How they surged above the breastwork, as a sea  
breaks over a deck ;  
How, driven, yet scarce defeated, our worn-out men  
retreated,  
With their powder-horns all emptied, like the swim-  
mers from a wreck ?

It has all been told and painted ; as for me, they say  
I fainted,  
And the wooden-legged old Corporal stumped with  
me down the stair :  
When I woke from dreams affrighted the evening  
lamps were lighted,  
On the floor a youth was lying ; his bleeding breast  
was bare.

125

And I heard through all the flurry, "Send for WAR-  
REN! hurry! hurry!  
Tell him here's a soldier bleeding, and he'll come  
and dress his wound!"  
Ah, we knew not till the morrow told its tale of death  
and sorrow,

130

129. Dr. Joseph Warren, of equal note at the time as a medi-  
cal man and a patriot. He was a volunteer in the battle, and  
fell there, the most serious loss on the American side. See pp.  
328, 329.

How the starlight found him stiffened on the dark  
and bloody ground.

Who the youth was, what his name was, where the  
place from which he came was,

Who had brought him from the battle, and had left  
him at our door,

He could not speak to tell us; but 't was one of our  
brave fellows, 135

As the homespun plainly showed us which the dying  
soldier wore.

For they all thought he was dying, as they gathered  
round him crying, —

And they said, “Oh, how they'll miss him!” and,  
“What *will* his mother do?”

Then, his eyelids just unclosing like a child's that has  
been dozing,

He faintly murmured, “Mother!” — and — I saw  
his eyes were blue. 140

— “Why grandma, how you're winking!” — Ah, my  
child, it sets me thinking

Of a story not like this one. Well, he somehow lived  
along;

So we came to know each other, and I nursed him like  
a — mother,

Till at last he stood before me, tall, and rosy-cheeked,  
and strong.

And we sometimes walked together in the pleasant  
summer weather; 145

— “Please to tell us what his name was?” — Just  
your own, my little dear,

There 's his picture Copley painted: we became so  
well acquainted,  
That, — in short, that 's why I 'm grandma, and you  
children are all here!

### THE CHAMBERED NAUTILUS.

THIS is the ship of pearl, which, poets feign,  
Sails the unshadowed main, —  
The venturous bark that flings  
On the sweet summer wind its purpled wings  
In gulfs enchanted, where the Siren sings, 5  
And coral reefs lie bare,  
Where the cold sea-maids rise to sun their streaming  
hair.

Its webs of living gauze no more unfurl;  
Wrecked is the ship of pearl!  
And every chambered cell, 10  
Where its dim dreaming life was wont to dwell,  
As the frail tenant shaped his growing shell,  
Before thee lies revealed, —  
Its irised ceiling rent, its sunless crypt unsealed!

Year after year beheld the silent toil 15  
That spread his lustrous coil;  
Still, as the spiral grew,

147. John Singleton Copley was a portrait painter of celebrity, who was born in America in 1737, and painted many famous portraits, which hang in private and public galleries in Boston and vicinity chiefly. He lived in England the latter half of his life, dying there in 1815.

He left the past year's dwelling for the new,  
 Stole with soft step its shining archway through,  
 Built up its idle door,  
 Stretched in his last-found home, and knew the old no  
 more.

Thanks for the heavenly message brought by thee,  
 Child of the wandering sea,  
 Cast from her lap, forlorn!  
 From thy dead lips a clearer note is born 25  
 Than ever Triton blew from wreathèd horn!  
 While on my ear it rings,  
 Through the deep caves of thought I hear a voice that  
 sings: —

Build thee more stately mansions, O my soul,  
 As the swift seasons roll! 30  
 Leave thy low-vaulted past!  
 Let each new temple, nobler than the last,  
 Shut thee from heaven with a dome more vast,  
 Till thou at length art free,  
 Leaving thine outgrown shell by life's unresting sea!

OLD IRONSIDES.

AY, tear her tattered ensign down!  
 Long has it waved on high,  
 And many an eye has danced to see  
 That banner in the sky;

1. The famous frigate *Constitution*, launched in Boston in 1797, from the site of what is now known as *Constitution Wharf*. She was built to stop the depredations of Algerine corsairs upon our merchant marine. In the Mediterranean, whither she sailed in 1803, she earned for herself the name of "Old Ironsides," — a



Beneath it rung the battle shout, 5  
And burst the cannon's roar ; —  
The meteor of the ocean air  
Shall sweep the clouds no more.

Her deck, once red with heroes' blood,  
Where knelt the vanquished foe, 10  
When winds were hurrying o'er the flood,  
And waves were white below,  
No more shall feel the victor's tread,  
Or know the conquered knee ;  
The harpies of the shore shall pluck 15  
The eagle of the sea !

Oh, better that her shattered hulk  
Should sink beneath the wave ;  
Her thunders shook the mighty deep,  
And there should be her grave ; 20  
Nail to the mast her holy flag,  
Set every threadbare sail,  
And give her to the god of storms,  
The lightning and the gale !

name that became famous after her brilliant record in the War of 1812.

Mr. John Fiske, in referring to President Monroe's message to Congress in 1823 embodying the Monroe Doctrine, says : " To language of this sort the exploits of Andrew Jackson and of ' Old Ironsides ' had given a serious meaning. Ten years earlier all Europe would have laughed at it."

# CHARLES DUDLEY WARNER

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

LIKE Mr. Aldrich, who played with his boyhood in *The Story of a Bad Boy*, Mr. Warner has treated himself as a sort of third person in *Being a Boy*, the scenes of which are laid in a primitive Massachusetts country neighborhood. The place which stood for its portrait in the book is Charlemont, near the eastern opening of the Hoosac tunnel. Here Mr. Warner spent his boyhood, removing to the place, when his father died, from Plainfield, in the same State, where he was born September 12, 1829. He was five years old when he was taken to Charlemont, and he remained there eight years, and then removed to Cazenovia, N. Y. His guardian intended him for business life, and placed him after his school days as clerk in a store, but his intellectual ambition was strong, and against all adverse fates he secured a collegiate education at Hamilton College, where he graduated in 1851. His college many years later conferred on him the degree of Doctor of Letters.

When he was in college he showed his bent for literature by contributing to the magazines of the day, and shortly after graduating compiled a *Book of Eloquence*. For the next half dozen years he was busy establishing himself in life, choosing the law at first as his profession, but really practicing the various pursuits which should finally qualify him for his predestined vocation as a man of letters. He spent two years in frontier life with a surveying party in Missouri, mainly to secure a more robust condition of body; he lectured, did hack work, wrote letters to journals, looked wistfully at public life and oratory, opened a law office in Chicago, and took what legal business he could find.

It was while he was there living by miscellaneous ventures that J. R. Hawley, formerly Senator from Connecticut, was attracted by the letters which Mr. Warner was contributing to his paper, the *Hartford Press*, and invited his correspondent to remove to Hartford and become assistant editor of the paper. This was shortly before the opening of the war for the Union. When Mr. Hawley entered the army, Mr. Warner became editor in chief; and when the *Press* became merged in the older and more substantial *Courant*, he became one of the proprietors and editors of that paper.

In that position he remained until his death, although in his last years he was relieved from much of the office work of an editor. It was in connection with his journalistic duties that his first real stroke in literature was made. He was busy with the political discussions in which the press was involved, and most of his writing was of this sort. But his morning recreation in his garden suggested to him the relief of writing playful sketches for his paper, drawn from this occupation, and the popularity attending them led to a collection of the sketches in the well-known volume *My Summer in a Garden*.

In 1868 Mr. Warner went to Europe for a year and turned his travel-experience into sketches which were gathered into *Saunterings*. This was the beginning of his more distinctly literary life. He found his pleasure as well as his recuperation thereafter chiefly in rambling and in noting men and things. The more distinctive of his books of travel growing out of this habit were *Baddeck and That Sort of Thing*, which is a humorous sketch of a journey in Nova Scotia and among the scenes of Longfellow's *Evangeline*; books of eastern travel, *My Winter on the Nile* and *In the Levant*; rambles chiefly in the Spanish peninsula under the name *A Roundabout Journey*, and a number of papers relating to American life and scenery gathered into the two volumes *Studies in the South and West* and *Our Italy*.



Yours very truly  
C. D. Warner





a warm eulogy of southern California. A genuine love of nature bore rich fruit in the Adirondack sketches *In the Wilderness*, which form the contents of this present volume.

By a natural transfer of his own habit into a more purely literary expression, Mr. Warner wrote a book, half story, half travel, entitled *Their Pilgrimage*, which carried several characters from one watering-place in America to another, enabling him thus to sketch manners and make observations in a light, satiric vein, on some phases of American life. This venture it was that led him probably into the more positive field of fictitious literature, and he produced *A Little Journey in the World*, which, under the guise of story, was really a serious inquiry into the tendencies of social life when affected strongly by the insidious influence of wealth, especially newly-gotten wealth. The publication of this novel led to the writing of two other novels, *The Golden House* and *That Fortune*, published at intervals of a few years. These novels carried forward some of the inquiries started in *A Little Journey in the World*, and the reappearance of certain characters, with a further delineation of their experience, gives the three books something of the form of a trilogy.

For several years Mr. Warner held an editorial position on *Harper's Monthly*, and many of his contributions were made to that magazine. The light, suggestive essay, best illustrated by his *Backlog Studies*, is perhaps the form of literature with which he is most identified, but the serious side of his nature is never held distinct from the humorous, as the vein of humor also runs through his more solid work. His interest in literature was always very strong, and led him into the delivery of some forcible addresses at college anniversaries and into the editorship of the *American Men of Letters* series, to which he contributed the volume on Washington Irving, who was his first great admiration in modern literature. He also conducted, as editor in chief,

the extensive work entitled *Library of the World's Best Literature*. His interest in literature and travel was not that of a dilettante. His humor is scarcely more prominent than his earnest thoughtfulness, and he gave practical expression to his thought in the part which he took in public affairs in Hartford and in the moving question of prison reform.

Mr. Warner died in Hartford, Conn., October 20, 1900.

## HOW I KILLED A BEAR

---

So many conflicting accounts have appeared about my casual encounter with an Adirondack bear last summer, that in justice to the public, to myself, and to the bear, it is necessary to make a plain statement of the facts. Besides, it is so seldom I have occasion to kill a bear, that the celebration of the exploit may be excused.

The encounter was unpremeditated on both sides. I was not hunting for a bear, and I have no reason to suppose that a bear was looking for me. The fact is, that we were both out blackberrying, and met by chance, — the usual way. There is among the Adirondack visitors always a great deal of conversation about bears, — a general expression of the wish to see one in the woods, and much speculation as to how a person would act if he or she chanced to meet one. But bears are scarce and timid, and appear only to a favored few.

It was a warm day in August, just the sort of day when an adventure of any kind seemed impossible. But it occurred to the housekeepers at our cottage — there were four of them — to send me to the clearing, on the mountain back of the house, to pick blackberries. It was rather a series of small clearings, running up into the forest, much overgrown with bushes and briers, and not unromantic. Cows pastured there,



penetrating through the leafy passages from one opening to another, and browsing among the bushes. I was kindly furnished with a six-quart pail, and told not to be gone long.

Not from any predatory instinct, but to save appearances, I took a gun. It adds to the manly aspect of a person with a tin pail if he also carries a gun. It was possible I might start up a partridge; though how I was to hit him, if he started up instead of standing still, puzzled me. Many people use a shot-gun for partridges. I prefer the rifle: it makes a clean job of death, and does not prematurely stuff the bird with globules of lead. The rifle was a Sharp's, carrying a ball cartridge (ten to the pound), — an excellent weapon belonging to a friend of mine, who had intended, for a good many years back, to kill a deer with it. He could hit a tree with it — if the wind did not blow, and the atmosphere was just right, and the tree was not too far off — nearly every time. Of course, the tree must have some size. Needless to say that I was at that time no sportsman. Years ago I killed a robin under the most humiliating circumstances. The bird was in a low cherry-tree. I loaded a big shot-gun pretty full, crept up under the tree, rested the gun on the fence, with the muzzle more than ten feet from the bird, shut both eyes, and pulled the trigger. When I got up to see what had happened, the robin was scattered about under the tree in more than a thousand pieces, no one of which was big enough to enable a naturalist to decide from it to what species it belonged. This disgusted me with the life of a sportsman. I mention the incident to show, that, although I went blackberrying armed, there was not much inequality between me and the bear.

In this blackberry-patch bears had been seen. The summer before, our colored cock, accompanied by a little girl of the vicinage, was picking berries there one day, when a bear came out of the woods, and walked towards them. The girl took to her heels, and escaped. Aunt Chloe was paralyzed with terror. Instead of attempting to run, she sat down on the ground where she was standing, and began to weep and scream, giving herself up for lost. The bear was bewildered by this conduct. He approached and looked at her; he walked around and surveyed her. Probably he had never seen a colored person before, and did not know whether she would agree with him: at any rate, after watching her a few moments, he turned about, and went into the forest. This is an authentic instance of the delicate consideration of a bear, and is much more remarkable than the forbearance towards the African slave of the well-known lion, because the bear had no thorn in his foot.

When I had climbed the hill, I set up my rifle against a tree, and began picking berries, lured on from bush to bush by the black gleam of fruit (that always promises more in the distance than it realizes when you reach it); penetrating farther and farther, through leaf-shaded cow-paths flecked with sunlight, into clearing after clearing. I could hear on all sides the tinkle of bells, the cracking of sticks, and the stamping of cattle that were taking refuge in the thicket from the flies. Occasionally, as I broke through a covert, I encountered a meek cow, who stared at me stupidly for a second, and then shambled off into the brush. I became accustomed to this dumb society, and picked on in silence, attributing all the wood noises to the cattle, thinking nothing of any

real bear. In point of fact, however, I was thinking all the time of a nice romantic bear, and, as I picked, was composing a story about a generous she-bear who had lost her cub, and who seized a small girl in this very wood, carried her tenderly off to a cave, and brought her up on bear's milk and honey. When the girl got big enough to run away, moved by her inherited instincts, she escaped, and came into the valley to her father's house (this part of the story was to be worked out, so that the child would know her father by some family resemblance, and have some language in which to address him), and told him where the bear lived. The father took his gun, and, guided by the unfeeling daughter, went into the woods and shot the bear, who never made any resistance, and only, when dying, turned reproachful eyes upon her murderer. The moral of the tale was to be kindness to animals.

I was in the midst of this tale, when I happened to look some rods away to the other edge of the clearing, and there was a bear! He was standing on his hind-legs, and doing just what I was doing, — picking blackberries. With one paw he bent down the bush, while with the other he clawed the berries into his mouth, — green ones and all. To say that I was astonished is inside the mark. I suddenly discovered that I didn't want to see a bear, after all. At about the same moment the bear saw me, stopped eating berries, and regarded me with a glad surprise. It is all very well to imagine what you would do under such circumstances. Probably you would n't do it: I did n't. The bear dropped down on his fore-feet, and came slowly towards me. Climbing a tree was of no use, with so good a climber in the rear. If I started to run, I had no doubt the bear would give chase; and

although a bear cannot run down hill as fast as he can run up hill, yet I felt that he could get over this rough, brush-tangled ground faster than I could.

The bear was approaching. It suddenly occurred to me how I could divert his mind until I could fall back upon my military base. My pail was nearly full of excellent berries, — much better than the bear could pick himself. I put the pail on the ground, and slowly backed away from it, keeping my eye, as beast-tamers do, on the bear. The ruse succeeded.

The bear came up to the berries, and stopped. Not accustomed to eat out of a pail, he tipped it over, and nosed about in the fruit, “gorming” (if there is such a word) it down, mixed with leaves and dirt, like a pig. The bear is a worse feeder than the pig. Whenever he disturbs a maple-sugar camp in the spring, he always upsets the buckets of sirup, and tramples round in the sticky sweets, wasting more than he eats. The bear’s manners are thoroughly disagreeable.

As soon as my enemy’s head was down, I started and ran. Somewhat out of breath, and shaky, I reached my faithful rifle. It was not a moment too soon. I heard the bear crashing through the brush after me. Enraged at my duplicity, he was now coming on with blood in his eye. I felt that the time of one of us was probably short. The rapidity of thought at such moments of peril is well known. I thought an octavo volume, had it illustrated and published, sold fifty thousand copies, and went to Europe on the proceeds, while that bear was loping across the clearing. As I was cocking the gun, I made a hasty and unsatisfactory review of my whole life. I noted that, even in such a compulsory review, it is almost impossible to think of any good thing you have done. The sins



come out uncommonly strong. I recollected a newspaper subscription I had delayed paying years and years ago, until both editor and newspaper were dead, and which now never could be paid to all eternity.

The bear was coming on.

I tried to remember what I had read about encounters with bears. I could n't recall an instance in which a man had run away from a bear in the woods and escaped, although I recalled plenty where the bear had run from the man and got off. I tried to think what is the best way to kill a bear with a gun, when you are not near enough to club him with the stock. My first thought was to fire at his head ; to plant the ball between his eyes ; but this is a dangerous experiment. The bear's brain is very small ; and unless you hit that, the bear does not mind a bullet in his head ; that is, not at the time. I remembered that the instant death of the bear would follow a bullet planted just back of his fore-leg, and sent into his heart. This spot is also difficult to reach, unless the bear stands off, side towards you, like a target. I finally determined to fire at him generally.

The bear was coming on.

The contest seemed to me very different from anything at Creedmoor. I had carefully read the reports of the shooting there ; but it was not easy to apply the experience I had thus acquired. I hesitated whether I had better fire lying on my stomach ; or lying on my back, and resting the gun on my toes. But in neither position, I reflected, could I see the bear until he was upon me. The range was too short ; and the bear would n't wait for me to examine the thermometer, and note the direction of the wind. Trial of the Creedmoor method, therefore, had to be

abandoned; and I bitterly regretted that I had not read more accounts of offhand shooting.

For the bear was coming on.

I tried to fix my last thoughts upon my family. As my family is small, this was not difficult. Dread of displeasing my wife, or hurting her feelings, was uppermost in my mind. What would be her anxiety as hour after hour passed on, and I did not return! What would the rest of the household think as the afternoon passed, and no blackberries came! What would be my wife's mortification when the news was brought that her husband had been eaten by a bear! I cannot imagine any thing more ignominious than to have a husband eaten by a bear. And this was not my only anxiety. The mind at such times is not under control. With the gravest fears the most whimsical ideas will occur. I looked beyond the mourning friends, and thought what kind of an epitaph they would be compelled to put upon the stone. Something like this: —

HERE LIE THE REMAINS

OF

—————,   
 EATEN BY A BEAR

Aug. 20, 1877.

It is a very unheroic and even disagreeable epitaph. That "eaten by a bear" is intolerable. It is grotesque. And then I thought what an inadequate language the English is for compact expression. It would not answer to put upon the stone simply "eaten;" for that is indefinite, and requires explanation: it might mean eaten by a cannibal. This difficulty could not occur in the German, where *essen* signifies the act of

feeding by a man, and *fressen* by a beast. How simple the thing would be in German!—

HIER LIEGT  
HOCHWOHLGEBOREN  
HERR ———— ,  
GEFRESSEN

Aug. 20, 1877.

That explains itself. The well-born one was eaten by a beast, and presumably by a bear,—an animal that has a bad reputation since the days of Elisha.

The bear was coming on; he had, in fact, come on. I judged that he could see the whites of my eyes. All my subsequent reflections were confused. I raised the gun, covered the bear's breast with the sight, and let drive. Then I turned, and ran like a deer. I did not hear the bear pursuing. I looked back. The bear had stopped. He was lying down. I then remembered that the best thing to do after having fired your gun is to reload it. I slipped in a charge, keeping my eyes on the bear. He never stirred. I walked back suspiciously. There was a quiver in the hind-legs, but no other motion. Still he might be shamming; bears often sham. To make sure, I approached, and put a ball into his head. He did n't mind it now: he minded nothing. Death had come to him with a merciful suddenness. He was calm in death. In order that he might remain so, I blew his brains out, and then started for home. I had killed a bear!

Notwithstanding my excitement, I managed to saunter into the house with an unconcerned air. There was a chorus of voices:—

“Where are your blackberries?”

"Why were you gone so long?"

"Where's your pail?"

"I left the pail."

"Left the pail! What for?"

"A bear wanted it."

"Oh, nonsense!"

"Well, the last I saw of it, a bear had it."

"Oh, come! You did n't really see a bear?"

"Yes, but I did really see a real bear."

"Did he run?"

"Yes; he ran after me."

"I don't believe a word of it. What did you do?"

"Oh! nothing particular — except kill the bear."

Cries of "Gammon!" "Don't believe it!"

"Where's the bear?"

"If you want to see the bear, you must go up into the woods. I could n't bring him down alone."

Having satisfied the household that something extraordinary had occurred, and excited the posthumous fear of some of them for my own safety, I went down into the valley to get help. The great bear-hunter, who keeps one of the summer boarding-houses, received my story with a smile of incredulity; and the incredulity spread to the other inhabitants and to the boarders as soon as the story was known. However, as I insisted in all soberness, and offered to lead them to the bear, a party of forty or fifty people at last started off with me to bring the bear in. Nobody believed there was any bear in the case; but everybody who could get a gun carried one; and we went into the woods armed with guns, pistols, pitchforks, and sticks, against all contingencies or surprises, — a crowd made up mostly of scoffers and jeerers.

But when I led the way to the fatal spot, and



pointed out the bear, lying peacefully wrapped in his own skin, something like terror seized the boarders, and genuine excitement the natives. It was a no-mistake bear, by George! and the hero of the fight — well, I will not insist upon that. But what a procession that was, carrying the bear home! and what a congregation was speedily gathered in the valley to see the bear! Our best preacher up there never drew anything like it on Sunday.

And I must say that my particular friends, who were sportsmen, behaved very well, on the whole. They did n't deny that it was a bear, although they said it was small for a bear. Mr. Deane, who is equally good with a rifle and a rod, admitted that it was a very fair shot. He is probably the best salmon-fisher in the United States, and he is an equally good hunter. I suppose there is no person in America who is more desirous to kill a moose than he. But he needlessly remarked, after he had examined the wound in the bear, that he had seen that kind of a shot made by a cow's horn.

This sort of talk affected me not. When I went to sleep that night, my last delicious thought was, "I've killed a bear!"

## LOST IN THE WOODS

---

It ought to be said, by way of explanation, that my being lost in the woods was not premeditated. Nothing could have been more informal. This apology can be necessary only to those who are familiar with the Adirondack literature. Any person not familiar with it would see the absurdity of one going to the Northern Wilderness with the deliberate purpose of writing about himself as a lost man. It may be true that a book about this wild tract would not be recognized as complete without a lost-man story in it; since it is almost as easy for a stranger to get lost in the Adirondacks as in Boston. I merely desire to say that my unimportant adventure is not narrated in answer to the popular demand, and I do not wish to be held responsible for its variation from the typical character of such experiences.

We had been in camp a week, on the Upper Ausable Lake. This is a gem — emerald or turquoise as the light changes it — set in the virgin forest. It is not a large body of water, is irregular in form, and about a mile and a half in length; but in the sweep of its wooded shores, and the lovely contour of the lofty mountains that guard it, the lake is probably the most charming in America. Why the young ladies and gentlemen who camp there occasionally vex the

days and nights with hooting, and singing sentimental songs, is a mystery even to the laughing loon.

I left my companions there one Saturday morning to return to Keene Valley, intending to fish down the Ausable River. The Upper Lake discharges itself into the Lower by a brook which winds through a mile and a half of swamp and woods. Out of the north end of the Lower Lake, which is a huge sink in the mountains, and mirrors the savage precipices, the Ausable breaks its rocky barriers, and flows through a wild gorge, several miles, to the valley below. Between the Lower Lake and the settlements is an extensive forest, traversed by a cart-path, admirably constructed of loose stones, roots of trees, decayed logs, slippery rocks, and mud. The gorge of the river forms its western boundary. I followed this caricature of a road a mile or more; then gave my luggage to the guide to carry home, and struck off through the forest, by compass, to the river. I promised myself an exciting scramble down this little-frequented cañon, and a creel full of trout. There was no difficulty in finding the river, or in descending the steep precipice to its bed: getting into a scrape is usually the easiest part of it. The river is strewn with boulders, big and little, through which the amber water rushes with an unceasing thunderous roar, now plunging down in white falls, then swirling round in dark pools. The day, already past meridian, was delightful; at least, the blue strip of it I could see overhead.

Better pools and rapids for trout never were, I thought, as I concealed myself behind a boulder, and made the first cast. There is nothing like the thrill of expectation over the first throw in unfamiliar waters. Fishing is like gambling, in that failure only

excites hope of a fortunate throw next time. There was no rise to the "leader" on the first cast, nor on the twenty-first; and I cautiously worked my way down stream, throwing right and left. When I had gone half a mile, my opinion of the character of the pools was unchanged: never were there such places for trout; but the trout were out of their places. Perhaps they did n't care for the fly: some trout seem to be so unsophisticated as to prefer the worm. I replaced the fly with a baited hook: the worm squirmed; the waters rushed and roared; a cloud sailed across the blue: no trout rose to the lonesome opportunity. There is a certain companionship in the presence of trout, especially when you can feel them flopping in your fish-basket; but it became evident that there were no trout in this wilderness, and a sense of isolation for the first time came over me. There was no living thing near. The river had by this time entered a deeper gorge; walls of rocks rose perpendicularly on either side, — picturesque rocks, painted many colors by the oxide of iron. It was not possible to climb out of the gorge; it was impossible to find a way by the side of the river; and getting down the bed, over the falls, and through the flumes, was not easy, and consumed time.

Was that thunder? Very likely. But thunder-showers are always brewing in these mountain-fortresses, and it did not occur to me that there was any thing personal in it. Very soon, however, the hole in the sky closed in, and the rain dashed down. It seemed a providential time to eat my luncheon; and I took shelter under a scraggy pine that had rooted itself in the edge of the rocky slope. The shower soon passed, and I continued my journey, creeping



over the slippery rocks, and continuing to show my confidence in the unresponsive trout. The way grew wider and more grewsome. The thunder began again, rolling along over the tops of the mountains, and reverberating in sharp concussions in the gorge: the lightning also darted down into the darkening passage, and then the rain. Every enlightened being, even if he is in a fisherman's dress of shirt and pantaloons, hates to get wet; and I ignominiously crept under the edge of a sloping boulder. It was all very well at first, until streams of water began to crawl along the face of the rock, and trickle down the back of my neck. This was refined misery, unheroic and humiliating, as suffering always is when unaccompanied by resignation.

A longer time than I knew was consumed in this and repeated efforts to wait for the slackening and renewing storm to pass away. In the intervals of calm I still fished, and even descended to what a sportsman considers incredible baseness; I put a "sinker" on my line. It is the practice of the country-folk, whose only object is to get-fish, to use a good deal of bait, sink the hook to the bottom of the pools, and wait the slow appetite of the summer trout. I tried this also. I might as well have fished in a pork-barrel. It is true, that, in one deep, black, round pool, I lured a small trout from the bottom, and deposited him in the creel; but it was an accident. Though I sat there in the awful silence (the roar of water only emphasized the stillness) full half an hour, I was not encouraged by another nibble. Hope, however, did not die: I always expected to find the trout in the next flume; and so I toiled slowly on, unconscious of the passing time. At each turn of the

stream I expected to see the end, and at each turn I saw a long, narrow stretch of rocks and foaming water. Climbing out of the ravine was, in most places, simply impossible; and I began to look with interest for a slide, where bushes rooted in the scant earth would enable me to scale the precipice. I did not doubt that I was nearly through the gorge. I could at length see the huge form of the Giant of the Valley, scarred with avalanches, at the end of the vista; and it seemed not far off. But it kept its distance, as only a mountain can, while I stumbled and slid down the rocky way. The rain had now set in with persistence, and suddenly I became aware that it was growing dark, and I said to myself, "If you don't wish to spend the night in this horrible chasm, you'd better escape speedily." Fortunately I reached a place where the face of the precipice was bush-grown, and with considerable labor scrambled up it.

Having no doubt that I was within half a mile, perhaps within a few rods, of the house above the entrance of the gorge, and that, in any event, I should fall into the cart-path in a few minutes, I struck boldly into the forest, congratulating myself on having escaped out of the river. So sure was I of my whereabouts, that I did not note the bend of the river, nor look at my compass. The one trout in my basket was no burden, and I stepped lightly out.

The forest was of hard-wood, and open, except for a thick undergrowth of moose-bush. It was raining, — in fact, it had been raining, more or less, for a month, — and the woods were soaked. This moose-bush is most annoying stuff to travel through in a rain; for the broad leaves slap one in the face, and sop him with wet. The way grew every moment

more dingy. The heavy clouds above the thick foliage brought night on prematurely. It was decidedly premature to a near-sighted man, whose glasses the rain rendered useless: such a person ought to be at home early. On leaving the river-bank I had borne to the left, so as to be sure to strike either the clearing or the road, and not wander off into the measureless forest. I confidently pursued this course, and went gayly on by the left flank. That I did not come to any opening or path, only showed that I had slightly mistaken the distance: I was going in the right direction.

I was so certain of this, that I quickened my pace, and got up with alacrity every time I tumbled down amid the slippery leaves and catching roots, and hurried on. And I kept to the left. It even occurred to me that I was turning to the left so much, that I might come back to the river again. It grew more dusky, and rained more violently; but there was nothing alarming in the situation, since I knew exactly where I was. It was a little mortifying that I had miscalculated the distance: yet, so far was I from feeling any uneasiness about this, that I quickened my pace again, and, before I knew it, was in a full run; that is, as full a run as a person can indulge in in the dusk, with so many trees in the way. No nervousness, but simply a reasonable desire to get there. I desired to look upon myself as the person "not lost, but gone before." As time passed, and darkness fell, and no clearing or road appeared, I ran a little faster. It did n't seem possible that the people had moved, or the road been changed; and yet I was sure of my direction. I went on with an energy increased by the ridiculousness of the situation, the danger that an

experienced woodsman was in of getting home late for supper; the lateness of the meal being nothing to the gibes of the unlost. How long I kept this course, and how far I went on, I do not know; but suddenly I stumbled against an ill-placed tree, and sat down on the soaked ground, a trifle out of breath. It then occurred to me that I had better verify my course by the compass. There was scarcely light enough to distinguish the black end of the needle. To my amazement, the compass, which was made near Greenwich, was wrong. Allowing for the natural variation of the needle, it was absurdly wrong. It made out that I was going south when I was going north. It intimated, that, instead of turning to the left, I had been making a circuit to the right. According to the compass, the Lord only knew where I was.

The inclination of persons in the woods to travel in a circle is unexplained. I suppose it arises from the sympathy of the legs with the brain. Most people reason in a circle: their minds go round and round, always in the same track. For the last half-hour I had been saying over a sentence that started itself: "I wonder where that *road* is!" I had said it over till it had lost all meaning. I kept going round on it; and yet I could not believe that my body had been travelling in a circle. Not being able to recognize any tracks, I have no evidence that I had so travelled, except the general testimony of lost men.

The compass annoyed me. I've known experienced guides utterly discredit it. It could n't be that I was to turn about, and go the way I had come. Nevertheless, I said to myself, "You'd better keep a cool head, my boy, or you are in for a night of it. Better listen to science than to spunk." And I



resolved to heed the impartial needle. I was a little weary of the rough tramping : but it was necessary to be moving ; for, with wet clothes and the night air, I was decidedly chilly. I turned towards the north, and slipped and stumbled along. A more uninviting forest to pass the night in I never saw. Everything was soaked. If I became exhausted, it would be necessary to build a fire ; and, as I walked on, I could n't find a dry bit of wood. Even if a little punk were discovered in a rotten log, I had no hatchet to cut fuel. I thought it all over calmly. I had the usual three matches in my pocket. I knew exactly what would happen if I tried to build a fire. The first match would prove to be wet. The second match, when struck, would shine and smell, and fizz a little and then go out. There would be only one match left. Death would ensue if it failed. I should get close to the log, crawl under my hat, strike the match, see it catch, flicker, almost go out (the reader painfully excited by this time), blaze up, nearly expire, and finally fire the punk, — thank God ! And I said to myself, "The public don't want any more of this thing : it is played out. Either have a box of matches, or let the first one catch fire."

In this gloomy mood I plunged along. The prospect was cheerless ; for, apart from the comfort that a fire would give, it is necessary, at night, to keep off the wild beasts. I fancied I could hear the tread of the stealthy brutes following their prey. But there was one source of profound satisfaction, — the catamount had been killed. Mr. Colvin, the triangulating surveyor of the Adirondacks, killed him in his last official report to the State. Whether he despatched him with a theodolite or a barometer does not matter :

he is officially dead, and none of the travellers can kill him any more. Yet he has served them a good turn.

I knew that catamount well. One night when we lay in the bogs of the South Beaver Meadow, under a canopy of mosquitoes, the serene midnight was parted by a wild and human-like cry from a neighboring mountain. "That's a cat," said the guide. I felt in a moment that it was the voice of "modern cultchah." "Modern culture," says Mr. Joseph Cook in a most impressive period, — "modern culture is a child crying in the wilderness, and with no voice but a cry." That describes the catamount exactly. The next day, when we ascended the mountain, we came upon the traces of this brute, — a spot where he had stood and cried in the night; and I confess that my hair rose with the consciousness of his recent presence, as it is said to do when a spirit passes by.

Whatever consolation the absence of catamount in a dark, drenched, and howling wilderness can impart, that I experienced; but I thought what a satire upon my present condition was modern culture, with its plain thinking and high living! It was impossible to get much satisfaction out of the real and the ideal, — the me and the not-me. At this time what impressed me most was the absurdity of my position looked at in the light of modern civilization and all my advantages and acquirements. It seemed pitiful that society could do absolutely nothing for me. It was, in fact, humiliating to reflect that it would now be profitable to exchange all my possessions for the woods instinct of the most unlettered guide. I began to doubt the value of the "culture" that blunts the natural instincts.

It began to be a question whether I could hold out to walk all night ; for I must travel, or perish. And now I imagined that a spectre was walking by my side. This was *Famine*. To be sure, I had only recently eaten a hearty luncheon : but the pangs of hunger got hold on me when I thought that I should have no supper, no breakfast ; and, as the procession of unattainable meals stretched before me, I grew hungrier and hungrier. I could feel that I was becoming gaunt, and wasting away : already I seemed to be emaciated. It is astonishing how speedily a jocund, well-conditioned human being can be transformed into a spectacle of poverty and want. Lose a man in the woods, drench him, tear his pantaloons, get his imagination running on his lost supper and the cheerful fireside that is expecting him, and he will become haggard in an hour. I am not dwelling upon these things to excite the reader's sympathy, but only to advise him, if he contemplates an adventure of this kind, to provide himself with matches, kindling-wood, something more to eat than one raw trout, and not to select a rainy night for it.

Nature is so pitiless, so unresponsive, to a person in trouble ! I had read of the soothing companionship of the forest, the pleasure of the pathless woods. But I thought, as I stumbled along in the dismal actuality, that if I ever got out of it I would write a letter to the newspapers, exposing the whole thing. There is an impassive, stolid brutality about the woods that has never been enough insisted on. I tried to keep my mind fixed upon the fact of man's superiority to Nature ; his ability to dominate and outwit her. My situation was an amusing satire on this theory. I fancied that I could feel a sneer in the woods at my

detected conceit. There was something personal in it. The downpour of the rain and the slipperiness of the ground were elements of discomfort ; but there was, besides these, a kind of terror in the very character of the forest itself. I think this arose not more from its immensity than from the kind of stolidity to which I have alluded. It seemed to me that it would be a sort of relief to kick the trees. I don't wonder that the bears fall to, occasionally, and scratch the bark off the great pines and maples, tearing it angrily away. One must have some vent to his feelings. It is a common experience of people lost in the woods to lose their heads ; and even the woodsmen themselves are not free from this panic when some accident has thrown them out of their reckoning. Fright unsettles the judgment: the oppressive silence of the woods is a vacuum in which the mind goes astray. It's a hollow sham, this pantheism, I said ; being "one with Nature" is all humbug : I should like to see somebody. Man, to be sure, is of very little account, and soon gets beyond his depth ; but the society of the least human being is better than this gigantic indifference. The "rapture on the lonely shore" is agreeable only when you know you can at any moment go home.

I had now given up all expectation of finding the road, and was steering my way as well as I could northward towards the valley. In my haste I made slow progress. Probably the distance I travelled was short, and the time consumed not long ; but I seemed to be adding mile to mile, and hour to hour. I had time to review the incidents of the Russo-Turkish war, and to forecast the entire Eastern question ; I outlined the characters of all my companions left in



camp, and sketched in a sort of comedy the sympathetic and disparaging observations they would make on my adventure ; I repeated something like a thousand times, without contradiction, " What a fool you were to leave the river ! " I stopped twenty times, thinking I heard its loud roar, always deceived by the wind in the tree tops ; I began to entertain serious doubts about the compass, — when suddenly I became aware that I was no longer on level ground ; I was descending a slope ; I was actually in a ravine. In a moment more I was in a brook newly formed by the rain. " Thank Heaven ! " I cried : " this I shall follow whatever conscience or the compass says." In this region, all streams go, sooner or later, into the valley. This ravine, this stream, no doubt, led to the river. I splashed and tumbled along down it in mud and water. Down hill we went together, the fall showing that I must have wandered to high ground. When I guessed that I must be close to the river, I suddenly stepped into mud up to my ankles. It was the road, — running, of course, the wrong way, but still the blessed road. It was a mere canal of liquid mud ; but man had made it, and it would take me home. I was at least three miles from the point where I supposed I was near at sunset, and I had before me a toilsome walk of six or seven miles, most of the way in a ditch ; but it is truth to say I enjoyed every step of it. I was safe ; I knew where I was ; and I could have walked till morning. The mind had again got the upper hand of the body, and began to plume itself on its superiority : it was even disposed to doubt whether it had been " lost " at all.

## A FIGHT WITH A TROUT

---

TROUT-FISHING in the Adirondacks would be a more attractive pastime than it is, but for the popular notion of its danger. The trout is a retiring and harmless animal, except when he is aroused, and forced into a combat; and then his agility, fierceness, and vindictiveness become apparent. No one who has studied the excellent pictures representing men in an open boat, exposed to the assaults of long, enraged trout flying at them through the open air with open mouth, ever ventures with his rod upon the lonely lakes of the forest without a certain terror, or ever reads of the exploits of daring fishermen without a feeling of admiration for their heroism. Most of their adventures are thrilling, and all of them are, in narration, more or less unjust to the trout: in fact, the object of them seems to be to exhibit, at the expense of the trout, the shrewdness, the skill, and the muscular power of the sportsman. My own simple story has few of these recommendations.

We had built our bark camp one summer, and were staying on one of the popular lakes of the Saranac region. It would be a very pretty region if it were not so flat, if the margins of the lakes had not been flooded by dams at the outlets, — which have killed the trees, and left a rim of ghastly dead-wood like the swamps of the under-world pictured by Doré's bizarre pencil, — and if the pianos at the hotels were in tune. It would

be an excellent sporting-region also (for there is water enough) if the fish commissioners would stock the waters, and if previous hunters had not pulled all the hair and skin off from the deer's tails. Formerly sportsmen had a habit of catching the deer by the tails, and of being dragged in mere wantonness round and round the shores. It is well known, that, if you seize a deer by this "holt," the skin will slip off like the peel from a banana. This reprehensible practice was carried so far, that the traveller is now hourly pained by the sight of peeled-tail deer mournfully sneaking about the wood.

We had been hearing, for weeks, of a small lake in the heart of the virgin forest, some ten miles from our camp, which was alive with trout, unsophisticated, hungry trout: the inlet to it was described as *stiff* with them. In my imagination I saw them lying there in ranks and rows, each a foot long, three tiers deep, a solid mass. The lake had never been visited, except by stray sable-hunters in the winter, and was known as the Unknown Pond. I determined to explore it; fully expecting, however, that it would prove to be a delusion, as such mysterious haunts of the trout usually are. Confiding my purpose to Luke, we secretly made our preparations, and stole away from the shanty one morning at daybreak. Each of us carried a boat, a pair of blankets, a sack of bread, pork, and maple-sugar; while I had my case of rods, creel, and book of flies, and Luke had an axe and the kitchen utensils. We think nothing of loads of this sort in the woods.

Five miles through a tamarack-swamp brought us to the inlet of Unknown Pond, upon which we embarked our fleet, and paddled down its vagrant waters. They were at first sluggish, winding among *triste* fir-trees, but gradually developed a strong current. At the end

of three miles a loud roar ahead warned us that we were approaching rapids, falls, and cascades. We paused. The danger was unknown. We had our choice of shouldering our loads and making a *détour* through the woods, or of "shooting the rapids." Naturally we chose the more dangerous course. Shooting the rapids has often been described, and I will not repeat the description here. It is needless to say that I drove my frail bark through the boiling rapids, over the successive water-falls, amid rocks and vicious eddies, and landed half a mile below with whitened hair and a boat half full of water; and that the guide was upset, and boat, contents, and man were strewn along the shore.

After this common experience we went quickly on our journey, and, a couple of hours before sundown, reached the lake. If I live to my dying day, I never shall forget its appearance. The lake is almost an exact circle, about a quarter of a mile in diameter. The forest about it was untouched by axe, and unkilld by artificial flooding. The azure water had a perfect setting of evergreens, in which all the shades of the fir, the balsam, the pine, and the spruce, were perfectly blended; and at intervals on the shore, in the emerald rim, blazed the ruby of the cardinal-flower. It was at once evident that the unruffled waters had never been vexed by the keel of a boat. But what chiefly attracted my attention, and amused me, was the boiling of the water, the bubbling and breaking, as if the lake were a vast kettle, with a fire underneath. A tyro would have been astonished at this common phenomenon; but sportsmen will at once understand me when I say that the water *boiled* with the breaking trout. I studied the surface for some time to see upon what sort of



flies they were feeding, in order to suit my cast to their appetites ; but they seemed to be at play rather than feeding, leaping high in the air in graceful curves, and tumbling about each other as we see them in the Adirondack pictures.

It is well known that no person who regards his reputation will ever kill a trout with anything but a fly. It requires some training on the part of the trout to take to this method. The uncultivated, unsophisticated trout in unfrequented waters prefers the bait ; and the rural people, whose sole object in going a-fishing appears to be to catch fish, indulge them in their primitive taste for the worm. No sportsman, however, will use anything but a fly, except he happens to be alone.

While Luke launched my boat, and arranged his seat in the stern, I prepared my rod and line. The rod is a bamboo, weighing seven ounces, which has to be spliced with a winding of silk thread every time it is used. This is a tedious process ; but, by fastening the joints in this way, a uniform spring is secured in the rod. No one devoted to high art would think of using a socket joint. My line was forty yards of untwisted silk upon a multiplying reel. The "leader" — I am very particular about my leaders — had been made to order from a domestic animal with which I had been acquainted. The fisherman requires as good a catgut as the violinist. The interior of the house-cat, it is well known, is exceedingly sensitive ; but it may not be so well known that the reason why some cats leave the room in distress when a piano-forte is played is because the two instruments are not in the same key, and the vibrations of the chords of the one are in discord with the catgut of the other. On six feet of this superior

article I fixed three artificial flies, — a simple brown hackle, a gray body with scarlet wings, and one of my own invention, which I thought would be new to the most experienced fly-catcher. The trout-fly does not resemble any known species of insect. It is a “conventionalized” creation, as we say of ornamentation. The theory is, that, fly-fishing being a high art, the fly must not be a tame imitation of nature, but an artistic suggestion of it. It requires an artist to construct one; and not every bungler can take a bit of red flannel, a peacock’s feather, a flash of tinsel thread, a cock’s plume, a section of a hen’s wing, and fabricate a tiny object that will not look like any fly, but still will suggest the universal conventional fly.

I took my stand in the centre of the tipsy boat; and Luke shoved off, and slowly paddled towards some lily-pads, while I began casting, unlimbering my tools, as it were. The fish had all disappeared. I got out, perhaps, fifty feet of line, with no response, and gradually increased it to one hundred. It is not difficult to learn to cast; but it is difficult to learn not to snap off the flies at every throw. Of this, however, we will not speak. I continued casting for some moments, until I became satisfied that there had been a miscalculation. Either the trout were too green to know what I was at, or they were dissatisfied with my offers. I reeled in, and changed the flies (that is, the fly that was not snapped off). After studying the color of the sky, of the water, and of the foliage, and the moderated light of the afternoon, I put on a series of beguilers, all of a subdued brilliancy, in harmony with the approach of evening. At the second cast, which was a short one, I saw a splash where the leader fell, and gave an excited jerk. The next instant I perceived

the game, and did not need the unfeigned "dam" of Luke to convince me that I had snatched his felt hat from his head, and deposited it among the lilies. Discouraged by this, we whirled about, and paddled over to the inlet, where a little ripple was visible in the tinted light. At the very first cast I saw that the hour had come. Three trout leaped into the air. The danger of this manœuvre all fishermen understand. It is one of the commonest in the woods: three heavy trout taking hold at once, rushing in different directions, smash the tackle into flinders. I evaded this catch, and threw again. I recall the moment. A hermit thrush, on the tip of a balsam, uttered his long, liquid evening note. Happening to look over my shoulder, I saw the peak of Marcy gleam rosy in the sky (I can't help it that Marcy is fifty miles off, and cannot be seen from this region: these incidental touches are always used). The hundred feet of silk swished through the air, and the tail-fly fell as lightly on the water as a three-cent piece, which no slamming will give the weight of a ten, drops upon the contribution plate. Instantly there was a rush, a swirl. I struck, and "Got him, by—!" Never mind what Luke said I got him by. "Out on a fly!" continued that irreverent guide; but I told him to back water, and make for the centre of the lake. The trout, as soon as he felt the prick of the hook, was off like a shot, and took out the whole of the line with a rapidity that made it smoke. "Give him the butt!" shouted Luke. It is the usual remark in such an emergency. I gave him the butt; and, recognizing the fact and my spirit, the trout at once sank to the bottom, and sulked. It is the most dangerous mood of a trout; for you cannot tell what he will do next. We

reeled up a little, and waited five minutes for him to reflect. A tightening of the line enraged him, and he soon developed his tactics. Coming to the surface, he made straight for the boat faster than I could reel in, and evidently with hostile intentions. "Look out for him!" cried Luke as he came flying in the air. I evaded him by dropping flat in the bottom of the boat; and, when I picked my traps up, he was spinning across the lake as if he had a new idea; but the line was still fast. He did not run far. I gave him the butt again; a thing he seemed to hate, even as a gift. In a moment the evil-minded fish, lashing the water in his rage, was coming back again, making straight for the boat as before. Luke, who was used to these encounters, having read of them in the writings of travellers he had accompanied, raised his paddle in self-defence. The trout left the water about ten feet from the boat, and came directly at me with fiery eyes, his speckled sides flashing like a meteor. I dodged as he whisked by with a vicious slap of his bifurcated tail, and nearly upset the boat. The line was of course slack; and the danger was that he would entangle it about me, and carry away a leg. This was evidently his game; but I untangled it, and only lost a breast-button or two by the swiftly-moving string. The trout plunged into the water with a hissing sound, and went away again with all the line on the reel. More butt; more indignation on the part of the captive. The contest had now been going on for half an hour, and I was getting exhausted. We had been back and forth across the lake, and round and round the lake. What I feared was, that the trout would start up the inlet, and wreck us in the bushes. But he had a new fancy, and began the execution of a manœuvre



which I had never read of. Instead of coming straight towards me, he took a large circle, swimming rapidly, and *gradually contracting his orbit*. I reeled in, and kept my eye on him. Round and round he went, narrowing his circle. I began to suspect the game; which was, to twist my head off. When he had reduced the radius of his circle to about twenty-five feet, he struck a tremendous pace through the water. It would be false modesty in a sportsman to say that I was not equal to the occasion. Instead of turning round with him, as he expected, I stepped to the bow, braced myself, and let the boat swing. Round went the fish, and round we went like a top. I saw a line of Mount Marcy all round the horizon; the rosy tint in the west made a broad band of pink along the sky above the tree-tops; the evening star was a perfect circle of light, a hoop of gold in the heavens. We whirled and reeled, and reeled and whirled. I was willing to give the malicious beast butt and line, and all, if he would only go the other way for a change.

When I came to myself, Luke was gaffing the trout at the boat-side. After we had got him in and dressed him, he weighed three-quarters of a pound. Fish always lose by being "got in and dressed." It is best to weigh them while they are in the water. The only really large one I ever caught got away with my leader when I first struck him. He weighed ten pounds.

## EDWARD EVERETT.

---

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

EDWARD EVERETT was born at Dorchester, Mass., April 11, 1794. At the age of eight he was, for a short time, a pupil of Daniel Webster, who was twelve years his senior. The acquaintance then begun between these embryo orators ripened into a lasting friendship.

His son, Dr. William Everett, says in a speech made at the Harvard Commencement Dinner of 1891: "My father's connection with Harvard College began eighty-seven years ago, when he was a child of ten. His older brother was in college, living in the south entry of Hollis. The child was to begin the study of Greek in the winter vacation. The family were too poor to afford two Greek grammars; and little Edward had to walk in the depth of winter from the corner of Essex and Washington streets in Boston over the then most lonely road to the college and secure the prized volume. From that day his connection with Harvard College was scarcely broken till his death. He was four years an undergraduate, . . . two years a tutor, nine years a professor, three years president, and at two different times an overseer; at his death he held an appointment as college lecturer."

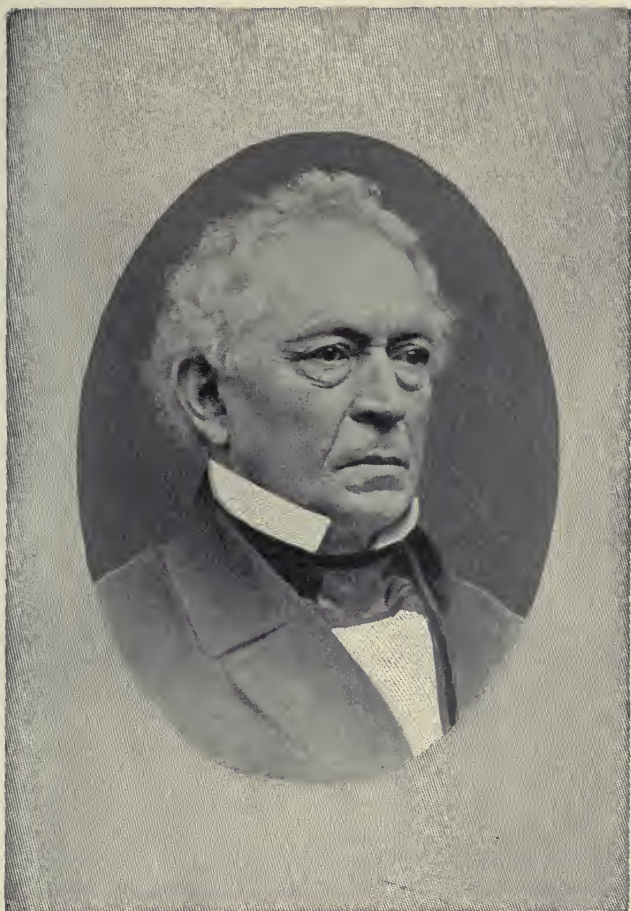
The older brother referred to above was Alexander Hill Everett, who was graduated with the highest honors at the age of fourteen. Five years later (in 1811) Edward was graduated with the highest honors at the age of seventeen; he was regarded in college as a prodigy of youthful genius.

In 1812 he became a tutor at Harvard, and at the same time a student of theology. On February 9, 1814, at the youthful age of nineteen, he was ordained as pastor of the Brattle Street Church, at Boston, where he immediately rose to distinction as an eloquent and impressive pulpit orator.

In March, 1815, he accepted the Eliot Professorship of Greek at Harvard College. In order to become better prepared for the duties of the position he travelled and studied in Europe until 1819. While abroad he pursued an extensive range of study at the principal centres of learning, and he took the degree of Ph. D. at the University of Göttingen. His return to Cambridge was hailed with delight, and gave a wonderful impulse to American scholarship. In addition to his duties as professor he took charge of the *North American Review*, which he conducted for five years.

In 1824 he delivered his celebrated Phi Beta Kappa oration at Cambridge, Mass., to an immense audience, including General Lafayette, in which he portrayed in eloquent and patriotic terms the political, social, and literary future of our country. In the same year he was elected a member of the National House of Representatives; after four re-elections and a valuable service of ten years as Congressman he was chosen Governor of Massachusetts. He was annually reelected Governor until 1839, when he was defeated by a majority of one vote.

In 1841, after nearly a year's sojourn in Europe, he was appointed Minister Plenipotentiary to Great Britain, under General Harrison as President and his friend Daniel Webster as Secretary of State. In 1845 he returned to America and became for three years President of Harvard College. In 1850 he published his speeches and orations in two volumes, and at about the same time edited Daniel Webster's works in six volumes, for which he prepared an elaborate memoir. Upon the death of Webster in 1852, Everett took his place as Secretary of State under President Fillmore.



Edward Everett.





From March, 1853, to May, 1854, he was in the United States Senate.

On February 22, 1856, he delivered in Boston an address, on the *Character of Washington*, which he repeated in different cities and towns nearly one hundred and fifty times. He gave the entire proceeds of this address toward the purchase of Mt. Vernon, the home of Washington, for the general government. He also gave for the same purpose \$10,000 received for articles written for the *New York Ledger*, thus raising the entire amount contributed by him to over \$100,000. In 1857 and 1858 he gave to different charitable associations the proceeds of other addresses, amounting to nearly \$20,000.

In 1860 he was nominated for the Vice-Presidency on the ticket with John Bell, of Tennessee, but was defeated. Though anxious for peace while there was a chance to avoid war, he threw the whole weight of his powers into a support of the Union after the War of Secession began, and won the gratitude of his countrymen by the fervent, patriotic eloquence of his speeches in all the principal cities of the North. His death occurred on January 15, 1865, and resulted from a cold caught on the evening of January 9, while delivering an address in aid of the suffering inhabitants of Savannah, which had just been captured by Gen. Sherman.

Edward Everett's life of seventy-one years spanned a large portion of the youth of our nation. Born in the administration of Washington, he lived to see the War of Secession practically ended under Lincoln. Although thirty-six years old before the first locomotive engine made its appearance in the United States, he lived to see our country covered with a network of over thirty-five thousand miles of railways. During his life the population of the United States increased from about four to thirty millions, and the number of States from fifteen to thirty-six.

It is not to be wondered at that he was fired with an in-

tense feeling of patriotism, or that his noble utterances struck responsive chords in the hearts of his listeners. He had a theory that man can do fairly well anything that he honestly tries to do ; his own practice was to undertake whatever work lay before him, and so extraordinary was the versatility of his great mental power that he did remarkably well whatever he undertook. He achieved distinction as an orator, a man of letters, a statesman, and a diplomatist, but the single title which describes him best is that of *orator*. Had he labored continuously in some chosen field he would have left behind him even a greater monument of his remarkable power than is to be found in his numerous speeches and orations.

## FROM "THE CHARACTER OF WASHINGTON."

COMMON sense was eminently a characteristic of Washington ; so called, not because it is so very common a trait of character of public men, but because it is the final judgment on great practical questions to which the mind of the community is pretty sure eventually to arrive. Few qualities of character in those who influence the fortunes of nations are so conducive both to stability and progress. But it is a quality which takes no hold of the imagination ; it inspires no enthusiasm, it wins no favor ; it is well if it can stand its ground against the plausible absurdities, the hollow pretences, the stupendous impostures of the day.

But, however these unobtrusive and austere virtues may be overlooked in the popular estimate, they belong unquestionably to the true type of sterling greatness, reflecting as far as it can be done within the narrow limits of humanity that deep repose and silent equilibrium of mental and moral power which governs the universe. To complain of the character of Washington that it is destitute of brilliant qualities, is to complain of a circle that it has no salient points and no sharp angles in its circumference ; forgetting that it owes all its wonderful properties to the unbroken curve of which every point is equidistant from the centre.<sup>1</sup> Instead, therefore, of being a mark of infe-

<sup>1</sup> I was not aware, when I wrote this sentence, that I had ever read Dryden's "Heroic Stanzas consecrated to the Memory of his Highness Oliver, late Lord Protector of this Commonwealth,



riority, this sublime adjustment of powers and virtues in the character of Washington is in reality its glory. It is this which chiefly puts him in harmony with more than human greatness. The higher we rise in the scale of being, — material, intellectual, and moral, — the more certainly we quit the region of the brilliant eccentricities and dazzling contrasts which belong to a vulgar greatness. Order and proportion characterize the primordial constitution of the terrestrial system ; ineffable harmony rules the heavens. All the great eternal forces act in solemn silence. The brawling torrent that dries up in summer deafens you with its roaring whirlpools in March ; while the vast earth on which we dwell, with all its oceans and all its continents and its thousand millions of inhabitants, revolves unheard upon its soft axle at the rate of a thousand miles an hour, and rushes noiselessly on its orbit a million and a half miles a day. Two storm-clouds encamped upon opposite hills on a sultry summer's evening, at the expense of no more electricity, according to Mr. Faraday, than is evolved in the decomposition of a single drop of water, will shake the surrounding atmosphere with their thunders, which, loudly as they rattle on the spot, will yet not be heard at the distance of twenty miles ; while those tremendous and unutterable forces which ever issue from the throne of God, and drag the chariot-wheels of Uranus and Neptune along the uttermost pathways of the solar system, pervade the illimitable universe in silence.

written after celebrating his funeral," one of which is as follows : —

"How shall I then begin or where conclude,  
To draw a fame so truly circular,  
For in a round what order can be shewed,  
When all the parts so equal perfect are ?"

This calm and well-balanced temperament of Washington's character is not badly shadowed forth in the poet's description of Cicero: —

“This magistrate hath struck an awe into me,  
And by his sweetness won a more regard  
Unto his place, than all the boisterous moods  
That ignorant greatness practiseth to fill  
The large unfit authority it wears.  
How easy is a noble spirit discerned  
From harsh and sulphurous matter, that flies out  
In contumelies, makes a noise, and bursts.”<sup>1</sup>

And did I say, my friends, that I was unable to furnish an entirely satisfactory answer to the question, in what the true excellence of the character of Washington consists? Let me recall the word as unjust to myself and unjust to you. The answer is plain and simple enough; it is this, that all the great qualities of disposition and action, which so eminently fitted him for the service of his fellow-men, were founded on the basis of a pure Christian morality, and derived their strength and energy from that vital source. He was great as he was good; he was great because he was good; and I believe, as I do in my existence, that it was an important part in the design of Providence in raising him up to be the leader of the Revolutionary struggle, and afterwards the first President of the United States, to rebuke prosperous ambition and successful intrigue; to set before the people of America, in the morning of their national existence, a living example to prove that armies may be best conducted, and governments most ably and honorably administered, by men of sound moral principle; to teach to gifted and aspiring individuals, and the parties they lead, that, though a hundred crooked paths may con-

<sup>1</sup> Ben Jonson's *Catiline*.

duct to a temporary success, the one plain and straight path of public and private virtue can alone lead to a pure and lasting fame and the blessings of posterity.

Born beneath an humble but virtuous roof, brought up at the knees of a mother not unworthy to be named with the noblest matrons of Rome or Israel, the "good boy," as she delighted to call him, passed uncorrupted through the temptations of the solitary frontier, the camp, and the gay world, and grew up into the good man. Engaging in early youth in the service of the country, rising rapidly to the highest trusts, office and influence and praise passing almost the bounds of human desert did nothing to break down the austere simplicity of his manners or to shake the solid basis of his virtues. Placed at the head of the suffering and discontented armies of his country, urged by the tempter to change his honest and involuntary dictatorship of influence into a usurped dictatorship of power, reluctantly consenting to one reëlection to the Presidency and positively rejecting a second, no suspicion ever crossed the mind of an honest man, — let the libellers say what they would, for libellers I am sorry to say there were in that day as in this, — men who pick their daily dishonorable bread out of the characters of men as virtuous as themselves, — and they spared not Washington, — but the suspicion never entered into the mind of an honest man, that his heart was open to the seductions of ambition or interest; or that he was capable in the slightest degree, by word or deed, of shaping his policy with a view to court popular favor or serve a selfish end; that a wish or purpose ever entered his mind inconsistent with the spotless purity of his character.

“No veil

He needed, virtue proof, no thought infirm  
Altered his cheek.”

And is the judgment of mankind so depraved, is their perception of moral worth so dull, that they can withhold their admiration from such a character and bestow it, for instance, upon the hard-hearted, wondrous youth of ancient renown, who when he had trampled the effeminate rabble of the East under the iron feet of his Macedonian Phalanx, and that world which he wept to conquer was in fact grovelling at his footstool; when he might have founded a dynasty at Babylon which would have crushed the Roman domination in the bud, and changed the history of the world from that time to this, could fool away the sceptre of universal dominion which Providence was forcing into his hand in one night's debauch, and quench power and glory and reason and life in the poisonous cup of wine and harlotry?

Can men coldly qualify their applause of the patriot hero of the American Revolution, who never drew his sword but in a righteous defensive war, and magnify the name of the great Roman Dictator who made the “bravo's trade” the merciless profession of his life, and trained his legions in the havoc of unoffending foreign countries for the “more than civil wars” in which he prostrated the liberties of his own?

Can they seriously disparage our incorruptible Washington, who would not burden the impoverished treasury of the Union by accepting even the frugal pay of his rank; whose entire expenditure charged to the public for the whole war was less than the cost of the stationery of Congress for a single year; whom all the gold of California and Australia could not have



bribed to a mean act, — can they seriously disparage him in comparison with such a man as the hero of Blenheim, the renowned English commander, the ablest general, the most politic statesman, the most adroit negotiator of the day, — of whom it has been truly said that he never formed the plan of a campaign which he failed to execute, never besieged a city which he did not take, never fought a battle which he did not gain, and who, alas ! caused the muster-rolls of his victorious army to be fraudently made out, and pocketed the pay which he drew in the names of men who had fallen in his own sight four years before.

There is a splendid monumental pile in England, the most magnificent perhaps of her hundred palaces, founded in the time of Queen Anne at the public cost, to perpetuate the fame of Marlborough. The grand building, with its vast wings and spacious courts, covers seven acres and a half of land. It is approached on its various sides by twelve gates or bridges, some of them triumphal gates, in a circumference of thirteen miles, enclosing the noble park of twenty-seven hundred acres (Boston Common has forty-three), in which the castle stands, surrounded by the choicest beauties of forest and garden and fountain and lawn and stream. All that gold could buy, or the bounty of his own or foreign princes could bestow, or taste devise, or art execute, or ostentation could lavish, to perfect and adorn the all but regal structure, without and within, is there. Its saloons and its galleries, its library and its museum, among the most spacious in England for a private mansion, are filled with the rarities and wonders of ancient and modern art. Eloquent inscriptions from the most gifted pens of the age — the English by Lord Bolingbroke, the Latin, I

believe, by Bishop Hoadley — set forth on triumphal arches and columns the exploits of him to whom the whole edifice and the domains which surround it are one gorgeous monument. Lest human adulation should prove unequal to the task, Nature herself has been called in to record his achievements. They have been planted, rooted in the soil. Groves and coppices, curiously disposed, represent the position, the numbers, the martial array of the hostile squadrons at Blenheim. Thus, with each returning year, Spring hangs out his triumphant banners. May's *Æolian* lyre sings of his victories through her gorgeous foliage; and the shrill trump of November sounds "Malbrook" through her leafless branches.

Twice in my life I have visited the magnificent residence, — not as a guest; once when its stately porticos afforded a grateful shelter from the noonday sun, and again, after thirty years' interval, when the light of a full harvest moon slept sweetly on the bank once shaded by fair Rosamond's bower, — so says tradition, — and poured its streaming bars of silver through the branches of oaks which were growing before Columbus discovered America. But to me, at noontide or in the evening, the gorgeous pile was as dreary as death, its luxurious grounds as melancholy as a churchyard. It seemed to me, not a splendid palace, but a dismal mausoleum, in which a great and blighted name lies embalmed like some old Egyptian tyrant, black and ghastly in the asphaltic contempt of ages, serving but to rescue from an enviable oblivion the career and character of the magnificent speculator and miser and traitor to whom it is dedicated; needy in the midst of his ill-gotten millions; mean at the head of his victorious armies: despicable under the shadow of his

thick-woven laurels ; and poor and miserable and blind and naked amidst the lying shams of his tinsel greatness. The eloquent inscriptions in Latin and English as I strove to read them seemed to fade from arch and column, and three dreadful words of palimpsestic infamy came out in their stead, like those which caused the knees of the Chaldean tyrant to smite together, as he beheld them traced by no mortal fingers on the vaulted canopy which spread like a sky over his accursed revels ; and those dreadful words were, —

*Avarice, Plunder, Eternal Shame !*

There is a modest private mansion on the bank of the Potomac, the abode of George Washington and Martha his beloved, his loving, faithful wife. It boasts no spacious portal nor gorgeous colonnade, nor massy elevation, nor storied tower. The porter's lodge at Blenheim Castle, nay, the marble dog-kennels, were not built for the entire cost of Mount Vernon. No arch nor column, in courtly English or courtlier Latin, sets forth the deeds and the worth of the Father of his Country ; he needs them not ; the unwritten benedictions of millions cover all the walls. No gilded dome swells from the lowly roof to catch the morning or evening beam ; but the love and gratitude of united America settle upon it in one eternal sunshine. From beneath that humble roof went forth the intrepid and unselfish warrior, — the magistrate who knew no glory but his country's good ; to that he returned happiest when his work was done. There he lived in noble simplicity ; there he died in glory and peace. While it stands the latest generations of the grateful children of America will make their pilgrimage to it as to a shrine ; and when it shall fall, if

fall it must, the memory and the name of Washington shall shed an eternal glory on the spot.

Yes, my friends, it is the pure morality of Washington's character in which its peculiar excellence resides; and it is this which establishes its intimate relations with general humanity. On this basis he ceases to be the hero of America, and becomes the hero of mankind. I have seen it lately maintained by a respectable foreign writer, that he could not have led the mighty host which Napoleon marched into Russia in 1812; not so much one army as thirteen armies, each led by its veteran chief, some of them by tributary kings, and all conducted to their destination across continental Europe without confusion and without mutual interference, by the master mind, the greatest military array the world has ever seen. That Washington, who never proved unequal to any task, however novel or arduous, *could* not have led that gigantic army into Russia I am slow to believe. I see not why he who did great things with small means is to be supposed to be incompetent to do great things with large means. That he *would* not, if it depended on him, have plunged France and Europe into that dreadful war, I readily grant. But allowing what cannot be shown, that he was not as a strategist equal to the task in question, I do not know that his military reputation is more impeached by this gratuitous assumption, that he could not have got that mighty host into Russia, than Napoleon's by the historical fact that he could not and did not get it out of Russia.

At any rate, whatever idle comparisons between Napoleon and Washington, unfavorable to the military genius of the latter, may be instituted, Washing-



ton himself, modest as he was, deriving conscious strength from the pure patriotism which formed the great motive of his conduct, did not fear to place himself in a position which he must have thought would, in all human probability, bring him into collision with the youthful conqueror of Italy, fresh from the triumphs of his first, and, all things considered, his most brilliant campaigns. The United States, I need not remind you, were on the verge of a war with France in 1798. The command of the armies of the Union was pressed by President Adams on Washington, and he consented to take command in the event of an invasion. In a very remarkable letter written in July, 1798, he mentions the practice "adopted by the French (with whom we are now to contend), and with great and astonishing success, to appoint generals of juvenile years to command their armies."<sup>1</sup> He had every reason at that time to suppose, and no doubt did suppose, that in the event of a French invasion, the armies of France would have been commanded by the youngest and most successful of those youthful generals.

A recent judicious French writer (M. Edouard Laboulaye), though greatly admiring the character of Washington, denies him the brilliant military genius of Julius Cæsar. For my own part, considering the disparity of the means at their command respectively and of their scale of operations, I believe that after times will, on the score of military capacity, assign as high a place to the patriot chieftain who founded the Republic of America, as to the ambitious usurper who overturned the liberties of Rome. Washington would not most certainly have carried an unprovoked and

<sup>1</sup> *Washington's Works*, vol. xi. p. 249.

desolating war into the provinces of Gallia, chopping off the right hands of whole populations guilty of no crime but that of defending their homes; he would not have thrown his legions into Britain as Cæsar did, though the barbarous natives had never heard of his name. Though, to meet the invaders of his country, he could push his way across the broad Delaware, through drifting masses of ice in a December night, he could not, I grant, in defiance of the laws of his country, have spurred his horse across the "little Rubicon" beneath the mild skies of an Ausonian winter.<sup>1</sup> It was not talent which he wanted for brilliant military achievement; he wanted a willingness to shed the blood of fellow-men for selfish ends; he wanted unchastened ambition; he wanted an ear deaf as the adder's to the cry of suffering humanity; he wanted a remorseless thirst for false glory; he wanted an iron heart.

But it is time, my friends, to draw these contemplations to a close. When the decease of this illustrious and beloved commander-in-chief, in 1799, was officially announced to the army of the United States by General Hamilton, who of all his honored and trusted associates stood highest, I think, in his affections and confidence, it was truly said by him in his general orders, that "the voice of praise would in vain endeavor to exalt a name unrivalled in the lists of true glory." It is for us, citizens of the country which he lived but to serve, children of parents who saw him face to face, enjoying ourselves the inestimable blessings which he did so much to secure and perpetuate, to reflect lustre upon his memory in the only way in which it is possible for us to do so, by showing

<sup>1</sup> Ut ventum est parvi Rubicantis ad undam. — Lucan, i. 185.

that his example and his counsels, instead of losing their influence by the lapse of years, are possessed of an ever-during vitality. Born into the family of nations in these latter days, inheriting from ancient times and from foreign countries the bright and instructive example of all their honored sons, it has been the privilege of America, in the first generation of her national existence, to give back to the world many names whose lustre will never fade, one of which the whole family of Christendom is willing to acknowledge the preëminence ; a name of which neither Greece nor Rome, nor republican Italy, Switzerland nor Holland, nor constitutional England can boast the rival. "A character of virtues so happily tempered by one another" (I use the words of Charles James Fox), "and so wholly unalloyed with any vices as that of Washington, is hardly to be found on the pages of history."

# HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.

---

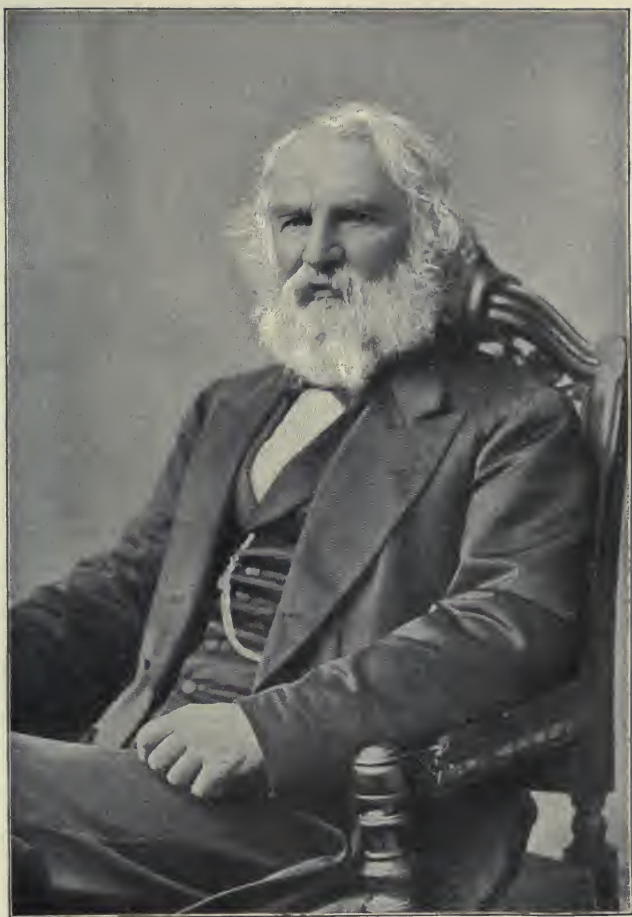
## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW was born in Portland, Maine, February 27, 1807. He was a classmate of Hawthorne at Bowdoin College, graduating there in the class of 1825. He began the study of law in the office of his father, Hon. Stephen Longfellow; but receiving shortly the appointment of professor of modern languages at Bowdoin, he devoted himself after that to literature, and to teaching in connection with literature. Before beginning his work at Bowdoin he increased his qualifications by travel and study in Europe, where he stayed three years. Upon his return he gave his lectures on modern languages and literature at the college, and wrote occasionally for the *North American Review* and other periodicals. The first volume which he published was an *Essay on the Moral and Devotional Poetry of Spain*, accompanied by translations from Spanish verse. This was issued in 1833, but has not been kept in print as a separate work. It appears as a chapter in *Outre-Mer*, a reflection of his European life and travel, the first of his prose writings. In 1835 he was invited to succeed Mr. George Ticknor as professor of modern languages and literature at Harvard College, and again went to Europe for preparatory study, giving especial attention to Switzerland and the Scandinavian countries. He held his professorship until 1854, but continued to live in Cambridge until his death, March 24, 1882, occupying a house known from a former occupant as the Craigie house, and



also as Washington's headquarters, that general having so used it while organizing the army that held Boston in siege at the beginning of the Revolution. Everett, Sparks, and Worcester, the lexicographer, at one time or another lived in this house, and here Longfellow wrote most of his works.

In 1839 appeared *Hyperion, a Romance*, which, with more narrative form than *Outre-Mer*, like that gave the results of a poet's entrance into the riches of the Old World life. In the same year was published *Voices of the Night*, a little volume containing chiefly poems and translations which had been printed separately in periodicals. *The Psalm of Life*, perhaps the best known of Longfellow's short poems, was in this volume, and here too were *The Beleaguered City* and *Footsteps of Angels*. *Ballads and other Poems* and *Poems on Slavery* appeared in 1842; *The Spanish Student*, a play in three acts, in 1843; *The Belfry of Bruges and other Poems* in 1846; *Evangeline* in 1847; *Kavanagh, a Tale*, in prose, in 1849. Besides the various volumes comprising short poems, the list of Mr. Longfellow's works includes *The Golden Legend*, *The Song of Hiawatha*, *The Courtship of Miles Standish*, *Tales of a Wayside Inn*, *The New England Tragedies*, and a translation of Dante's *Divina Commedia*. Mr. Longfellow's literary life began in his college days, and he wrote poems almost to the day of his death. A classification of his poems and longer works would be an interesting task, and would help to disclose the wide range of his sympathy and taste; a collection of the metres which he has used would show the versatility of his art, and similar studies would lead one to discover the many countries and ages to which he went for subjects. It would not be difficult to gather from the volume of Longfellow's poems hints of personal experience, that biography of the heart which is of more worth to us than any record, however full, of external change and adventure. Such hints may be found, for example, in the early lines, *To the River Charles*, which may be compared with



Idner, W. Longfellow



his recent *Three Friends of Mine*, iv., v. ; in *A Gleam of Sunshine*, *To a Child*, *The Day is Done*, *The Fire of Driftwood*, *Resignation*, *The Open Window*, *The Ladder of St. Augustine*, *My Lost Youth*, *The Children's Hour*, *Weariness*, and other poems ; not that we are to take all sentiments and statements made in the first person as the poet's, for often the form of the poem is so far dramatic that the poet is assuming a character not necessarily his own, but the recurrence of certain strains, joined with personal allusions, helps one to penetrate the slight veil with which the poet, here as elsewhere, half conceals and half reveals himself. The friendly associations of the poet may also be discovered in several poems directly addressed to persons or distinctively alluding to them, and the reader will find it pleasant to construct the companionship of the poet out of such poems as *The Herons of Elmwood*, *To William E. Channing*, *The Fiftieth Birthday of Agassiz*, *To Charles Sumner*, the *Prelude to Tales of a Wayside Inn*, *Hawthorne*, and other poems. An interesting study of Mr. Longfellow's writings will be found in a paper by W. D. Howells, in the *North American Review*, vol. civ.



## EVANGELINE: A TALE OF ACADIE.

### HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION.

[THE country now known as Nova Scotia, and called formerly Acadie by the French, was in the hands of the French and English by turns until the year 1713, when, by the Peace of Utrecht, it was ceded by France to Great Britain, and has ever since remained in the possession of the English. But in 1713 the inhabitants of the peninsula were mostly French farmers and fishermen, living about Minas Basin and on Annapolis River, and the English government exercised only a nominal control over them. It was not till 1749 that the English themselves began to make settlements in the country, and that year they laid the foundations of the town of Halifax. A jealousy soon sprang up between the English and French settlers, which was deepened by the great conflict which was impending between the two mother countries; for the treaty of peace at Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748, which confirmed the English title to Nova Scotia, was scarcely more than a truce between the two powers which had been struggling for ascendancy during the beginning of the century. The French engaged in a long controversy with the English respecting the boundaries of Acadie, which had been defined by the treaties in somewhat general terms, and intrigues were carried on with the Indians, who were generally in sympathy with the French, for the annoyance of the English settlers. The Acadians were allied to the French by blood and by religion, but they claimed to have the rights of neutrals, and that these rights had been

granted to them by previous English officers of the crown. The one point of special dispute was the oath of allegiance demanded of the Acadians by the English. This they refused to take, except in a form modified to excuse them from bearing arms against the French. The demand was repeatedly made, and evaded with constant ingenuity and persistency. Most of the Acadians were probably simple-minded and peaceful people, who desired only to live undisturbed upon their farms; but there were some restless spirits, especially among the young men, who compromised the reputation of the community, and all were very much under the influence of their priests, some of whom made no secret of their bitter hostility to the English, and of their determination to use every means to be rid of them.

As the English interests grew and the critical relations between the two countries approached open warfare, the question of how to deal with the Acadian problem became the commanding one of the colony. There were some who coveted the rich farms of the Acadians; there were some who were inspired by religious hatred; but the prevailing spirit was one of fear for themselves from the near presence of a community which, calling itself neutral, might at any time offer a convenient ground for hostile attack. Yet to require these people to withdraw to Canada or Louisburg would be to strengthen the hands of the French, and make these neutrals determined enemies. The colony finally resolved, without consulting the home government, to remove the Acadians to other parts of North America, distributing them through the colonies in such a way as to preclude any concert amongst the scattered families by which they should return to Acadia. To do this required quick and secret preparations. There were at the service of the English governor a number of New England troops, brought thither for the capture of the forts lying in the debatable land about the head of the Bay of Fundy. These were under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel John Winslow, of Massachu-

setts, a great-grandson of Governor Edward Winslow, of Plymouth, and to this gentleman and Captain Alexander Murray was intrusted the task of removal. They were instructed to use stratagem, if possible, to bring together the various families, but to prevent any from escaping to the woods. On the 2d of September, 1755, Winslow issued a written order, addressed to the inhabitants of Grand-Pré, Minas, River Canard, etc., "as well ancient as young men and lads," — a proclamation summoning all the males to attend him in the church at Grand-Pré on the 5th instant, to hear a communication which the governor had sent. As there had been negotiations respecting the oath of allegiance, and much discussion as to the withdrawal of the Acadians from the country, though none as to their removal and dispersal, it was understood that this was an important meeting, and upon the day named four hundred and eighteen men and boys assembled in the church. Winslow, attended by his officers and men, caused a guard to be placed round the church, and then announced to the people his majesty's decision that they were to be removed with their families out of the country. The church became at once a guard-house, and all the prisoners were under strict surveillance. At the same time similar plans had been carried out at Piquid under Captain Murray, and less successfully at Chignecto. Meanwhile there were whispers of a rising among the prisoners, and although the transports which had been ordered from Boston had not yet arrived, it was determined to make use of the vessels which had conveyed the troops, and remove the men to these for safer keeping. This was done on the 10th of September, and the men remained on the vessels in the harbor until the arrival of the transports, when these were made use of, and about three thousand souls sent out of the country to North Carolina, Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, New York, Connecticut, and Massachusetts. In the haste and confusion of sending them off, — a haste which was increased by the anxiety of the offi-

cers to be rid of the distasteful business, and a confusion which was greater from the difference of tongues, — many families were separated, and some at least never came together again.

The story of *Evangeline* is the story of such a separation. The removal of the Acadians was a blot upon the government of Nova Scotia and upon that of Great Britain, which never disowned the deed, although it was probably done without direct permission or command from England. It proved to be unnecessary, but it must also be remembered that to many men at that time the English power seemed trembling before France, and that the colony at Halifax regarded the act as one of self-preservation.

The authorities for an historical inquiry into this subject are best seen in a volume published by the government of Nova Scotia at Halifax in 1869, entitled *Selections from the Public Documents of the Province of Nova Scotia*, edited by Thomas B. Akins, D. C. L., Commissioner of Public Records; and in a manuscript journal kept by Colonel Winslow, now in the cabinet of the Massachusetts Historical Society in Boston. At the State House in Boston are two volumes of records, entitled *French Neutrals*, which contain voluminous papers relating to the treatment of the Acadians who were sent to Massachusetts. Probably the work used by the poet in writing *Evangeline* was *An Historical and Statistical Account of Nova Scotia*, by Thomas C. Haliburton, who is best known as the author of *The Clock-Maker, or The Sayings and Doings of Samuel Slick of Slickville*, a book which, written apparently to prick the Nova Scotians into more enterprise, was for a long while the chief representative of Yankee smartness. Judge Haliburton's history was published in 1829. A later history, which takes advantage more freely of historical documents, is *A History of Nova Scotia, or Acadie*, by Beamish Murdock, Esq., Q. C., Halifax, 1866. Still more recent is a smaller, well-written work, entitled *The History of Acadia from its*



*First Discovery to its Surrender to England by the Treaty of Paris*, by James Hannay, St. John, N. B., 1879. W. J. Anderson published a paper in the *Transactions* of the Literary and Historical Society of Quebec, New Series, part 7, 1870, entitled *Evangeline and the Archives of Nova Scotia*, in which he examines the poem by the light of the volume of *Nova Scotia Archives*, edited by T. B. Akins. The sketches of travellers in Nova Scotia, as *Acadia, or a Month among the Blue Noses*, by F. S. Cozzens, and *Baddeck*, by C. D. Warner, give the present appearance of the country and inhabitants.

The measure of *Evangeline* is what is commonly known as English dactylic hexameter. The hexameter is the measure used by Homer in the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, and by Virgil in the *Æneid*, but the difference between the English language and the Latin or Greek is so great, especially when we consider that in English poetry every word must be accented according to its customary pronunciation, while in scanning Greek and Latin verse accent follows the quantity of the vowels, that in applying this term of hexameter to *Evangeline* it must not be supposed by the reader that he is getting the effect of Greek hexameters. It is the Greek hexameter translated into English use, and some have maintained that the verse of the *Iliad* is better represented in the English by the trochaic measure of fifteen syllables, of which an excellent illustration is in Tennyson's *Locksley Hall*; others have compared the Greek hexameter to the ballad metre of fourteen syllables, used notably by Chapman in his translation of Homer's *Iliad*. The measure adopted by Mr. Longfellow has never become very popular in English poetry, but has repeatedly been attempted by other poets. The reader will find the subject of hexameters discussed by Matthew Arnold in his lectures *On Translating Homer*; by James Spedding in *English Hexameters*, in his recent volume, *Reviews and Discussions, Literary, Political and Historical, not relating to*

*Bacon* ; and by John Stuart Blackie in *Remarks on English Hexameters*, contained in his volume *Horæ Hellenicæ*.

The measure lends itself easily to the lingering melancholy which marks the greater part of the poem, and the poet's fine sense of harmony between subject and form is rarely better shown than in this poem. The fall of the verse at the end of the line and the sharp recovery at the beginning of the next will be snares to the reader, who must beware of a jerking style of delivery. The voice naturally seeks a rest in the middle of the line, and this rest, or cæsural pause, should be carefully regarded ; a little practice will enable one to acquire that habit of reading the hexameter, which we may liken, roughly, to the climbing of a hill, resting a moment on the summit, and then descending the other side. The charm in reading *Evangeline* aloud, after a clear understanding of the sense, which is the essential in all good reading, is found in this gentle labor of the former half of the line, and gentle acceleration of the latter half.]

---

THIS is the forest primeval. The murmuring pines  
and the hemlocks,  
Bearded with moss, and in garments green, indistinct  
in the twilight,  
Stand like Druids of eld, with voices sad and prophetic,

1. A primeval forest is, strictly speaking, one which has never been disturbed by the axe.

3. *Druids* were priests of the Celtic inhabitants of ancient Gaul and Britain. The name was probably of Celtic origin, but its form may have been determined by the Greek word *drūs*, an oak, since their places of worship were consecrated groves of oak. Perhaps the choice of the image was governed by the analogy of a religion and tribe that were to disappear before a stronger power.

Stand like harpers hoar, with beards that rest on their  
bosoms.

Loud from its rocky caverns, the deep-voiced neigh-  
boring ocean 5

Speaks, and in accents disconsolate answers the wail  
of the forest.

This is the forest primeval; but where are the  
hearts that beneath it

Leaped like the roe, when he hears in the woodland  
the voice of the huntsman?

Where is the thatch-roofed village, the home of Aca-  
dian farmers, —

Men whose lives glided on like rivers that water the  
woodlands, 10

Darkened by shadows of earth, but reflecting an image  
of heaven?

Waste are those pleasant farms, and the farmers for-  
ever departed!

Scattered like dust and leaves, when the mighty blasts  
of October

Seize them, and whirl them aloft, and sprinkle them  
far o'er the ocean.

Naught but tradition remains of the beautiful village  
of Grand-Pré. 15

Ye who believe in affection that hopes, and endures,  
and is patient,

4. A poetical description of an ancient harper will be found  
in the *Introduction* to the *Lay of the Last Minstrel*, by Sir Walter  
Scott.

8. Observe how the tragedy of the story is anticipated by this  
picture of the startled roe.

Ye who believe in the beauty and strength of woman's  
 devotion,  
 List to the mournful tradition still sung by the pines  
 of the forest ;  
 List to a Tale of Love in Acadie, home of the happy.

## PART THE FIRST.

## I.

IN the Acadian land, on the shores of the Basin of  
 Minas, 20  
 Distant, secluded, still, the little village of Grand-Pré  
 Lay in the fruitful valley. Vast meadows stretched  
 to the eastward,  
 Giving the village its name, and pasture to flocks  
 without number.  
 Dikes, that the hands of the farmers had raised with  
 labor incessant,

19. In the earliest records *Acadie* is called *Cadie* ; it afterwards was called *Arcadia*, *Accadia*, or *L'Acadie*. The name is probably a French adaptation of a word common among the Miemac Indians living there, signifying place or region, and used as an affix to other words as indicating the place where various things, as cranberries, eels, seals, were found in abundance. The French turned this Indian term into *Cadie* or *Acadie* ; the English into *Quoddy*, in which form it remains when applied to the Quoddy Indians, to Quoddy Head, the last point of the United States next to Acadia, and in the compound *Passamaquoddy*, or *Pollock-Ground*.

21. Compare, for effect, the first line of Goldsmith's *The Traveller*. Grand-Pré will be found on the map as part of the township of Horton.

24. The people of Acadia are mainly the descendants of the colonists who were brought out to La Have and Port Royal by Isaac de Razilly and Charnisay between the years 1633 and 1638.



Shut out the turbulent tides ; but at stated seasons the  
flood-gates 27

Opened and welcomed the sea to wander at will o'er  
the meadows.

West and south there were fields of flax, and orchards  
and cornfields

Spreading afar and unfenced o'er the plain ; and away  
to the northward

Blomidon rose, and the forests old, and aloft on the  
mountains

Sea-fogs pitched their tents, and mists from the mighty  
Atlantic 30

Looked on the happy valley, but ne'er from their sta-  
tion descended.

There, in the midst of its farms, reposed the Acadian  
village.

Strongly built were the houses, with frames of oak and  
of hemlock,

Such as the peasants of Normandy built in the reign  
of the Henries.

These colonists came from Rochelle, Saintonge, and Poitou, so that they were drawn from a very limited area on the west coast of France, covered by the modern departments of Vendée and Charente Inférieure. This circumstance had some influence on their mode of settling the lands of Acadia, for they came from a country of marshes, where the sea was kept out by artificial dikes, and they found in Acadia similar marshes, which they dealt with in the same way that they had been accustomed to practise in France. Hannay's *History of Acadia*, pp. 282, 283. An excellent account of dikes and the flooding of lowlands, as practised in Holland, may be found in *A Farmer's Vacation*, by George E. Waring, Jr.

29. *Blomidon* is a mountainous headland of red sandstone, surmounted by a perpendicular wall of basaltic trap, the whole about four hundred feet in height, at the entrance of the Basin of Minas.

Thatched were the roofs, with dormer-windows ; and  
    gables projecting 35  
Over the basement below protected and shaded the  
    doorway.  
There in the tranquil evenings of summer, when  
    brightly the sunset  
Lighted the village street, and gilded the vanes on the  
    chimneys,  
Matrons and maidens sat in snow-white caps and in  
    kirtles  
Scarlet and blue and green, with distaffs spinning the  
    golden 40  
Flax for the gossiping looms, whose noisy shuttles  
    within doors  
Mingled their sound with the whir of the wheels and  
    the songs of the maidens.  
Solemnly down the street came the parish priest, and  
    the children  
Paused in their play to kiss the hand he extended to  
    bless them.  
Reverend walked he among them ; and up rose ma-  
    trons and maidens, 45  
Hailing his slow approach with words of affectionate  
    welcome.  
Then came the laborers home from the field, and se-  
    renely the sun sank

36. The characteristics of a Normandy village may be further learned by reference to a pleasant little sketch-book, published a few years since, called *Normandy Picturesque*, by Henry Blackburn, and to *Through Normandy*, by Katharine S. Macquoid.

39. The term *kirtle* was sometimes applied to the jacket only, sometimes to the train or upper petticoat attached to it. A full kirtle was always both ; a half kirtle was a term applied to either. A man's jacket was sometimes called a kirtle ; here the reference is apparently to the full kirtle worn by women.

Down to his rest, and twilight prevailed. Anon from  
 the belfry  
 Softly the Angelus sounded, and over the roofs of the  
 village  
 Columns of pale blue smoke, like clouds of incense  
 ascending, 50  
 Rose from a hundred hearths, the homes of peace and  
 contentment.  
 Thus dwelt together in love these simple Acadian  
 farmers, —  
 Dwelt in the love of God and of man. Alike were  
 they free from  
 Fear, that reigns with the tyrant, and envy, the vice  
 of republics.  
 Neither locks had they to their doors, nor bars to their  
 windows ; 55  
 But their dwellings were open as day and the hearts  
 of the owners ;  
 There the richest was poor, and the poorest lived in  
 abundance.

Somewhat apart from the village, and nearer the  
 Basin of Minas,  
 Benedict Bellefontaine, the wealthiest farmer of  
 Grand-Pré,  
 Dwelt on his goodly acres ; and with him, directing  
 his household, 60  
 Gentle Evangeline lived, his child, and the pride of  
 the village.

49. *Angelus Domini* is the full name given to the bell which, at  
 morning, noon, and night, called the people to prayer, in com-  
 memoration of the visit of the angel of the Lord to the Virgin  
 Mary. It was introduced into France in its modern form in the  
 sixteenth century.

Stalworth and stately in form was the man of seventy  
winters ;

Hearty and hale was he, an oak that is covered with  
snow-flakes ;

White as the snow were his locks, and his cheeks as  
brown as the oak-leaves.

Fair was she to behold, that maiden of seventeen sum-  
mers ;

65

Black were her eyes as the berry that grows on the  
thorn by the wayside,

Black, yet how softly they gleamed beneath the brown  
shade of her tresses !

Sweet was her breath as the breath of kine that feed  
in the meadows.

When in the 'harvest heat she bore to the reapers at  
noontide

Flagons of home-brewed ale, ah ! fair in sooth was the  
maiden.

70

Fairer was she when, on Sunday morn, while the bell  
from its turret

Sprinkled with holy sounds the air, as the priest with  
his hyssop

Sprinkles the congregation, and scatters blessings upon  
them,

Down the long street she passed, with her chaplet of  
beads and her missal,

Wearing her Norman cap and her kirtle of blue, and  
the ear-rings

75

Brought in the olden time from France, and since, as  
an heirloom,

Handed down from mother to child, through long gen-  
erations.

But a celestial brightness — a more ethereal beauty —  
Shone on her face and encircled her form, when, after  
confession,



Homeward serenely she walked with God's benediction upon her. 86

When she had passed, it seemed like the ceasing of exquisite music.

Firmly buildéd with rafters of oak, the house of the farmer  
 Stood on the side of a hill commanding the sea; and  
 a shady

Sycamore grew by the door, with a woodbine wreathing around it.

Rudely carved was the porch, with seats beneath; and  
 a footpath 85

Led through an orchard wide, and disappeared in the meadow.

Under the sycamore-tree were hives overhung by a penthouse,

Such as the traveller sees in regions remote by the roadside,

Built o'er a box for the poor, or the blessed image of Mary.

Farther down, on the slope of the hill, was the well  
 with its moss-grown 90

Bucket, fastened with iron, and near it a trough for the horses.

Shielding the house from storms, on the north, were the barns and the farm-yard;

There stood the broad-wheeled wains and the antique ploughs and the harrows;

There were the folds for the sheep; and there, in his feathered seraglio,

93. The accent is on the first syllable of *antique*, where it remains in the form *antic*, which once had the same general meaning.

Strutted the lordly turkey, and crowed the cock, with  
the selfsame 99

Voice that in ages of old had startled the penitent  
Peter.

Bursting with hay were the barns, themselves a vil-  
lage. In each one

Far o'er the gable projected a roof of thatch ; and a  
staircase,

Under the sheltering eaves, led up to the odorous corn-  
loft.

There too the dove-cot stood, with its meek and inno-  
cent inmates 100

Murmuring ever of love ; while above in the variant  
breezes

Numberless noisy weathercocks rattled and sang of  
mutation.

Thus, at peace with God and the world, the farmer  
of Grand-Pré

Lived on his sunny farm, and Evangeline governed  
his household.

Many a youth, as he knelt in the church and opened  
his missal, 105

Fixed his eyes upon her as the saint of his deepest  
devotion ;

99. *Odorous.* The accent here, as well as in line 403, is upon the first syllable, where it is commonly placed ; but Milton, who of all poets had the most refined ear, writes

“ So from the root  
Springs lighter the green stalk, from thence the leaves  
More airy, last the bright consummate flower  
Spirits odorous breathes.”

*Par. Lost*, Book V., lines 479-482.

But he also uses the more familiar accent in other passages, as, “ An amber scent of odorous perfume,” in *Samson Agonistes*, line 720.

Happy was he who might touch her hand or the hem  
of her garment !

Many a suitor came to her door, by the darkness be-  
friended,

And, as he knocked and waited to hear the sound of  
her footsteps,

Knew not which beat the louder, his heart or the  
knocker of iron ; 110

Or, at the joyous feast of the Patron Saint of the vil-  
lage,

Bolder grew, and pressed her hand in the dance as he  
whispered

Hurried words of love, that seemed a part of the  
music.

But among all who came young Gabriel only was  
welcome ;

Gabriel Lajeunesse, the son of Basil the black-  
smith, 115

Who was a mighty man in the village, and honored  
of all men ;

For since the birth of time, throughout all ages and  
nations,

Has the craft of the smith been held in repute by the  
people.

Basil was Benedict's friend. Their children from  
earliest childhood

Grew up together as brother and sister ; and Father  
Felician, 120

Priest and pedagogue both in the village, had taught  
them their letters

Out of the selfsame book, with the hymns of the  
church and the plain-song.

122. The *plain-song* is a monotonic recitative of the collects.

But when the hymn was sung, and the daily lesson  
completed,  
Swiftly they hurried away to the forge of Basil the  
blacksmith.  
There at the door they stood, with wondering eyes to  
behold him 125  
Take in his leathern lap the hoof of the horse as a  
plaything,  
Nailing the shoe in its place ; while near him the tire  
of the cart-wheel  
Lay like a fiery snake, coiled round in a circle of  
cinders.  
Oft on autumnal eves, when without in the gathering  
darkness  
Bursting with light seemed the smithy, through every  
cranny and crevice, 130  
Warm by the forge within they watched the laboring  
bellows,  
And as its panting ceased, and the sparks expired in  
the ashes,  
Merrily laughed, and said they were nuns going into  
the chapel.  
Oft on sledges in winter, as swift as the swoop of the  
eagle,  
Down the hillside bounding, they glided away o'er the  
meadow. 135  
Oft in the barns they climbed to the populous nests  
on the rafters,  
Seeking with eager eyes that wondrous stone, which  
the swallow  
Brings from the shore of the sea to restore the sight  
of its fledglings ;

133. The French have another saying similar to this, that they  
were guests going into the wedding.



Lucky was he who found that stone in the nest of the swallow !

Thus passed a few swift years, and they no longer  
were children. 146

He was a valiant youth, and his face, like the face of  
the morning,

Gladdened the earth with its light, and ripened  
thought into action.

She was a woman now, with the heart and hopes of a  
woman.

“Sunshine of Saint Eulalie” was she called ; for that  
was the sunshine

Which, as the farmers believed, would load their  
orchards with apples ; 145

She too would bring to her husband’s house delight  
and abundance,

Filling it full of love and the ruddy faces of children.

## II.

Now had the season returned, when the nights grow  
colder and longer,

And the retreating sun the sign of the Scorpion en-  
ters.

139. In Pluquet’s *Contes Populaires* we are told that if one of a swallow’s young is blind the mother bird seeks on the shore of the ocean a little stone, with which she restores its sight ; and he adds, “He who is fortunate enough to find that stone in a swallow’s nest holds a wonderful remedy.” Pluquet’s book treats of Norman superstitions and popular traits.

144. Pluquet also gives this proverbial saying :—

“Si le soleil rit le jour Sainte-Eulalie,  
Il y aura pommes et cidre à folie.”

(If the sun smiles on Saint Eulalie’s day, there will be plenty  
of apples, and cider enough.)

Saint Eulalie’s day is the 12th of February.

Birds of passage sailed through the leaden air, from  
the ice-bound, 159

Desolate northern bays to the shores of tropical is-  
lands.

Harvests were gathered in ; and wild with the winds  
of September

Wrestled the trees of the forest, as Jacob of old with  
the angel.

All the signs foretold a winter long and inclement.

Bees, with prophetic instinct of want, had hoarded  
their honey 155

Till the hives overflowed ; and the Indian hunters as-  
serted

Cold would the winter be, for thick was the fur of the  
foxes.

Such was the advent of autumn. Then followed that  
beautiful season,

Called by the pious Acadian peasants the Summer of  
All-Saints !

Filled was the air with a dreamy and magical light ;  
and the landscape 160

Lay as if new-created in all the freshness of child-  
hood.

Peace seemed to reign upon earth, and the restless  
heart of the ocean

Was for a moment consoled. All sounds were in  
harmony blended.

Voices of children at play, the crowing of cocks in the  
farm-yards,

159. The Summer of All-Saints is our Indian Summer, All-Saints Day being November 1st. The French also give this season the name of Saint Martin's Summer, Saint Martin's Day being November 11th.

Whir of wings in the drowsy air, and the cooing of  
     pigeons, 165  
 All were subdued and low as the murmurs of love,  
     and the great sun  
 Looked with the eye of love through the golden va-  
     pors around him ;  
 While arrayed in its robes of russet and scarlet and  
     yellow,  
 Bright with the sheen of the dew, each glittering tree  
     of the forest  
 Flashed like the plane-tree the Persian adorned with  
     mantles and jewels. 176

Now recommenced the reign of rest and affection  
     and stillness.  
 Day with its burden and heat had departed, and twi-  
     light descending  
 Brought back the evening star to the sky, and the  
     herds to the homestead.  
 Pawing the ground they came, and resting their necks  
     on each other,  
 And with their nostrils distended inhaling the fresh-  
     ness of evening. 175  
 Foremost, bearing the bell, Evangeline's beautiful  
     heifer,  
 Proud of her snow-white hide, and the ribbon that  
     waved from her collar,  
 Quietly paced and slow, as if conscious of human  
     affection.

170. Herodotus, in his account of Xerxes' expedition against Greece, tells of a beautiful plane-tree which Xerxes found, and was so enamored with that he dressed it as one might a woman, and placed it under the care of a guardsman (vii. 31). Another writer, Ælian, improving on this, says he adorned it with a necklace and bracelets.

Then came the shepherd back with his bleating flocks  
from the seaside,  
Where was their favorite pasture. Behind them fol-  
lowed the watch-dog, 180  
Patient, full of importance, and grand in the pride of  
his instinct,  
Walking from side to side with a lordly air, and  
superbly  
Waving his bushy tail, and urging forward the strag-  
glers ;  
Regent of flocks was he when the shepherd slept ;  
their protector,  
When from the forest at night, through the starry  
silence, the wolves howled. 185  
Late, with the rising moon, returned the wains from  
the marshes,  
Laden with briny hay, that filled the air with its odor.  
Cheerily neighed the steeds, with dew on their manes  
and their fetlocks,  
While aloft on their shoulders the wooden and pon-  
derous saddles,  
Painted with brilliant dyes, and adorned with tassels  
of crimson, 190  
Nodded in bright array, like hollyhocks heavy with  
blossoms.  
Patiently stood the cows meanwhile, and yielded their  
udders  
Unto the milkmaid's hand ; whilst loud and in regular  
cadence

193. There is a charming milkmaid's song in Tennyson's drama of *Queen Mary*, Act III., Scene 5, where the streaming of the milk into the sounding pails is caught in the tinkling *k's* of such lines as

"And you came and kissed me, milking the cow."



Into the sounding pails the foaming streamlets descended.

Lowing of cattle and peals of laughter were heard in  
the farm-yard, 195

Echoed back by the barns. Anon they sank into  
stillness ;

Heavily closed, with a jarring sound, the valves of the  
barn-doors,

Rattled the wooden bars, and all for a season was silent.

In-doors, warm by the wide-mouthed fireplace, idly  
the farmer

Sat in his elbow-chair, and watched how the flames  
and the smoke-wreaths 200

Struggled together like foes in a burning city. Behind him,

Nodding and mocking along the wall with gestures  
fantastic,

Darted his own huge shadow, and vanished away into  
darkness.

Faces, clumsily carved in oak, on the back of his arm-  
chair

Laughed in the flickering light, and the pewter plates  
on the dresser 205

Caught and reflected the flame, as shields of armies  
the sunshine.

Fragments of song the old man sang, and carols of  
Christmas,

Such as at home, in the olden time, his fathers before  
him

Sang in their Norman orchards and bright Burgundian  
vineyards.

Close at her father's side was the gentle Evangeline  
seated, 210

Spinning flax for the loom that stood in the corner  
behind her.  
Silent awhile were its treadles, at rest was its diligent  
shuttle,  
While the monotonous drone of the wheel, like the  
drone of a bagpipe,  
Followed the old man's song, and united the fragments  
together.  
As in a church, when the chant of the choir at inter-  
vals ceases, 215  
Footfalls are heard in the aisles, or words of the priest  
at the altar,  
So, in each pause of the song, with measured motion  
the clock clicked.

Thus as they sat, there were footsteps heard, and,  
suddenly lifted,  
Sounded the wooden latch, and the door swung back  
on its hinges.  
Benedict knew by the hob-nailed shoes it was Basil  
the blacksmith, 220  
And by her beating heart Evangeline knew who was  
with him.  
"Welcome!" the farmer exclaimed, as their footsteps  
paused on the threshold,  
"Welcome, Basil, my friend! Come, take thy place  
on the settle  
Close by the chimney-side, which is always empty  
without thee;  
Take from the shelf overhead thy pipe and the box of  
tobacco; 225  
Never so much thyself art thou as when, through the  
curling  
Smoke of the pipe or the forge, thy friendly and jovial  
face gleams

Round and red as the harvest moon through the mist  
of the marshes."

Then, with a smile of content, thus answered Basil the  
blacksmith,

Taking with easy air the accustomed seat by the fire-  
side: — 230

"Benedict Bellefontaine, thou hast ever thy jest and  
thy ballad!

Ever in cheerfullest mood art thou, when others are  
filled with

Gloomy forebodings of ill, and see only ruin before  
them.

Happy art thou, as if every day thou hadst picked up  
a horseshoe."

Pausing a moment, to take the pipe that Evangeline  
brought him, 235

And with a coal from the embers had lighted, he  
slowly continued: —

"Four days now are passed since the English ships  
at their anchors

Ride in the Gaspereau's mouth, with their cannon  
pointed against us.

What their design may be is unknown; but all are  
commanded

On the morrow to meet in the church, where his  
Majesty's mandate 240

Will be proclaimed as law in the land. Alas! in the  
mean time

Many surmises of evil alarm the hearts of the peo-  
ple."

Then made answer the farmer: — "Perhaps some  
friendlier purpose

239. The text of Colonel Winslow's proclamation will be found  
in *Haliburton*, i. 175.

Brings these ships to our shores. Perhaps the harvests in England

By untimely rains or untimelier heat have been blighted, 245

And from our bursting barns they would feed their cattle and children."

"Not so thinketh the folk in the village," said warmly the blacksmith,

Shaking his head as in doubt; then, heaving a sigh, he continued: —

"Louisburg is not forgotten, nor Beau Séjour, nor Port Royal.

Many already have fled to the forest, and lurk on its outskirts, 250

Waiting with anxious hearts the dubious fate of to-morrow.

Arms have been taken from us, and warlike weapons of all kinds;

Nothing is left but the blacksmith's sledge and the scythe of the mower."

Then with a pleasant smile made answer the jovial farmer: —

249. Louisburg, on Cape Breton, was built by the French as a military and naval station early in the eighteenth century, but was taken by an expedition from Massachusetts under General Pepperell in 1745. It was restored by England to France in the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, and recaptured by the English in 1757. Beau Séjour was a French fort upon the neck of land connecting Acadia with the mainland which had just been captured by Winslow's forces. Port Royal, afterwards called Annapolis Royal, at the outlet of Annapolis River into the Bay of Fundy, had been disputed ground, being occupied alternately by French and English, but in 1710 was attacked by an expedition from New England, and after that held by the English government and made a fortified place.



"Safer are we unarmed, in the midst of our flocks  
and our cornfields, 255

Safer within these peaceful dikes besieged by the ocean,  
Than our fathers in forts, besieged by the enemy's  
cannon.

Fear no evil, my friend, and to-night may no shadow  
of sorrow

Fall on this house and hearth; for this is the night  
of the contract.

Built are the house and the barn. The merry lads of  
the village 260

Strongly have built them and well; and, breaking the  
glebe round about them,

Filled the barn with hay, and the house with food for  
a twelvemonth.

René Leblanc will be here anon, with his papers and  
inkhorn.

Shall we not then be glad, and rejoice in the joy of  
our children?"

As apart by the window she stood, with her hand in  
her lover's, 265

Blushing Evangeline heard the words that her father  
had spoken,

And, as they died on his lips, the worthy notary en-  
tered.

### III.

Bent like a laboring oar, that toils in the surf of  
the ocean,

267. A *notary* is an officer authorized to attest contracts or writings of any kind. His authority varies in different countries; in France he is the necessary maker of all contracts where the subject-matter exceeds 150 francs, and his instruments, which are preserved and registered by himself, are the originals, the parties preserving only copies.

Bent, but not broken, by age was the form of the notary public ;  
Shocks of yellow hair, like the silken floss of the maize, hung 270  
Over his shoulders ; his forehead was high ; and  
glasses with horn bows  
Sat astride on his nose, with a look of wisdom supernal.  
Father of twenty children was he, and more than a hundred  
Children's children rode on his knee, and heard his great watch tick.  
Four long years in the times of the war had he languished a captive, 275  
Suffering much in an old French fort as the friend of the English.  
Now, though warier grown, without all guile or suspicion,  
Ripe in wisdom was he, but patient, and simple, and childlike.  
He was beloved by all, and most of all by the children ;  
For he told them tales of the Loup-garou in the forest, 280

275. King George's War, which broke out in 1744 in Cape Breton, in an attack by the French upon an English garrison, and closed with the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748 ; or, the reference may possibly be to Queen Anne's war, 1702-1713, when the French aided the Indians in their warfare with the colonists.

280. The *Loup-garou*, or were-wolf, is, according to an old superstition especially prevalent in France, a man with power to turn himself into a wolf, which he does that he may devour children. In later times the superstition passed into the more innocent one of men having a power to charm wolves

And of the goblin that came in the night to water the  
     horses,  
 And of the white Létiche, the ghost of a child who  
     unchristened  
 Died, and was doomed to haunt unseen the chambers  
     of children ;  
 And how on Christmas eve the oxen talked in the  
     stable,  
 And how the fever was cured by a spider shut up in  
     a nutshell, 285  
 And of the marvellous powers of four-leaved clover  
     and horseshoes,  
 With whatsoever else was writ in the lore of the village.  
 Then up rose from his seat by the fireside Basil the  
     blacksmith,  
 Knocked from his pipe the ashes, and slowly extend-  
     ing his right hand,  
 "Father Leblanc," he exclaimed, "thou hast heard  
     the talk in the village, 290  
 And, perchance, canst tell us some news of these ships  
     and their errand."  
 Then with modest demeanor made answer the notary  
     public, —  
 "Gossip enough have I heard, in sooth, yet am never  
     the wiser ;

282. Pluquet relates this superstition, and conjectures that the white, fleet ermine gave rise to it.

284. A belief still lingers among the peasantry of England, as well as on the Continent, that at midnight, on Christmas eve, the cattle in the stalls fall down on their knees in adoration of the infant Saviour, as the old legend says was done in the stable at Bethlehem.

285. In like manner a popular superstition prevailed in England that ague could be cured by sealing a spider in a goose-quill and hanging it about the neck.

And what their errand may be I know no better than  
others.

Yet am I not of those who imagine some evil inten-  
tion

295

Brings them here, for we are at peace ; and why then  
molest us ? ”

“ God’s name ! ” shouted the hasty and somewhat iras-  
cible blacksmith ;

“ Must we in all things look for the how, and the why,  
and the wherefore ?

Daily injustice is done, and might is the right of the  
strongest ! ”

But, without heeding his warmth, continued the notary  
public, —

300

“ Man is unjust, but God is just ; and finally justice  
Triumphs ; and well I remember a story, that often  
consoled me,

When as a captive I lay in the old French fort at  
Port Royal.”

This was the old man’s favorite tale, and he loved to  
repeat it

When his neighbors complained that any injustice was  
done them.

305

“ Once in an ancient city, whose name I no longer re-  
member,

Raised aloft on a column, a brazen statue of Justice  
Stood in the public square, upholding the scales in its  
left hand,

And in its right a sword, as an emblem that justice  
presided

Over the laws of the land, and the hearts and homes  
of the people.

310

302. This is an old Florentine story ; in an altered form it is  
the theme of Rossini’s opera of *La Gazza Ladra*.



Even the birds had built their nests in the scales of  
the balance,

Having no fear of the sword that flashed in the sun-  
shine above them.

But in the course of time the laws of the land were  
corrupted ;

Might took the place of right, and the weak were  
oppressed, and the mighty

Ruled with an iron rod. Then it chanced in a noble-  
man's palace 315

That a necklace of pearls was lost, and ere long a sus-  
picion

Fell on an orphan girl who lived as maid in the house-  
hold.

She, after form of trial condemned to die on the scaf-  
fold,

Patiently met her doom at the foot of the statue of  
Justice.

As to her Father in heaven her innocent spirit as-  
cended, 320

Lo ! o'er the city a tempest rose ; and the bolts of the  
thunder

Smote the statue of bronze, and hurled in wrath from  
its left hand

Down on the pavement below the clattering scales of  
the balance,

And in the hollow thereof was found the nest of a  
magpie,

Into whose clay-built walls the necklace of pearls was  
inwoven." 325

Silenced, but not convinced, when the story was ended,  
the blacksmith

Stood like a man who fain would speak, but findeth  
no language ;

All his thoughts were congealed into lines on his face,  
as the vapors  
Freeze in fantastic shapes on the window-panes in the  
winter.

Then Evangeline lighted the brazen lamp on the  
table, 330  
Filled, till it overflowed, the pewter tankard with  
home-brewed  
Nut-brown ale, that was famed for its strength in the  
village of Grand-Pré;  
While from his pocket the notary drew his papers and  
inkhorn,  
Wrote with a steady hand the date and the age of the  
parties,  
Naming the dower of the bride in flocks of sheep and  
in cattle. 335  
Orderly all things proceeded, and duly and well were  
completed,  
And the great seal of the law was set like a sun on  
the margin.  
Then from his leathern pouch the farmer threw on the  
table  
Three times the old man's fee in solid pieces of sil-  
ver;  
And the notary rising, and blessing the bride and  
bridegroom, 340  
Lifted aloft the tankard of ale and drank to their  
welfare.  
Wiping the foam from his lip, he solemnly bowed and  
departed,  
While in silence the others sat and mused by the fire-  
side,

Till Evangeline brought the draught-board out of its  
corner.

Soon was the game begun. In friendly contention  
the old men 345

Laughed at each lucky hit, or unsuccessful manœuvre,  
Laughed when a man was crowned, or a breach was  
made in the king-row.

Meanwhile apart, in the twilight gloom of a window's  
embrasure,

Sat the lovers and whispered together, beholding the  
moon rise

Over the pallid sea and the silvery mist of the mead-  
ows. 350

Silently one by one, in the infinite meadows of heaven,  
Blossomed the lovely stars, the forget-me-nots of the  
angels.

Thus was the evening passed. Anon the bell from  
the belfry

Rang out the hour of nine, the village curfew, and  
straightway

Rose the guests and departed ; and silence reigned in  
the household. 355

344. The word *draughts* is derived from the circumstance of drawing the men from one square to another.

354. *Curfew* is a corruption of *couvre-feu*, or cover fire. In the Middle Ages, when police patrol at night was almost unknown, it was attempted to lessen the chances of crime by making it an offence against the laws to be found in the streets in the night, and the curfew bell was tolled, at various hours, according to the custom of the place, from seven to nine o'clock in the evening. It warned honest people to lock their doors, cover their fires, and go to bed. The custom still lingers in many places, even in America, of ringing a bell at nine o'clock in the evening.

Many a farewell word and sweet good-night on the  
door-step

Lingered long in Evangeline's heart, and filled it with  
gladness.

Carefully then were covered the embers that glowed  
on the hearth-stone,

And on the oaken stairs resounded the tread of the  
farmer.

Soon with a soundless step the foot of Evangeline fol-  
lowed. 360

Up the staircase moved a luminous space in the dark-  
ness,

Lighted less by the lamp than the shining face of the  
maiden.

Silent she passed through the hall, and entered the  
door of her chamber.

Simple that chamber was, with its curtains of white,  
and its clothes-press

Ample and high, on whose spacious shelves were care-  
fully folded 365

Linen and woollen stuffs, by the hand of Evangeline  
woven.

This was the precious dower she would bring to her  
husband in marriage,

Better than flocks and herds, being proofs of her skill  
as a housewife.

Soon she extinguished her lamp, for the mellow and  
radiant moonlight

Streamed through the windows, and lighted the room,  
till the heart of the maiden 370

Swelled and obeyed its power, like the tremulous tides  
of the ocean.

Ah! she was fair, exceeding fair to behold, as she  
stood with



Naked snow-white feet on the gleaming floor of her  
chamber !

Little she dreamed that below, among the trees of the  
orchard,

Waited her lover and watched for the gleam of her  
lamp and her shadow. 375

Yet were her thoughts of him, and at times a feeling  
of sadness

Passed o'er her soul, as the sailing shade of clouds in  
the moonlight

Flitted across the floor and darkened the room for a  
moment.

And, as she gazed from the window, she saw serenely  
the moon pass

Forth from the folds of a cloud, and one star follow  
her footsteps, 380

As out of Abraham's tent young Ishmael wandered  
with Hagar.

#### IV.

Pleasantly rose next morn the sun on the village  
of Grand-Pré.

Pleasantly gleamed in the soft, sweet air the Basin of  
Minas,

Where the ships, with their wavering shadows, were  
riding at anchor.

Life had long been astir in the village, and clamorous  
labor 385

Knocked with its hundred hands at the golden gates  
of the morning.

Now from the country around, from the farms and  
neighboring hamlets,

Came in their holiday dresses the blithe Acadian  
peasants.

Many a glad good-morrow and jocund laugh from the  
young folk

Made the bright air brighter, as up from the numer-  
ous meadows, 390

Where no path could be seen but the track of wheels  
in the greensward,

Group after group appeared, and joined, or passed on  
the highway.

Long ere noon, in the village all sounds of labor were  
silenced.

Thronged were the streets with people; and noisy  
groups at the house-doors

Sat in the cheerful sun, and rejoiced and gossiped to-  
gether. 395

Every house was an inn, where all were welcomed and  
feasted ;

For with this simple people, who lived like brothers  
together,

All things were held in common, and what one had  
was another's.

Yet under Benedict's roof hospitality seemed more  
abundant :

396. "Real misery was wholly unknown, and benevolence anticipated the demands of poverty. Every misfortune was relieved as it were before it could be felt, without ostentation on the one hand, and without meanness on the other. It was, in short, a society of brethren, every individual of which was equally ready to give and to receive what he thought the common right of mankind." — From the Abbé Raynal's account of the Acadians. The Abbé Guillaume Thomas Francis Raynal was a French writer (1711–1796), who published *A Philosophical History of the Settlements and Trade of the Europeans in the East and West Indies*, in which he included also some account of Canada and Nova Scotia. His picture of life among the Acadians, somewhat highly colored, is the source from which after writers have drawn their knowledge of Acadian manners.

For Evangeline stood among the guests of her  
 father ; 404  
 Bright was her face with smiles, and words of wel-  
 come and gladness  
 Fell from her beautiful lips, and blessed the cup as  
 she gave it.

Under the open sky, in the odorous air of the  
 orchard,  
 Stript of its golden fruit, was spread the feast of be-  
 trothal.  
 There in the shade of the porch were the priest and  
 the notary seated ; 405  
 There good Benedict sat, and sturdy Basil the black-  
 smith.  
 Not far withdrawn from these, by the cider-press and  
 the beehives,  
 Michael the fiddler was placed, with the gayest of  
 hearts and of waistcoats.  
 Shadow and light from the leaves alternately played  
 on his snow-white  
 Hair, as it waved in the wind ; and the jolly face of  
 the fiddler 410  
 Glowed like a living coal when the ashes are blown  
 from the embers.  
 Gayly the old man sang to the vibrant sound of his  
 fiddle,  
*Tous les Bourgeois de Chartres, and Le Carillon de*  
*Dunkerque,*

---

413. *Tous les Bourgeois de Chartres* was a song written by  
 Ducauroi, *maître de chapelle* of Henri IV., the words of which  
 are : —

Vous connaissez Cybèle,  
 Qui sut fixer le Temps ;  
 On la disait fort belle,  
 Même dans ses vieux ans.

And anon with his wooden shoes beat time to the  
music.

Merrily, merrily whirled the wheels of the dizzying  
dances 415

Under the orchard-trees and down the path to the  
meadows;

Old folk and young together, and children mingled  
among them.

Fairest of all the maids was Evangeline, Benedict's  
daughter!

Noblest of all the youths was Gabriel, son of the  
blacksmith!

So passed the morning away. And lo! with a sum-  
mons sonorous 420

Sounded the bell from its tower, and over the mead-  
ows a drum beat.

Thronged ere long was the church with men. With-  
out, in the churchyard,

## CHORUS.

Cette divinité, quoique déjà grand' mere  
Avait les yeux doux, le teint frais,  
Avait même certains attraits  
Fermes comme la Terre.

*Le Carillon de Dunkerque* was a popular song to a tune played  
on the Dunkirk chimes. The words are :—

Imprudent, téméraire  
A l'instant, je l'espère  
Dans mon juste courroux,  
Tu vas tomber sous mes coups!  
— Je brave ta menace.  
— Etre moi ! quelle audace !  
Avance donc, poltron !  
Tu trembles ? non, non, non.  
— J'étouffe de colère !  
— Je ris de ta colère.

The music to which the old man sang these songs will be found  
in *La Clé du Caveau*, by Pierre Capelle, Nos. 564 and 739.  
Paris : A. Cotellet.



Waited the women. They stood by the graves, and  
hung on the headstones

Garlands of autumn-leaves and evergreens fresh from  
the forest.

Then came the guard from the ships, and marching  
proudly among them 425

Entered the sacred portal. With loud and dissonant  
clangor

Echoed the sound of their brazen drums from ceiling  
and casement, —

Echoed a moment only, and slowly the ponderous portal

Closed, and in silence the crowd awaited the will of  
the soldiers.

Then uprose their commander, and spake from the  
steps of the altar, 430

Holding aloft in his hands, with its seals, the royal  
commission.

“You are convened this day,” he said, “by his Majesty’s orders.

Clement and kind has he been; but how you have  
answered his kindness

Let your own hearts reply! To my natural make and  
my temper

Painful the task is I do, which to you I know must  
be grievous. 435

Yet must I bow and obey, and deliver the will of our  
monarch:

Namely, that all your lands, and dwellings, and cattle  
of all kinds

Forfeited be to the crown; and that you yourselves  
from this province

432. Colonel Winslow has preserved in his *Diary* the speech which he delivered to the assembled Acadians, and it is copied by Haliburton in his *History of Nova Scotia*, i. 166, 167.

Be transported to other lands. God grant you may  
dwell there

Ever as faithful subjects, a happy and peaceable people ! 440

Prisoners now I declare you, for such is his Majesty's  
pleasure ! "

As, when the air is serene in the sultry solstice of  
summer,

Suddenly gathers a storm, and the deadly sling of the  
hailstones

Beats down the farmer's corn in the field, and shatters  
his windows,

Hiding the sun, and strewing the ground with thatch  
from the house-roofs, 445

Bellowing fly the herds, and seek to break their en-  
closures ;

So on the hearts of the people descended the words of  
the speaker.

Silent a moment they stood in speechless wonder, and  
then rose

Louder and ever louder a wail of sorrow and anger,  
And, by one impulse moved, they madly rushed to the  
door-way. 450

Vain was the hope of escape ; and cries and fierce  
imprecations

Rang through the house of prayer ; and high o'er the  
heads of the others

Rose, with his arms uplifted, the figure of Basil the  
blacksmith,

As, on a stormy sea, a spar is tossed by the billows.  
Flushed was his face and distorted with passion ; and  
wildly he shouted, — 455

"Down with the tyrants of England ! we never have  
sworn them allegiance !

Death to these foreign soldiers, who seize on our  
homes and our harvests ! ”

More he fain would have said, but the merciless hand  
of a soldier

Smote him upon the mouth, and dragged him down to  
the pavement.

In the midst of the strife and tumult of angry con-  
tention, 460

Lo ! the door of the chancel opened, and Father Feli-  
cian

Entered, with serious mien, and ascended the steps of  
the altar.

Raising his reverend hand, with a gesture he awed  
into silence

All that clamorous throng ; and thus he spake to his  
people ;

Deep were his tones and solemn ; in accents measured  
and mournful 465

Spake he, as, after the tocsin's alarum, distinctly the  
clock strikes.

“ What is this that ye do, my children ? what madness  
has seized you ?

Forty years of my life have I labored among you, and  
taught you,

Not in word alone, but in deed, to love one another !

Is this the fruit of my toils, of my vigils and prayers  
and privations ? 470

Have you so soon forgotten all lessons of love and  
forgiveness ?

This is the house of the Prince of Peace, and would  
you profane it

Thus with violent deeds and hearts overflowing with  
hatred ?

Lo! where the crucified Christ from His cross is gaz-  
ing upon you!

See! in those sorrowful eyes what meekness and holy  
compassion! 475

Hark! how those lips still repeat the prayer, 'O  
Father, forgive them!'

Let us repeat that prayer in the hour when the wicked  
assail us,

Let us repeat it now, and say, 'O Father, forgive  
them!'"

Few were his words of rebuke, but deep in the hearts  
of his people

Sank they, and sobs of contrition succeeded the pas-  
sionate outbreak, 480

While they repeated his prayer, and said, "O Father,  
forgive them!"

Then came the evening service. The tapers gleamed  
from the altar;

Fervent and deep was the voice of the priest, and the  
people responded,

Not with their lips alone, but their hearts; and the  
Ave Maria

Sang they, and fell on their knees, and their souls,  
with devotion translated, 485

Rose on the ardor of prayer, like Elijah ascending to  
heaven.

Meanwhile had spread in the village the tidings of  
ill, and on all sides

Wandered, wailing, from house to house the women  
and children.

Long at her father's door Evangeline stood, with her  
right hand



Shielding her eyes from the level rays of the sun,  
     that, descending, 498  
 Lighted the village street with mysterious splendor,  
     and roofed each  
 Peasant's cottage with golden thatch, and emblazoned  
     its windows.  
 Long within had been spread the snow-white cloth on  
     the table;  
 There stood the wheaten loaf, and the honey fragrant  
     with wild flowers;  
 There stood the tankard of ale, and the cheese fresh  
     brought from the dairy; 499  
 And at the head of the board the great arm-chair of  
     the farmer.  
 Thus did Evangeline wait at her father's door, as the  
     sunset  
 Threw the long shadows of trees o'er the broad am-  
     brosial meadows.  
 Ah! on her spirit within a deeper shadow had fallen,  
 And from the fields of her soul a fragrance celestial  
     ascended, — 500  
 Charity, meekness, love, and hope, and forgiveness,  
     and patience!  
 Then, all forgetful of self, she wandered into the vil-  
     lage,  
 Cheering with looks and words the mournful hearts of  
     the women,  
 As o'er the darkening fields with lingering steps they  
     departed,  
 Urged by their household cares, and the weary feet of  
     their children. 505

492. To emblazon is literally to adorn anything with ensigns armorial. It was often the custom to work these ensigns into the design of painted windows.

Down sank the great red sun, and in golden, glimmer-  
ing vapors  
Veiled the light of his face, like the Prophet descend-  
ing from Sinai.  
Sweetly over the village the bell of the Angelus  
sounded.

Meanwhile, amid the gloom, by the church Evange-  
line lingered.  
All was silent within; and in vain at the door and the  
windows 510  
Stood she, and listened and looked, until, overcome by  
emotion,  
“Gabriel!” cried she aloud with tremulous voice;  
but no answer  
Came from the graves of the dead, nor the gloomier  
grave of the living.  
Slowly at length she returned to the tenantless house  
of her father.  
Smouldered the fire on the hearth, on the board was  
the supper untasted. 515  
Empty and drear was each room, and haunted with  
phantoms of terror.  
Sadly echoed her step on the stair and the floor of her  
chamber.  
In the dead of the night she heard the disconsolate  
rain fall  
Loud on the withered leaves of the sycamore-tree by  
the window.  
Keenly the lightning flashed; and the voice of the  
echoing thunder 520  
Told her that God was in heaven, and governed the  
world He created!

Then she remembered the tale she had heard of the  
 justice of Heaven ;  
 Soothed was her troubled soul, and she peacefully  
 slumbered till morning.

## v.

Four times the sun had risen and set ; and now on  
 the fifth day  
 Cheerily called the cock to the sleeping maids of the  
 farm-house. 525  
 Soon o'er the yellow fields, in silent and mournful pro-  
 cession,  
 Came from the neighboring hamlets and farms the  
 Acadian women,  
 Driving in ponderous wains their household goods to  
 the sea-shore,  
 Pausing and looking back to gaze once more on their  
 dwellings,  
 Ere they were shut from sight by the winding road and  
 the woodland. 530  
 Close at their sides their children ran, and urged on  
 the oxen,  
 While in their little hands they clasped some frag-  
 ments of playthings.

Thus to the Gaspereau's mouth they hurried ; and  
 there on the sea-beach  
 Piled in confusion lay the household goods of the  
 peasants.  
 All day long between the shore and the ships did the  
 boats ply ; 535  
 All day long the wains came laboring down from the  
 village.  
 Late in the afternoon, when the sun was near to his  
 setting,

Echoed far o'er the fields came the roll of drums from  
the churchyard.

Thither the women and children thronged. On a sudden  
the church-doors

Opened, and forth came the guard, and marching in  
gloomy procession 540

Followed the long-imprisoned, but patient, Acadian  
farmers.

Even as pilgrims, who journey afar from their homes  
and their country,

Sing as they go, and in singing forget they are weary  
and wayworn,

So with songs on their lips the Acadian peasants descended

Down from the church to the shore, amid their wives  
and their daughters. 545

Foremost the young men came; and, raising together  
their voices,

Sang with tremulous lips a chant of the Catholic  
Missions: —

“Sacred heart of the Saviour! O inexhaustible fountain!

Fill our hearts this day with strength and submission  
and patience!”

Then the old men, as they marched, and the women  
that stood by the wayside 550

Joined in the sacred psalm, and the birds in the sunshine  
above them

Mingled their notes therewith, like voices of spirits  
departed.

Half-way down to the shore Evangeline waited in  
silence,

Not overcome with grief, but strong in the hour of  
affliction, —



Calmly and sadly she waited, until the procession ap-  
 proached her, 559

And she beheld the face of Gabriel pale with emotion.  
 Tears then filled her eyes, and, eagerly running to  
 meet him,

Clasped she his hands, and laid her head on his  
 shoulder, and whispered, —

“Gabriel! be of good cheer! for if we love one  
 another

Nothing, in truth, can harm us, whatever mischances  
 may happen!” 560

Smiling she spake these words; then suddenly paused,  
 for her father

Saw she, slowly advancing. Alas! how changed was  
 his aspect!

Gone was the glow from his cheek, and the fire from  
 his eye, and his footstep

Heavier seemed with the weight of the heavy heart  
 in his bosom.

But with a smile and a sigh, she clasped his neck and  
 embraced him, 563

Speaking words of endearment where words of com-  
 fort availed not.

Thus to the Gaspereau's mouth moved on that mourn-  
 ful procession.

There disorder prevailed, and the tumult and stir of  
 embarking.

Busily plied the freighted boats; and in the confusion  
 Wives were torn from their husbands, and mothers,  
 too late, saw their children 570

Left on the land, extending their arms, with wildest  
 entreaties.

So unto separate ships were Basil and Gabriel carried,

While in despair on the shore Evangeline stood with  
her father.

Half the task was not done when the sun went down,  
and the twilight

Deepened and darkened around; and in haste the  
refluent ocean 575

Fled away from the shore, and left the line of the  
sand-beach

Covered with waifs of the tide, with kelp and the slip-  
pery sea-weed.

Farther back in the midst of the household goods and  
the wagons,

Like to a gypsy camp, or a leaguer after a battle,  
All escape cut off by the sea, and the sentinels near  
them, 580

Lay encamped for the night the houseless Acadian  
farmers.

Back to its nethermost caves retreated the bellowing  
ocean,

Dragging adown the beach the rattling pebbles, and  
leaving

Inland and far up the shore the stranded boats of the  
sailors.

Then, as the night descended, the herds returned from  
their pastures; 585

Sweet was the moist still air with the odor of milk  
from their udders;

Lowing they waited, and long, at the well-known bars  
of the farm-yard, —

Waited and looked in vain for the voice and the hand  
of the milkmaid.

Silence reigned in the streets; from the church no  
Angelus sounded,

Rose no smoke from the roofs, and gleamed no lights  
from the windows. 590

But on the shores meanwhile the evening fires had  
 been kindled,  
 Built of the drift-wood thrown on the sands from  
 wrecks in the tempest.  
 Round them shapes of gloom and sorrowful faces were  
 gathered,  
 Voices of women were heard, and of men, and the  
 crying of children.  
 Onward from fire to fire, as from hearth to hearth in  
 his parish, 593  
 Wandered the faithful priest, consoling and blessing  
 and cheering,  
 Like unto shipwrecked Paul on Melita's desolate sea-  
 shore.  
 Thus he approached the place where Evangeline sat  
 with her father,  
 And in the flickering light beheld the face of the old  
 man,  
 Haggard and hollow and wan, and without either  
 thought or emotion, 604  
 E'en as the face of a clock from which the hands have  
 been taken.  
 Vainly Evangeline strove with words and caresses to  
 cheer him,  
 Vainly offered him food ; yet he moved not, he looked  
 not, he spake not,  
 But, with a vacant stare, ever gazed at the flickering  
 fire-light.  
 "*Benedicite !*" murmured the priest, in tones of com-  
 passion. 605  
 More he fain would have said, but his heart was full,  
 and his accents  
 Faltered and paused on his lips, as the feet of a child  
 on a threshold,

Hushed by the scene he beholds, and the awful presence of sorrow.

Silently, therefore, he laid his hand on the head of the maiden,

Raising his tearful eyes to the silent stars that above them 616

Moved on their way, unperturbed by the wrongs and sorrows of mortals.

Then sat he down at her side, and they wept together in silence.

Suddenly rose from the south a light, as in autumn the blood-red

Moon climbs the crystal walls of heaven, and o'er the horizon

Titan-like stretches its hundred hands upon mountain and meadow, 615

Seizing the rocks and the rivers, and piling huge shadows together.

Broader and ever broader it gleamed on the roofs of the village,

Gleamed on the sky and the sea, and the ships that lay in the roadstead.

Columns of shining smoke uprose, and flashes of flame were

Thrust through their folds and withdrawn, like the quivering hands of a martyr. 621

615. The Titans were giant deities in Greek mythology who attempted to deprive Saturn of the sovereignty of heaven, and were driven down into Tartarus by Jupiter, the son of Saturn, who hurled thunderbolts at them. Briareus, the hundred-handed giant, was in mythology of the same parentage as the Titans, but was not classed with them.



Then as the wind seized the gleeds and the burning  
 thatch, and, uplifting,  
 Whirled them aloft through the air, at once from a  
 hundred house-tops  
 Started the sheeted smoke with flashes of flame inter-  
 mingled.

These things beheld in dismay the crowd on the  
 shore and on shipboard.  
 Speechless at first they stood, then cried aloud in their  
 anguish, 625  
 "We shall behold no more our homes in the village of  
 Grand-Pré!"  
 Loud on a sudden the cocks began to crow in the farm-  
 yards,  
 Thinking the day had dawned; and anon the lowing  
 of cattle  
 Came on the evening breeze, by the barking of dogs  
 interrupted.  
 Then rose a sound of dread, such as startles the sleep-  
 ing encampments 630  
 Far in the western prairies of forests that skirt the  
 Nebraska,  
 When the wild horses affrighted sweep by with the  
 speed of the whirlwind,

621. *Gleeds.* Hot, burning coals; a Chaucerian word:—

"And wafres piping hoot out of the gleede."

*Canterbury Tales*, l. 3379.

The burning of the houses was in accordance with the instructions of the Governor to Colonel Winslow, in case he should fail in collecting all the inhabitants: "You must proceed by the most vigorous measures possible, not only in compelling them to embark, but in depriving those who shall escape of all means of shelter or support, by burning their houses and by destroying everything that may afford them the means of subsistence in the country."

Or the loud bellowing herds of buffaloes rush to the  
river.

Such was the sound that arose on the night, as the  
herds and the horses

Broke through their folds and fences, and madly  
rushed o'er the meadows. 635

Overwhelmed with the sight, yet speechless, the  
priest and the maiden

Gazed on the scene of terror that reddened and  
widened before them ;

And as they turned at length to speak to their silent  
companion,

Lo ! from his seat he had fallen, and stretched abroad  
on the seashore

Motionless lay his form, from which the soul had de-  
parted. 640

Slowly the priest uplifted the lifeless head, and the  
maiden

Knelt at her father's side, and wailed aloud in her  
terror.

Then in a swoon she sank, and lay with her head on  
his bosom.

Through the long night she lay in deep, oblivious  
slumber ;

And when she woke from the trance, she beheld a  
multitude near her. 645

Faces of friends she beheld, that were mournfully gaz-  
ing upon her,

Pallid, with tearful eyes, and looks of saddest com-  
passion.

Still the blaze of the burning village illumined the  
landscape,

Reddened the sky overhead, and gleamed on the faces  
around her,

And like the day of doom it seemed to her wavering  
senses. 655

Then a familiar voice she heard, as it said to the people, —

“Let us bury him here by the sea. When a happier  
season

Brings us again to our homes from the unknown land  
of our exile,

Then shall his sacred dust be piously laid in the  
churchyard.”

Such were the words of the priest. And there in  
haste by the sea-side, 655

Having the glare of the burning village for funeral  
torches,

But without bell or book, they buried the farmer of  
Grand-Pré.

And as the voice of the priest repeated the service of  
sorrow,

Lo! with a mournful sound like the voice of a vast  
congregation,

Solemnly answered the sea, and mingled its roar with  
the dirges. 660

’T was the returning tide, that afar from the waste of  
the ocean,

With the first dawn of the day, came heaving and hur-  
rying landward.

Then recommenced once more the stir and noise of  
embarking;

657. The bell was tolled to mark the passage of the soul into the other world; the book was the service book. The phrase “bell, book, or candle” was used in referring to excommunication.

And with the ebb of the tide the ships sailed out of  
the harbor,  
Leaving behind them the dead on the shore, and the  
village in ruins. 665

## PART THE SECOND.

## I.

MANY a weary year had passed since the burning of  
Grand-Pré,  
When on the falling tide the freighted vessels de-  
parted,  
Bearing a nation, with all its household gods, into  
exile,  
Exile without an end, and without an example in  
story.  
Far asunder, on separate coasts, the Acadians  
landed; 670  
Scattered were they, like flakes of snow, when the  
wind from the northeast  
Strikes aslant through the fogs that darken the Banks  
of Newfoundland.  
Friendless, homeless, hopeless, they wandered from  
city to city,  
From the cold lakes of the North to sultry Southern  
savannas, —  
From the bleak shores of the sea to the lands where  
the Father of Waters 675  
Seizes the hills in his hands, and drags them down to  
the ocean,  
Deep in their sands to bury the scattered bones of the  
mammoth.

677. Bones of the mastodon, or mammoth, have been found



Friends they sought and homes ; and many, despairing,  
heart-broken,

Asked of the earth but a grave, and no longer a friend  
nor a fireside.

Written their history stands on tablets of stone in the  
churchyards. 680

Long among them was seen a maiden who waited and  
wandered,

Lowly and meek in spirit, and patiently suffering all  
things.

Fair was she and young ; but, alas ! before her ex-  
tended,

Dreary and vast and silent, the desert of life, with its  
pathway

Marked by the graves of those who had sorrowed and  
suffered before her, 685

Passions long extinguished, and hopes long dead and  
abandoned,

As the emigrant's way o'er the Western desert is  
marked by

Camp-fires long consumed, and bones that bleach in  
the sunshine.

Something there was in her life incomplete, imperfect,  
unfinished ;

As if a morning of June, with all its music and sun-  
shine, 690

Suddenly paused in the sky, and, fading, slowly de-  
scended

Into the east again, from whence it late had arisen.

Sometimes she lingered in towns, till, urged by the  
fever within her,

scattered all over the territory of the United States and Canada,  
but the greatest number have been collected in the Salt Licks of  
Kentucky, and in the States of Ohio, Mississippi, Missouri, and  
Alabama.

Urged by a restless longing, the hunger and thirst of  
the spirit,

She would commence again her endless search and endeavor ;

695

Sometimes in churchyards strayed, and gazed on the  
crosses and tombstones,

Sat by some nameless grave, and thought that perhaps  
in its bosom

He was already at rest, and she longed to slumber beside him.

Sometimes a rumor, a hearsay, an inarticulate whisper,

Came with its airy hand to point and beckon her forward.

700

Sometimes she spake with those who had seen her beloved and known him,

But it was long ago, in some far-off place or forgotten.

“Gabriel Lajeunesse !” they said ; “Oh, yes ! we have seen him.

He was with Basil the blacksmith, and both have gone to the prairies ;

Coueurs-des-bois are they, and famous hunters and trappers.”

705

699. Observe the diminution in this line, by which one is led to the *airy hand* in the next.

705. The *coueurs-des-bois* formed a class of men, very early in Canadian history, produced by the exigencies of the fur-trade. They were French by birth, but by long affiliation with the Indians and adoption of their customs had become half-civilized vagrants, whose chief vocation was conducting the canoes of the traders along the lakes and rivers of the interior. *Bushrangers* is the English equivalent. They played an important part in the Indian wars, but were nearly as lawless as the Indians themselves. The reader will find them frequently referred to in

"Gabriel Lajeunesse!" said others; "Oh, yes! we have seen him.

He is a voyageur in the lowlands of Louisiana."

Then would they say, "Dear child! why dream and wait for him longer?

Are there not other youths as fair as Gabriel? others Who have hearts as tender and true, and spirits as loyal? 710

Here is Baptiste Leblanc, the notary's son, who has loved thee

Many a tedious year; come, give him thy hand and be happy!

Thou art too fair to be left to braid St. Catherine's tresses."

Then would Evangeline answer, serenely but sadly, "I cannot!

Whither my heart has gone, there follows my hand, and not elsewhere. 715

For when the heart goes before, like a lamp, and illumines the pathway,

Many things are made clear, that else lie hidden in darkness."

Thereupon the priest, her friend and father confessor, Said, with a smile, "O daughter! thy God thus speaketh within thee!

Talk not of wasted affection, affection never was wasted; 720

Parkman's histories, especially in *The Conspiracy of Pontiac*, *The Discovery of the Great West*, and *Frontenac and New France under Louis XIV.*

707. A *voyageur* is a river boatman, and is a term applied usually to Canadians.

713. St. Catherine of Alexandria and St. Catherine of Siena were both celebrated for their vows of virginity. Hence the saying to braid St. Catherine's tresses, of one devoted to a single life.

If it enrich not the heart of another, its waters, returning

Back to their springs, like the rain, shall fill them full  
of refreshment ;

That which the fountain sends forth returns again to  
the fountain.

Patience ; accomplish thy labor ; accomplish thy work  
of affection !

Sorrow and silence are strong, and patient endurance  
is godlike. 725

Therefore accomplish thy labor of love, till the heart  
is made godlike,

Purified, strengthened, perfected, and rendered more  
worthy of heaven ! ”

Cheered by the good man’s words, Evangeline labored  
and waited.

Still in her heart she heard the funeral dirge of the  
ocean,

But with its sound there was mingled a voice that  
whispered, “ Despair not ! ” 730

Thus did that poor soul wander in want and cheer-  
less discomfort,

Bleeding, barefooted, over the shards and thorns of  
existence.

Let me essay, O Muse ! to follow the wanderer’s foot-  
steps ; —

Not through each devious path, each changeful year  
of existence ;

But as a traveller follows a streamlet’s course through  
the valley : 735

Far from its margin at times, and seeing the gleam of  
its water

Here and there, in some open space, and at intervals  
only ;



Then drawing nearer its banks, through sylvan glooms  
 that conceal it,  
 Though he behold it not, he can hear its continuous  
 murmur ;  
 Happy, at length, if he find a spot where it reaches  
 an outlet.

740

## II.

It was the month of May. Far down the Beautiful  
 River,  
 Past the Ohio shore and past the mouth of the Wa-  
 bash,  
 Into the golden stream of the broad and swift Mis-  
 sissippi,  
 Floated a cumbrous boat, that was rowed by Acadian  
 boatmen.  
 It was a band of exiles : a raft, as it were, from the  
 shipwrecked  
 Nation, scattered along the coast, now floating to-  
 gether,  
 Bound by the bonds of a common belief and a com-  
 mon misfortune ;  
 Men and women and children, who, guided by hope  
 or by hearsay,  
 Sought for their kith and their kin among the few-  
 acred farmers  
 On the Acadian coast, and the prairies of fair Ope-  
 lousas.

745

750

741. The Iroquois gave to this river the name of Ohio, or the Beautiful River, and La Salle, who was the first European to discover it, preserved the name, so that it was transferred to maps very early.

750. Between the 1st of January and the 13th of May, 1765, about six hundred and fifty Acadians had arrived at New Or-

With them Evangeline went, and her guide, the  
Father Felician.

Onward o'er sunken sands, through a wilderness  
sombre with forests,

Day after day they glided adown the turbulent river ;  
Night after night, by their blazing fires, encamped on  
its borders.

Now through rushing chutes, among green islands,  
where plumelike

755

Cotton-trees nodded their shadowy crests, they swept  
with the current,

Then emerged into broad lagoons, where silvery sand-  
bars

Lay in the stream, and along the wimpling waves of  
their margin,

Shining with snow-white plumes, large flocks of pel-  
icans waded.

Level the landscape grew, and along the shores of the  
river,

760

Shaded by china-trees, in the midst of luxuriant gar-  
dens,

Stood the houses of planters, with negro cabins and  
dove-cots.

They were approaching the region where reigns per-  
petual summer,

leans. Louisiana had been ceded by France to Spain in 1762, but did not really pass under the control of the Spanish until 1769. The existence of a French population attracted the wandering Acadians, and they were sent by the authorities to form settlements in Attakapas and Opelousas. They afterward formed settlements on both sides of the Mississippi from the German Coast up to Baton Rouge, and even as high as Pointe Coupée. Hence the name of Acadian Coast, which a portion of the banks of the river still bears. See Gayarré's *History of Louisiana: The French Dominion*, vol. ii.

Where through the Golden Coast, and groves of  
orange and citron,

Sweeps with majestic curve the river away to the east-  
ward. 765

They, too, swerved from their course; and, entering  
the Bayou of Plaquemine,

Soon were lost in a maze of sluggish and devious  
waters,

Which, like a network of steel, extended in every  
direction.

Over their heads the towering and tenebrous boughs  
of the cypress

Met in a dusky arch, and trailing mosses in mid-  
air 770

Waved like banners that hang on the walls of ancient  
cathedrals.

Deathlike the silence seemed, and unbroken, save by  
the herons

Home to their roosts in the cedar-trees returning at  
sunset,

Or by the owl, as he greeted the moon with demoniac  
laughter.

Lovely the moonlight was as it glanced and gleamed  
on the water, 775

Gleamed on the columns of cypress and cedar sustain-  
ing the arches,

Down through whose broken vaults it fell as through  
chinks in a ruin.

Dreamlike, and indistinct, and strange were all things  
around them;

And o'er their spirits there came a feeling of wonder  
and sadness, —

Strange forebodings of ill, unseen and that cannot be  
compassed. 780

As, at the tramp of a horse's hoof on the turf of the  
prairies,  
Far in advance are closed the leaves of the shrinking  
mimosa,  
So, at the hoof-beats of fate, with sad forebodings of  
evil,  
Shrinks and closes the heart, ere the stroke of doom  
has attained it.  
But Evangeline's heart was sustained by a vision, that  
faintly 785  
Floated before her eyes, and beckoned her on through  
the moonlight.  
It was the thought of her brain that assumed the  
shape of a phantom.  
Through those shadowy aisles had Gabriel wandered  
before her,  
And every stroke of the oar now brought him nearer  
and nearer.

Then in his place, at the prow of the boat, rose one  
of the oarsmen, 790  
And, as a signal sound, if others like them peradven-  
ture  
Sailed on those gloomy and midnight streams, blew a  
blast on his bugle.  
Wild through the dark colonnades and corridors leafy  
the blast rang,  
Breaking the seal of silence and giving tongues to the  
forest.  
Soundless above them the banners of moss just stirred  
to the music. 795  
Multitudinous echoes awoke and died in the distance,  
Over the watery floor, and beneath the reverberant  
branches;



But not a voice replied ; no answer came from the  
darkness ;

And when the echoes had ceased, like a sense of pain  
was the silence.

Then Evangeline slept ; but the boatmen rowed  
through the midnight, 806

Silent at times, then singing familiar Canadian boat-  
songs,

Such as they sang of old on their own Acadian rivers,  
While through the night were heard the mysterious  
sounds of the desert,

Far off, — indistinct, — as of wave or wind in the  
forest,

Mixed with the whoop of the crane and the roar of  
the grim alligator. 805

Thus ere another noon they emerged from the  
shades ; and before them

Lay, in the golden sun, the lakes of the Atchafalaya.  
Water-lilies in myriads rocked on the slight undula-  
tions

Made by the passing oars, and, resplendent in beauty,  
the lotus

Lifted her golden crown above the heads of the boat-  
men. 810

Faint was the air with the odorous breath of magno-  
lia blossoms,

And with the heat of noon ; and numberless sylvan  
islands,

Fragrant and thickly embowered with blossoming  
hedges of roses,

Near to whose shores they glided along, invited to  
slumber.

Soon by the fairest of these their weary oars were sus-  
pended. 811

Under the boughs of Wachita willows, that grew by  
the margin,  
Safely their boat was moored ; and scattered about on  
the greensward,  
Tired with their midnight toil, the weary travellers  
slumbered.  
Over them vast and high extended the cope of a  
cedar.  
Swinging from its great arms, the trumpet-flower and  
the grapevine 820  
Hung their ladder of ropes aloft like the ladder of  
Jacob,  
On whose pendulous stairs the angels ascending, de-  
scending,  
Were the swift humming-birds, that flitted from blos-  
som to blossom.  
Such was the vision Evangeline saw as she slumbered  
beneath it.  
Filled was her heart with love, and the dawn of an  
opening heaven 825  
Lighted her soul in sleep with the glory of regions  
celestial.

Nearer, ever nearer, among the numberless islands,  
Darted a light, swift boat, that sped away o'er the  
water,  
Urged on its course by the sinewy arms of hunters  
and trappers.  
Northward its prow was turned, to the land of the  
bison and beaver. 830  
At the helm sat a youth, with countenance thoughtful  
and careworn.  
Dark and neglected locks overshadowed his brow, and  
a sadness

Somewhat beyond his years on his face was legibly  
written.

Gabriel was it, who, weary with waiting, unhappy and  
restless,

Sought in the Western wilds oblivion of self and of  
sorrow. 835

Swiftly they glided along, close under the lee of the  
island,

But by the opposite bank, and behind a screen of pal-  
mettos ;

So that they saw not the boat, where it lay concealed  
in the willows ;

All undisturbed by the dash of their oars, and unseen,  
were the sleepers ;

Angel of God was there none to awaken the slumber-  
ing maiden. 840

Swiftly they glided away, like the shade of a cloud on  
the prairie.

After the sound of their oars on the tholes had died  
in the distance,

As from a magic trance the sleepers awoke, and the  
maiden

Said with a sigh to the friendly priest, "O Father  
Felician !

Something says in my heart that near me Gabriel  
wanders. 845

Is it a foolish dream, an idle and vague superstition ?

Or has an angel passed, and revealed the truth to my  
spirit ? "

Then, with a blush, she added, "Alas for my credu-  
lous fancy !

Unto ears like thine such words as these have no  
meaning."

But made answer the reverend man, and he smiled as  
he answered, — 850

“ Daughter, thy words are not idle ; nor are they to  
me without meaning,  
Feeling is deep and still ; and the word that floats on  
the surface  
Is as the tossing buoy, that betrays where the anchor  
is hidden.  
Therefore trust to thy heart, and to what the world  
calls illusions.  
Gabriel truly is near thee ; for not far away to the  
southward, 855  
On the banks of the Têche, are the towns of St. Maur  
and St. Martin.  
There the long-wandering bride shall be given again  
to her bridegroom,  
There the long-absent pastor regain his flock and his  
sheepfold.  
Beautiful is the land, with its prairies and forests of  
fruit-trees ;  
Under the feet a garden of flowers, and the bluest of  
heavens 860  
Bending above, and resting its dome on the walls of  
the forest.  
They who dwell there have named it the Eden of  
Louisiana.”

With these words of cheer they arose and continued  
their journey.  
Softly the evening came. The sun from the western  
horizon  
Like a magician extended his golden wand o’er the  
landscape ; 865  
Twinkling vapors arose ; and sky and water and forest  
Seemed all on fire at the touch, and melted and mingled together.



Hanging between two skies, a cloud with edges of  
silver,

Floated the boat, with its dripping oars, on the motionless water.

Filled was Evangeline's heart with inexpressible sweetness. 870

Touched by the magic spell, the sacred fountains of  
feeling

Glowed with the light of love, as the skies and waters  
around her.

Then from a neighboring thicket the mocking-bird,  
wildest of singers,

Swinging aloft on a willow spray that hung o'er the  
water,

Shook from his little throat such floods of delirious  
music, 875

That the whole air and the woods and the waves  
seemed silent to listen.

Plaintive at first were the tones and sad ; then soaring  
to madness

Seemed they to follow or guide the revel of frenzied  
Bacchantes.

Single notes were then heard, in sorrowful, low lamentation ;

Till, having gathered them all, he flung them abroad  
in derision, 880

As when, after a storm, a gust of wind through the  
tree-tops

Shakes down the rattling rain in a crystal shower on  
the branches.

878. The Bacchantes were worshippers of the god Bacchus, who in Greek mythology presided over the vine and its fruits. They gave themselves up to all manner of excess, and their songs and dances were to wild, intoxicating measures.

With such a prelude as this, and hearts that throbbed  
with emotion,  
Slowly they entered the Têche, where it flows through  
the green Opelousas,  
And, through the amber air, above the crest of the  
woodland, 885  
Saw the column of smoke that arose from a neighbor-  
ing dwelling ; —  
Sounds of a horn they heard, and the distant lowing  
of cattle.

## III.

Near to the bank of the river, o'ershadowed by oaks  
from whose branches  
Garlands of Spanish moss and of mystic mistletoe  
flaunted,  
Such as the Druids cut down with golden hatchets at  
Yule-tide, 890  
Stood, secluded and still, the house of the herdsman.  
A garden  
Girded it round about with a belt of luxuriant blos-  
soms,  
Filling the air with fragrance. The house itself was  
of timbers  
Hewn from the cypress-tree, and carefully fitted to-  
gether.  
Large and low was the roof ; and on slender columns  
supported, 895  
Rose-wreathed, vine-encircled, a broad and spacious  
veranda,  
Haunt of the humming-bird and the bee, extended  
around it.  
At each end of the house, amid the flowers of the  
garden,

Stationed the dove-cots were, as love's perpetual sym-  
bol,

Scenes of endless wooing, and endless contentions of  
rivals. 904

Silence reigned o'er the place. The line of shadow  
and sunshine

Ran near the tops of the trees; but the house itself  
was in shadow,

And from its chimney-top, ascending and slowly ex-  
panding

Into the evening air, a thin blue column of smoke  
rose.

In the rear of the house, from the garden gate, ran a  
pathway 905

Through the great groves of oak to the skirts of the  
limitless prairie,

Into whose sea of flowers the sun was slowly descend-  
ing.

Full in his track of light, like ships with shadowy  
canvas

Hanging loose from their spars in a motionless calm  
in the tropics,

Stood a cluster of trees, with tangled cordage of  
grapevines. 910

Just where the woodlands met the flowery surf of  
the prairie,

Mounted upon his horse, with Spanish saddle and  
stirrups,

Sat a herdsman, arrayed in gaiters and doublet of  
deerskin.

Broad and brown was the face that from under the  
Spanish sombrero

Gazed on the peaceful scene, with the lordly look of  
its master. 915

Round about him were numberless herds of kine that  
were grazing

Quietly in the meadows, and breathing the vapory  
freshness

That uprose from the river, and spread itself over the  
landscape.

Slowly lifting the horn that hung at his side, and ex-  
panding

Fully his broad, deep chest, he blew a blast, that re-  
sounded 920

Wildly and sweet and far, through the still damp air  
of the evening.

Suddenly out of the grass the long white horns of the  
cattle

Rose like flakes of foam on the adverse currents of  
ocean.

Silent a moment they gazed, then bellowing rushed  
o'er the prairie,

And the whole mass became a cloud, a shade in the  
distance. 925

Then, as the herdsman turned to the house, through  
the gate of the garden

Saw he the forms of the priest and the maiden ad-  
vancing to meet him.

Suddenly down from his horse he sprang in amaze-  
ment, and forward

Pushed with extended arms and exclamations of won-  
der ;

When they beheld his face, they recognized Basil the  
blacksmith. 930

Hearty his welcome was, as he led his guests to the  
garden.

There in an arbor of roses with endless question and  
answer



Gave they vent to their hearts, and renewed their  
friendly embraces,

Laughing and weeping by turns, or sitting silent and  
thoughtful.

Thoughtful, for Gabriel came not; and now dark  
doubts and misgivings 935

Stole o'er the maiden's heart; and Basil, somewhat  
embarrassed,

Broke the silence and said, "If you came by the  
Atchafalaya,

How have you nowhere encountered my Gabriel's  
boat on the bayous?"

Over Evangeline's face at the words of Basil a shade  
passed.

Tears came into her eyes, and she said, with a trem-  
ulous accent, 940

"Gone? is Gabriel gone?" and, concealing her face  
on his shoulder,

All her o'erburdened heart gave way, and she wept  
and lamented.

Then the good Basil said, — and his voice grew blithe  
as he said it, —

"Be of good cheer, my child; it is only to-day he  
departed.

Foolish boy! he has left me alone with my herds and  
my horses. 945

Moody and restless grown, and tried and troubled, his  
spirit

Could no longer endure the calm of this quiet exis-  
tence.

Thinking ever of thee, uncertain and sorrowful ever,  
Ever silent, or speaking only of thee and his troubles,  
He at length had become so tedious to men and to  
maidens, 950

Tedious even to me, that at length I bethought me, and  
sent him  
Unto the town of Adayes to trade for mules with the  
Spaniards.  
Thence he will follow the Indian trails to the Ozark  
Mountains,  
Hunting for furs in the forests, on rivers trapping the  
beaver.  
Therefore be of good cheer; we will follow the fugi-  
tive lover; 955  
He is not far on his way, and the Fates and the  
streams are against him.  
Up and away to-morrow, and through the red dew of  
the morning,  
We will follow him fast, and bring him back to his  
prison."

Then glad voices were heard, and up from the  
banks of the river,  
Borne aloft on his comrades' arms, came Michael the  
fiddler. 960  
Long under Basil's roof had he lived, like a god on  
Olympus,  
Having no other care than dispensing music to mor-  
tals.  
Far renowned was he for his silver locks and his  
fiddle.  
"Long live Michael," they cried, "our brave Acadian  
minstrel!"  
As they bore him aloft in triumphal procession; and  
straightway 965  
Father Felician advanced with Evangeline, greeting  
the old man  
Kindly and oft, and recalling the past, while Basil,  
enraptured.

Hailed with hilarious joy his old companions and gos-  
sips,  
Laughing loud and long, and embracing mothers and  
daughters.

Much they marvelled to see the wealth of the ci-devant  
blacksmith, 976

All his domains and his herds, and his patriarchal  
demeanor ;

Much they marvelled to hear his tales of the soil and  
the climate,

And of the prairies, whose numberless herds were his  
who would take them ;

Each one thought in his heart, that he, too, would go  
and do likewise.

Thus they ascended the steps, and, crossing the breezy  
veranda, 975

Entered the hall of the house, where already the sup-  
per of Basil

Waited his late return ; and they rested and feasted  
together.

Over the joyous feast the sudden darkness de-  
scended.

All was silent without, and, illuming the landscape  
with silver,

Fair rose the dewy moon and the myriad stars ; but  
within doors, 980

Brighter than these, shone the faces of friends in the  
glimmering lamplight.

Then from his station aloft, at the head of the table,  
the herdsman

Poured forth his heart and his wine together in endless  
profusion.

Lighting his pipe, that was filled with sweet Natchi-  
toches tobacco,

Thus he spake to his guests, who listened, and smiled  
as they listened : — 995

“ Welcome once more, my friends, who long have been  
friendless and homeless,

Welcome once more to a home, that is better per-  
chance than the old one !

Here no hungry winter congeals our blood like the  
rivers ;

Here no stony ground provokes the wrath of the  
farmer ;

Smoothly the ploughshare runs through the soil, as a  
keel through the water. 990

All the year round the orange-groves are in blossom ;  
and grass grows

More in a single night than a whole Canadian summer.  
Here, too, numberless herds run wild and unclaimed  
in the prairies ;

Here, too, lands may be had for the asking, and  
forests of timber

With a few blows of the axe are hewn and framed  
into houses. 995

After your houses are built, and your fields are yellow  
with harvests,

No King George of England shall drive you away from  
your homesteads,

Burning your dwellings and barns, and stealing your  
farms and your cattle.”

Speaking these words, he blew a wrathful cloud from  
his nostrils,

While his huge, brown hand came thundering down  
on the table, 1000

So that the guests all started ; and Father Felician,  
astounded,

Suddenly paused, with a pinch of snuff half-way to  
his nostrils.



But the brave Basil resumed, and his words were  
milder and gayer: —

“Only beware of the fever, my friends, beware of the  
fever!

For it is not like that of our cold Acadian climate, <sup>1005</sup>  
Cured by wearing a spider hung round one’s neck in a  
nutshell!”

Then there were voices heard at the door, and foot-  
steps approaching

Sounded upon the stairs and the floor of the breezy  
veranda.

It was the neighboring Creoles and small Acadian  
planters,

Who had been summoned all to the house of Basil the  
herdsman. 1010

Merry the meeting was of ancient comrades and  
neighbors:

Friend clasped friend in his arms; and they who  
before were as strangers,

Meeting in exile, became straightway as friends to each  
other,

Drawn by the gentle bond of a common country  
together.

But in the neighboring hall a strain of music, pro-  
ceeding 1015

From the accordant strings of Michael’s melodious  
fiddle,

Broke up all further speech. Away, like children  
delighted,

All things forgotten beside, they gave themselves to  
the maddening

Whirl of the dizzy dance, as it swept and swayed to  
the music,

Dreamlike, with beaming eyes and the rush of flutter-  
ing garments. 1020

Meanwhile, apart, at the head of the hall, the priest  
and the herdsman  
Sat, conversing together of past and present and  
future ;  
While Evangeline stood like one entranced, for within  
her  
Olden memories rose, and loud in the midst of the  
music  
Heard she the sound of the sea, and an irrepres-  
sible sadness 1025  
Came o'er her heart, and unseen she stole forth into  
the garden.  
Beautiful was the night. Behind the black wall of  
the forest,  
Tipping its summit with silver, arose the moon. On  
the river  
Fell here and there through the branches a tremulous  
gleam of the moonlight,  
Like the sweet thoughts of love on a darkened and  
devious spirit. 1030  
Nearer and round about her, the manifold flowers  
of the garden  
Poured out their souls in odors, that were their prayers  
and confessions  
Unto the night, as it went its way, like a silent  
Carthusian.

1033. The Carthusians are a monastic order founded in the twelfth century, perhaps the most severe in its rules of all religious societies. Almost perpetual silence is one of the vows; the monks can talk together but once a week; the labor required of them is unremitting and the discipline exceedingly rigid. The first monastery was established at Chartreux near Grenoble in France, and the Latinized form of the name has given us the word Carthusian.

Fuller of fragrance than they, and as heavy with  
 shadows and night-dews,

Hung the heart of the maiden. The calm and the  
 magical moonlight 1035

Seemed to inundate her soul with indefinable long-  
 ings,

As, through the garden gate, and beneath the shade  
 of the oak-trees,

Passed she along the path to the edge of the measure-  
 less prairie.

Silent it lay, with a silvery haze upon it, and fire-flies  
 Gleaming and floating away in mingled and infinite  
 numbers. 1040

Over her head the stars, the thoughts of God in the  
 heavens,

Shone on the eyes of man, who had ceased to marvel  
 and worship,

Save when a blazing comet was seen on the walls of  
 that temple,

As if a hand had appeared and written upon them,  
 "Upharsin."

And the soul of the maiden, between the stars and  
 the fire-flies, 1045

Wandered alone, and she cried, "O Gabriel! O my  
 beloved!

Art thou so near unto me, and yet I cannot behold  
 thee?

Art thou so near unto me, and yet thy voice does not  
 reach me?

Ah! how often thy feet have trod this path to the  
 prairie!

Ah! how often thine eyes have looked on the wood-  
 lands around me! 1054

Ah! how often beneath this oak, returning from labor,

Thou hast lain down to rest, and to dream of me in  
thy slumbers!

When shall these eyes behold, these arms be folded  
about thee?"

Loud and sudden and near the note of a whippoor-  
will sounded

Like a flute in the woods; and anon, through the  
neighboring thickets, 1055

Farther and farther away it floated and dropped into  
silence.

"Patience!" whispered the oaks from oracular cav-  
erns of darkness;

And, from the moonlit meadow, a sigh responded,  
"To-morrow!"

Bright rose the sun next day; and all the flowers  
of the garden

Bathed his shining feet with their tears, and anointed  
his tresses 1060

With the delicious balm that they bore in their vases  
of crystal.

"Farewell!" said the priest, as he stood at the  
shadowy threshold;

"See that you bring us the Prodigal Son from his  
fasting and famine,

And, too, the Foolish Virgin, who slept when the  
bridegroom was coming."

"Farewell!" answered the maiden, and, smiling, with  
Basil descended 1065

Down to the river's brink, where the boatmen already  
were waiting.

Thus beginning their journey with morning, and sun-  
shine, and gladness,

Swiftly they followed the flight of him who was speed-  
ing before them,



Blown by the blast of fate like a dead leaf over the  
desert.

Not that day, nor the next, nor yet the day that suc-  
ceeded, 1070

Found they trace of his course, in lake or forest or  
river,

Nor, after many days, had they found him ; but vague  
and uncertain

Rumors alone were their guides through a wild and  
desolate country ;

Till, at the little inn of the Spanish town of Adayes,  
Weary and worn, they alighted, and learned from the  
garrulous landlord 1075

That on the day before, with horses and guides and  
companions,

Gabriel left the village, and took the road of the  
prairies.

#### IV.

Far in the West there lies a desert land, where the  
mountains

Lift, through perpetual snows, their lofty and lumi-  
nous summits.

Down from their jagged, deep ravines, where the  
gorge, like a gateway, 1080

Opens a passage rude to the wheels of the emigrant's  
wagon,

Westward the Oregon flows and the Walleway and  
Owyhee.

Eastward, with devious course, among the Wind-river  
Mountains,

Through the Sweet-water Valley precipitate leaps the  
Nebraska ;

And to the south, from Fontaine-qui-bout and the  
Spanish sierras, 1085

Fretted with sands and rocks, and swept by the wind  
of the desert,

Numberless torrents, with ceaseless sound, descend to  
the ocean,

Like the great chords of a harp, in loud and solemn  
vibrations.

Spreading between these streams are the wondrous,  
beautiful prairies,

Billowy bays of grass ever rolling in shadow and sun-  
shine, 1090

Bright with luxuriant clusters of roses and purple  
amorphas.

Over them wandered the buffalo herds, and the elk  
and the roebuck ;

Over them wandered the wolves, and herds of rider-  
less horses ;

Fires that blast and blight, and winds that are weary  
with travel ;

Over them wander the scattered tribes of Ishmael's  
children, 1095

Staining the desert with blood ; and above their terri-  
ble war-trails

Circles and sails aloft, on pinions majestic, the vul-  
ture,

Like the implacable soul of a chieftain slaughtered  
in battle,

By invisible stairs ascending and scaling the heav-  
ens.

Here and there rise smokes from the camps of these  
savage marauders ; 1100

Here and there rise groves from the margins of swift-  
running rivers ;

And the grim, taciturn bear, the anchorite monk of  
the desert,

Climbs down their dark ravines to dig for roots by  
 the brook-side,  
 And over all is the sky, the clear and crystalline  
 heaven,  
 Like the protecting hand of God inverted above  
 them. 1105

Into this wonderful land, at the base of the Ozark  
 Mountains,  
 Gabriel far had entered, with hunters and trappers  
 behind him.  
 Day after day, with their Indian guides, the maiden  
 and Basil  
 Followed his flying steps, and thought each day to  
 o'ertake him.  
 Sometimes they saw, or thought they saw, the smoke  
 of his camp-fire 1110  
 Rise in the morning air from the distant plain; but  
 at nightfall,  
 When they had reached the place, they found only  
 embers and ashes.  
 And, though their hearts were sad at times and their  
 bodies were weary,  
 Hope still guided them on, as the magic Fata Morgana  
 Showed them her lakes of light, that retreated and  
 vanished before them. 1115

1114. The Italian name for a meteoric phenomenon nearly allied to a mirage, witnessed in the Straits of Messina, and less frequently elsewhere, and consisting in the appearance in the air over the sea of the objects which are upon the neighboring coasts. In the southwest of our own country, the mirage is very common, of lakes which stretch before the tired traveller, and the deception is so great that parties have sometimes beckoned to other travellers, who seemed to be wading knee-deep, to come over to them where dry land was.

Once, as they sat by their evening fire, there silently  
entered  
Into the little camp an Indian woman, whose features  
Wore deep traces of sorrow, and patience as great as  
her sorrow.  
She was a Shawnee woman returning home to her  
people,  
From the far-off hunting-grounds of the cruel Ca-  
manches, 1120  
Where her Canadian husband, a *coureur-des-bois*,  
had been murdered.  
Touched were their hearts at her story, and warmest  
and friendliest welcome  
Gave they, with words of cheer, and she sat and  
feasted among them  
On the buffalo-meat and the venison cooked on the  
embers.  
But when their meal was done, and Basil and all his  
companions, 1125  
Worn with the long day's march and the chase of the  
deer and the bison,  
Stretched themselves on the ground, and slept where  
the quivering fire-light  
Flashed on their swarthy cheeks, and their forms  
wrapped up in their blankets,  
Then at the door of Evangeline's tent she sat and re-  
peated  
Slowly, with soft, low voice, and the charm of her In-  
dian accent, 1130  
All the tale of her love, with its pleasures, and pains,  
and reverses.  
Much Evangeline wept at the tale, and to know that  
another  
Hapless heart like her own had loved and had been  
disappointed.



Moved to the depths of her soul by pity and woman's  
 compassion,  
 Yet in her sorrow pleased that one who had suffered  
 was near her, 1135  
 She in turn related her love and all its disasters.  
 Mute with wonder the Shawnee sat, and when she had  
 ended  
 Still was mute ; but at length, as if a mysterious hor-  
 ror  
 Passed through her brain, she spake, and repeated the  
 tale of the Mowis ;  
 Mowis, the bridegroom of snow, who won and wedded  
 a maiden, 1140  
 But, when the morning came, arose and passed from  
 the wigwam,  
 Fading and melting away and dissolving into the sun-  
 shine,  
 Till she beheld him no more, though she followed far  
 into the forest.  
 Then, in those sweet, low tones, that seemed like a  
 weird incantation,  
 Told she the tale of the fair Lilinau, who was wooed  
 by a phantom, 1145  
 That, through the pines o'er her father's lodge, in the  
 hush of the twilight,  
 Breathed like the evening wind, and whispered love to  
 the maiden,  
 Till she followed his green and waving plume through  
 the forest,  
 And nevermore returned, nor was seen again by her  
 people.

1145. The story of Lilinau and other Indian legends will be found in H. R. Schoolcraft's *Algic Researches*.

Silent with wonder and strange surprise, Evangeline  
listened 1150

To the soft flow of her magical words, till the region  
around her

Seemed like enchanted ground, and her swarthy guest  
the enchantress.

Slowly over the tops of the Ozark Mountains the  
moon rose,

Lighting the little tent, and with a mysterious splen-  
dor

Touching the sombre leaves, and embracing and filling  
the woodland. 1155

With a delicious sound the brook rushed by, and the  
branches

Swayed and sighed overhead in scarcely audible whis-  
pers.

Filled with the thoughts of love was Evangeline's  
heart, but a secret,

Subtile sense crept in of pain and indefinite terror,  
As the cold, poisonous snake creeps into the nest of  
the swallow. 1160

It was no earthly fear. A breath from the region of  
spirits

Seemed to float in the air of night; and she felt for a  
moment

That, like the Indian maid, she, too, was pursuing a  
phantom.

With this thought she slept, and the fear and the  
phantom had vanished.

Early upon the morrow the march was resumed, and  
the Shawnee 1165

Said, as they journeyed along, — "On the western  
slope of these mountains

Dwells in his little village the Black Robe chief of  
the Mission.

Much he teaches the people, and tells them of Mary  
and Jesus ;

Loud laugh their hearts with joy, and weep with pain,  
as they hear him."

Then, with a sudden and secret emotion, Evangeline  
answered, 1170

"Let us go to the Mission, for there good tidings  
await us !"

Thither they turned their steeds ; and behind a spur  
of the mountains,

Just as the sun went down, they heard a murmur of  
voices,

And in a meadow green and broad, by the bank of a  
river,

Saw the tents of the Christians, the tents of the Jesuit  
Mission. 1173

Under a towering oak, that stood in the midst of the  
village,

Knelt the Black Robe chief with his children. A  
crucifix fastened

High on the trunk of the tree, and overshadowed by  
grapevines,

Looked with its agonized face on the multitude kneel-  
ing beneath it.

This was their rural chapel. Aloft, through the intri-  
cate arches 1180

Of its aerial roof, arose the chant of their vespers,  
Mingling its notes with the soft susurrus and sighs of  
the branches.

Silent, with heads uncovered, the travellers, nearer  
approaching,

Knelt on the swarded floor, and joined in the evening  
devotions.

But when the service was done, and the benediction  
had fallen 1185

Forth from the hands of the priest, like seed from the  
hands of the sower,

Slowly the reverend man advanced to the strangers,  
and bade them

Welcome; and when they replied, he smiled with be-  
nignant expression,

Hearing the homelike sounds of his mother-tongue in  
the forest,

And, with words of kindness, conducted them into his  
wigwam. 1190

There upon mats and skins they reposed, and on cakes  
of the maize-ear

Feasted, and slaked their thirst from the water-gourd  
of the teacher.

Soon was their story told; and the priest with solem-  
nity answered: —

“Not six suns have risen and set since Gabriel, seated  
On this mat by my side, where now the maiden re-  
poses, 1195

Told me this same sad tale; then arose and continued  
his journey!”

Soft was the voice of the priest, and he spake with an  
accent of kindness;

But on Evangeline's heart fell his words as in winter  
the snow-flakes

Fall into some lone nest from which the birds have  
departed.

“Far to the north he has gone,” continued the priest;  
“but in autumn, 1200

When the chase is done, will return again to the Mis-  
sion.”

Then Evangeline said, and her voice was meek and  
submissive.



“Let me remain with thee, for my soul is sad and afflicted.”

So seemed it wise and well unto all ; and betimes on the morrow,

Mounting his Mexican steed, with his Indian guides  
and companions, 1205

Homeward Basil returned, and Evangeline stayed at the Mission.

Slowly, slowly, slowly the days succeeded each other, —

Days and weeks and months ; and the fields of maize  
that were springing

Green from the ground when a stranger she came,  
now waving about her,

Lifted their slender shafts, with leaves interlacing,  
and forming 1210

Cloisters for mendicant crows and granaries pillaged  
by squirrels.

Then in the golden weather the maize was husked,  
and the maidens

Blushed at each blood-red ear, for that betokened a  
lover,

But at the crooked laughed, and called it a thief in  
the corn-field.

Even the blood-red ear to Evangeline brought not her  
lover. 1215

“Patience !” the priest would say ; “have faith, and  
thy prayer will be answered !

Look at this vigorous plant that lifts its head from  
the meadow,

See how its leaves are turned to the north, as true as  
the magnet ;

This is the compass-flower, that the finger of God has  
planted

Here in the houseless wild, to direct the traveller's  
journey 1220

Over the sea-like, pathless, limitless waste of the  
desert.

Such in the soul of man is faith. The blossoms of  
passion,

Gay and luxuriant flowers, are brighter and fuller of  
fragrance,

But they beguile us, and lead us astray, and their  
odor is deadly.

Only this humble plant can guide us here, and here-  
after 1225

Crown us with asphodel flowers, that are wet with the  
dews of nepenthe."

So came the autumn, and passed, and the winter —  
yet Gabriel came not ;

Blossomed the opening spring, and the notes of the  
robin and bluebird

Sounded sweet upon wold and in wood, yet Gabriel  
came not.

But on the breath of the summer winds a rumor was  
wafted 1230

1219. *Silphium laciniatum* or compass-plant is found on the prairies of Michigan and Wisconsin and to the south and west, and is said to present the edges of the lower leaves due north and south.

1226. In early Greek poetry the asphodel meadows were haunted by the shades of heroes. See Homer's *Odyssey*, xxiv. 13, where Pope translates : —

"In ever flowering meads of Asphodel."

The asphodel is of the lily family, and is known also by the name king's spear.

Sweeter than song of bird, or hue or odor of blossom.

Far to the north and east, it said, in the Michigan forests,

Gabriel had his lodge by the banks of the Saginaw River.

And, with returning guides, that sought the lakes of St. Lawrence,

Saying a sad farewell, Evangeline went from the Mission. 1235

When over weary ways, by long and perilous marches,

She had attained at length the depths of the Michigan forests,

Found she the hunter's lodge deserted and fallen to ruin!

Thus did the long sad years glide on, and in seasons and places

Divers and distant far was seen the wandering maiden ; — 1240

Now in the Tents of Grace of the meek Moravian Missions,

Now in the noisy camps and the battle-fields of the army,

Now in secluded hamlets, in towns and populous cities.

Like a phantom she came, and passed away unremembered.

Fair was she and young, when in hope began the long journey ; 1245

Faded was she and old, when in disappointment it ended.

1241. A rendering of the Moravian Gnadenhütten.

Each succeeding year stole something away from her  
    beauty,  
Leaving behind it, broader and deeper, the gloom and  
    the shadow.  
Then there appeared and spread faint streaks of gray  
    o'er her forehead,  
Dawn of another life, that broke o'er her earthly hor-  
    izon, 1250  
As in the eastern sky the first faint streaks of the  
    morning.

## V.

In that delightful land which is washed by the Dela-  
    ware's waters,  
Guarding in sylvan shades the name of Penn the  
    apostle,  
Stands on the banks of its beautiful stream the city  
    he founded.  
There all the air is balm, and the peach is the emblem  
    of beauty, 1255  
And the streets still reëcho the names of the trees of  
    the forest,  
As if they fain would appease the Dryads whose  
    haunts they molested.  
There from the troubled sea had Evangeline landed,  
    an exile,  
Finding among the children of Penn a home and a  
    country.  
There old René Leblanc had died; and when he  
    departed, 1260  
Saw at his side only one of all his hundred descend-  
    ants.

1256. The streets of Philadelphia, as is well known, are many  
of them, especially those running east and west, named for trees,  
as Chestnut, Walnut, Locust, Spruce, Pine, etc.



Something at least there was in the friendly streets of  
the city,

Something that spake to her heart, and made her no  
longer a stranger ;

And her ear was pleased with the Thee and Thou of  
the Quakers,

For it recalled the past, the old Acadian country, <sup>1265</sup>  
Where all men were equal, and all were brothers and  
sisters.

So, when the fruitless search, the disappointed en-  
deavor,

Ended, to recommence no more upon earth, uncom-  
plaining,

Thither, as leaves to the light, were turned her  
thoughts and her footsteps.

As from a mountain's top the rainy mists of the morn-  
ing 1270

Roll away, and afar we behold the landscape below us,  
Sun-illumined, with shining rivers and cities and ham-  
lets,

So fell the mists from her mind, and she saw the  
world far below her,

Dark no longer, but all illumined with love ; and the  
pathway

Which she had climbed so far, lying smooth and fair  
in the distance. 1275

Gabriel was not forgotten. Within her heart was his  
image,

Clothed in the beauty of love and youth, as last she  
beheld him,

Only more beautiful made by his deathlike silence and  
absence.

Into her thoughts of him time entered not, for it was  
not.

Over him years had no power ; he was not changed,  
but transfigured ; 1230

He had become to her heart as one who is dead, and  
not absent ;

Patience and abnegation of self, and devotion to others,  
This was the lesson a life of trial and sorrow had  
taught her.

So was her love diffused, but, like to some odorous  
spices,

Suffered no waste nor loss, though filling the air with  
aroma. 1235

Other hope had she none, nor wish in life, but to follow,  
Meekly with reverent steps, the sacred feet of her  
Saviour.

Thus many years she lived as a Sister of Mercy ; fre-  
quenting

Lonely and wretched roofs in the crowded lanes of  
the city,

Where distress and want concealed themselves from  
the sunlight, 1290

Where disease and sorrow in garrets languished neg-  
lected.

Night after night when the world was asleep, as the  
watchman repeated

Loud, through the gusty streets, that all was well in  
the city,

High at some lonely window he saw the light of her  
taper.

Day after day, in the gray of the dawn, as slow  
through the suburbs 1295

Plodded the German farmer, with flowers and fruits  
for the market,

Met he that meek, pale face, returning home from its  
• watchings.

Then it came to pass that a pestilence fell on the  
 city,  
 Presaged by wondrous signs, and mostly by flocks of  
 wild pigeons,  
 Darkening the sun in their flight, with naught in their  
 craws but an acorn. 1300  
 And, as the tides of the sea arise in the month of Sep-  
 tember,  
 Flooding some silver stream, till it spreads to a lake  
 in the meadow,  
 So death flooded life, and, o'erflowing its natural mar-  
 gin,  
 Spread to a brackish lake the silver stream of ex-  
 istence.  
 Wealth had no power to bribe, nor beauty to charm,  
 the oppressor ; 1305  
 But all perished alike beneath the scourge of his  
 anger ; —  
 Only, alas ! the poor, who had neither friends nor at-  
 tendants,  
 Crept away to die in the almshouse, home of the  
 homeless.  
 Then in the suburbs it stood, in the midst of meadows  
 and woodlands ; —

1298. The year 1793 was long remembered as the year when yellow fever was a terrible pestilence in Philadelphia. Charles Brockden Brown made his novel of *Arthur Mervyn* turn largely upon the incidents of the plague, which drove Brown away from home for a time.

1308. Philadelphians have identified the old Friends' almshouse on Walnut Street, now no longer standing, as that in which Evangeline ministered to Gabriel, and so real was the story that some even ventured to point out the graves of the two lovers. See Westcott's *The Historic Mansions of Philadelphia*, pp. 101, 102.

Now the city surrounds it; but still, with its gateway  
and wicket 1310

Meek, in the midst of splendor, its humble walls seem  
to echo

Softly the words of the Lord:—"The poor ye al-  
ways have with you."

Thither, by night and by day, came the Sister of  
Mercy. The dying

Looked up into her face, and thought, indeed, to be-  
hold there

Gleams of celestial light encircle her forehead with  
splendor, 1315

Such as the artist paints o'er the brows of saints and  
apostles,

Or such as hangs by night o'er a city seen at a distance.  
Unto their eyes it seemed the lamps of the city cele-  
stial,

Into whose shining gates erelong their spirits would  
enter.

Thus, on a Sabbath morn, through the streets, de-  
serted and silent, 1320

Wending her quiet way, she entered the door of the  
almshouse.

Sweet on the summer air was the odor of flowers in  
the garden,

And she paused on her way to gather the fairest  
among them,

That the dying once more might rejoice in their fra-  
grance and beauty.

Then, as she mounted the stairs to the corridors,  
cooled by the east-wind, 1325

Distant and soft on her ear fell the chimes from the  
belfry of Christ Church,



While, intermingled with these, across the meadows  
were wafted

Sounds of psalms, that were sung by the Swedes in  
their church at Wicaco.

Soft as descending wings fell the calm of the hour on  
her spirit ;

Something within her said, " At length thy trials are  
ended ; " 1330

And, with light in her looks, she entered the cham-  
bers of sickness.

Noiselessly moved about the assiduous, careful attend-  
ants,

Moistening the feverish lip, and the aching brow, and  
in silence

Closing the sightless eyes of the dead, and concealing  
their faces,

Where on their pallets they lay, like drifts of snow  
by the roadside. 1335

Many, a languid head, upraised as Evangeline entered,  
Turned on its pillow of pain to gaze while she passed,  
for her presence

Fell on their hearts like a ray of the sun on the walls  
of a prison.

And, as she looked around, she saw how Death, the  
consoler,

Laying his hand upon many a heart, had healed it  
forever. 1340

1328. The Swedes' church at Wicaco is still standing, the oldest in the city of Philadelphia, having been begun in 1698. Wicaco is within the city, on the banks of the Delaware River. An interesting account of the old church and its historic associations will be found in Westcott's book just mentioned, pp. 56-67. Wilson the ornithologist lies buried in the churchyard adjoining the church.

Many familiar forms had disappeared in the night  
time ;

Vacant their places were, or filled already by strangers.

Suddenly, as if arrested by fear or a feeling of  
wonder,

Still she stood, with her colorless lips apart, while a  
shudder

Ran through her frame, and, forgotten, the flowerets  
dropped from her fingers, 1345

And from her eyes and cheeks the light and bloom of  
the morning.

Then there escaped from her lips a cry of such terri-  
ble anguish,

That the dying heard it, and started up from their  
pillows.

On the pallet before her was stretched the form of an  
old man.

Long, and thin, and gray were the locks that shaded  
his temples ; 1350

But, as he lay in the morning light, his face for a  
moment

Seemed to assume once more the forms of its earlier  
manhood ;

So are wont to be changed the faces of those who are  
dying.

Hot and red on his lips still burned the flush of the  
fever,

As if life, like the Hebrew, with blood had besprinkled  
its portals, 1355

That the Angel of Death might see the sign, and pass  
over.

Motionless, senseless, dying, he lay, and his spirit  
exhausted

Seemed to be sinking down through infinite depths in  
the darkness,

Darkness of slumber and death, forever sinking and  
sinking.

Then through those realms of shade, in multiplied  
reverberations, 1360

Heard he that cry of pain, and through the hush that  
succeeded

Whispered a gentle voice, in accents tender and saint-  
like,

“Gabriel! O my beloved!” and died away into si-  
lence.

Then he beheld, in a dream, once more the home of  
his childhood;

Green Acadian meadows, with sylvan rivers among  
them, 1365

Village, and mountain, and woodlands; and, walking  
under their shadow,

As in the days of her youth, Evangeline rose in his  
vision.

Tears came into his eyes; and as slowly he lifted his  
eyelids,

Vanished the vision away, but Evangeline knelt by his  
bedside.

Vainly he strove to whisper her name, for the accents  
unuttered 1370

Died on his lips, and their motion revealed what his  
tongue would have spoken.

Vainly he strove to rise; and Evangeline, kneeling  
beside him,

Kissed his dying lips, and laid his head on her bosom.

Sweet was the light of his eyes; but it suddenly sank  
into darkness,

As when a lamp is blown out by a gust of wind at a  
casement. 1375

All was ended now, the hope, and the fear, and the  
sorrow,  
All the aching of heart, the restless, unsatisfied  
longing,  
All the dull, deep pain, and constant anguish of  
patience!  
And, as she pressed once more the lifeless head to her  
bosom,  
Meekly she bowed her own, and murmured, "Father,  
I thank thee!"

1330

---

Still stands the forest primeval; but far away from  
its shadow,  
Side by side, in their nameless graves, the lovers are  
sleeping.  
Under the humble walls of the little Catholic church-  
yard,  
In the heart of the city, they lie, unknown and un-  
noticed.  
Daily the tides of life go ebbing and flowing beside  
them,  
Thousands of throbbing hearts, where theirs are at  
rest and forever,  
Thousands of aching brains, where theirs no longer  
are busy,  
Thousands of toiling hands, where theirs have ceased  
from their labors,  
Thousands of weary feet, where theirs have completed  
their journey!

1335

Still stands the forest primeval; but under the  
shade of its branches  
Dwells another race, with other customs and language.

1390



Only along the shore of the mournful and misty  
Atlantic

Linger a few Acadian peasants, whose fathers from  
exile

Wandered back to their native land to die in its  
bosom.

In the fisherman's cot the wheel and the loom are still  
busy; 1395

Maidens still wear their Norman caps and their kirtles  
of homespun,

And by the evening fire repeat Evangeline's story,  
While from its rocky caverns the deep-voiced, neigh-  
boring ocean

Speaks, and in accents disconsolate answers the wail  
of the forest.

## EDGAR ALLAN POE.

---

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

EDGAR POE was born January 19, 1809, in Boston. His father, David Poe, the runaway son of General David Poe of Baltimore, was an actor; his mother was a young actress of English descent. Soon after Edgar's birth his father died, and at his mother's death, about three years later, the boy was adopted into the family of John Allan, a wealthy merchant of Richmond. Mr. Allan seems to have bestowed on his adopted son everything he would have given his own child, — although regarding him with pride, perhaps, rather than affection, — and Poe's early years were happy ones. He received an excellent education at the Manor House School, in Stoke Newington, during the five years (1815–1820) that the family was in England, and for the next five years at a classical school in Richmond. In 1826 he entered the schools of ancient and modern languages in the University of Virginia, which had just opened its doors, with Thomas Jefferson in the president's chair. There Poe's quick and brilliant scholarship won for him the highest honors in Latin and French; but he was not a diligent student, nor was he enamored of accuracy, and although he seems never to have come under the notice of the faculty in a way to invite censure, he was nevertheless not allowed to return for his second year, but was kept at home by his guardian and put to work in the counting-room.

This work proved unbearable to Poe, and he soon ran

away, as his father had done before him, and went to Boston. There he appears to have lived under an assumed name. His first book, *Tamerlane and Other Poems*, was published in 1827 under the pseudonym of "A Bostonian," not even the printer knowing the author's real name, and in the same year Poe enlisted in the United States Army as Edgar A. Perry, giving his age as twenty-two.

His military career covers a period of four years, and is not without incident. When he enlisted, he was assigned to the First Artillery, and he served with this command at Fort Independence in Boston Harbor, and later at Fort Moultrie and Fortress Monroe, rising to the rank of sergeant-major. Mr. Allan learned of his whereabouts in 1829, and secured his discharge from the army. In the same year Poe published at Baltimore, under his own name, a second volume of his poems, entitled *Al Aaraaf, Tamerlane, and Minor Poems*. In 1830 he entered the Military Academy at West Point, where he stayed about six months. Deliberate, prolonged neglect of duty then caused him to be court-martialed and dismissed. Reconciliation with Mr. Allan was this time impossible, and Poe was thrown finally on his own resources.

Immediately after leaving West Point, Poe went to New York, and there published a volume with the simple title *Poems*, calling it a second edition, although it was really a third. He then settled at Baltimore, where in October, 1833, he won a prize of \$100 by his story entitled *A MS. found in a Bottle*. He began, also, to write for *The Southern Literary Messenger*, a new periodical published at Richmond, and after a short time he removed to that city and became the *Messenger's* assistant editor. He was well fitted for editorial work, and his many tales, criticisms, and poems soon made the magazine famous. Much of this work was done under pressure and is of little interest now; a few of the poems strike a new note, and a half dozen of the tales have been preserved in the *Tales of the Folio Club*.



Edgar A. Poe.





But his book reviews made the new Southern monthly a magazine of national reputation. They were of a sort not previously known in this country, bold, keen, and effective; they aroused much interest, and they made Poe's name known throughout the land. During this period of prosperity Poe married, on May 16, 1836, his cousin, Virginia Clemm, who was then less than fourteen years old.

In January, 1837, however, the prosperity ended. Poe's eccentric nature caused him to leave the *Messenger*, and he went to New York to live. He stayed in New York one year, publishing his longest story, *The Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym*, and then removed to Philadelphia. During the six years of his residence there he contributed to various magazines and did much editorial work. He published *Tales of the Arabesque and Grotesque* (1840); he edited *The Gentleman's Magazine*, reprinting his old work sometimes with changed titles and slightly revised text; he tried without success to start a journal of his own; he edited also, for a short time, *Graham's Magazine*, then a leading literary journal. In 1843 he won another prize of \$100 with *The Gold-Bug*.

Poe's popularity was growing, and it reached its height in 1844, when he returned to New York and formed a connection with *The Mirror*. In January, 1845, this paper published *The Raven*, which brought the author instantaneous fame. He became the literary success of the day, and his works were published and sold in new editions. But despite these apparently brilliant prospects, worldly success was as far distant as ever. For a few months Poe was one of the editors of a new weekly, *The Broadway Journal*, but he broke with his partner, and an attempt to conduct the paper alone resulted in failure. During this year he published a volume of *Tales and The Raven and Other Poems*.

Early in 1846 Poe removed to the famous cottage at Fordham, New York, and here, on January 30, 1847, his

young wife died amid scenes of direst poverty. The brief remainder of Poe's life was marked by a feverish eagerness approaching very near to insanity. He wrote for various magazines, publishing among many other things *The Bells* and *Eureka*. His life became more and more erratic; on the 3d of October, 1849, he was found in delirium in Baltimore, and four days later he died in a hospital in that city.

Poe's writings, whether prose or verse, always reflect the nature of the man. He was reserved, isolated, and dreamy, with high-strung nerves and a longing for solitude, and his writings show a wildness of genius and a fondness for scenes of mystery and desolation. The body of his poetical work is slight, but it is marked by a weird melody hardly to be found elsewhere in English. His prose is more considerable in amount, and consists of criticisms and of a morbidly imaginative and sombrely supernatural fiction. His critical work, appearing at a time when true criticism was almost unknown in America, was long considered his best work, but is now little read. The themes of his tales are to many readers forbiddingly remote; he dwells on scenes of physical decay that are sometimes repulsive and loathsome. But to persons of sensitive imagination they have a notable charm, and they have served as models for a whole class of weird and mysterious literature. Poe will be known by most readers as the author of a few curious poems and many short pieces of powerful and uncanny fiction; but the beauty and rhythm of these few poems, and the power and intensity of the tales, make secure Poe's place among the immortals of American literature.

## THE RAVEN.\*

ONCE upon a midnight dreary, while I pondered, weak  
and weary,  
Over many a quaint and curious volume of forgotten  
lore, —  
While I nodded, nearly napping, suddenly there came  
a tapping,  
As of some one gently rapping, rapping at my cham-  
ber door.  
“Tis some visitor,” I muttered, “tapping at my  
chamber door:”  
Only this and nothing more.”

\* *The Raven* was first formally published in the *American Whig Review* for February, 1845, but had been copied by permission in the *Evening Mirror* for January 29, of the same year. Later in the year it was the title poem of a volume containing most of Poe's work in verse. Many stories are told with regard to the circumstances of its composition, none of which deserves much more credence than Poe's own account in his *Philosophy of Composition*, which, if taken literally, would prove the poem to be little more than a *tour de force*. Poe did probably apply, in a semi-conscious way, certain principles of style and versification that he had partly developed for himself, and he may have owed something to an obscure poet named Chivers, over and above what he owed Coleridge and Mrs. Browning; but, when all is said, the world has not been wrong in regarding *The Raven* as a highly original and powerfully moving poem, and in according it a popularity second only to that which it has long granted to Gray's *Elegy*. Like the *Elegy*,



Ah, distinctly I remember it was in the bleak December,  
 And each separate dying ember wrought its ghost  
 upon the floor.  
 Eagerly I wished the morrow ; — vainly I had sought  
 to borrow  
 From my books surcease of sorrow — sorrow for the  
 lost Lenore,  
 For the rare and radiant maiden whom the angels  
 name Lenore :

10

Nameless here for evermore.

*The Raven* does not in all probability represent the highest reaches of its author's art (there are lines in *Israfel*, in the lyric *To Helen*, and in the exquisite stanzas *To One in Paradise* that are unmatched in *The Raven*), but the felicitous moralizing of the one poem and the dramatic interest and weird intensity of the other abundantly justify the public in its preferences. Poe's art, too, if not seen at its highest in *The Raven*, receives therein its most adequate and characteristic expression outside of *Ullume*, which the public has never taken quite seriously. The student may be referred to a chapter in Professor C. A. Smith's *Repetition and Parallelism in English Verse* for full details with regard to style. Professor Smith brings out admirably Poe's kinship with the balladists, and gives a satisfactory account of his use of that time-honored poetic artifice, the repetend, — an artifice which is as plainly seen in the

Abstineas avidas, Mors precor atra, manus.

Abstineas, Mors atra, precor,

of Tibullus (El. I, iii.) as in any stanza of *The Raven*.

10. Bürger wrote a ballad of *Lenore* from which Poe may have got this name. The idea of celebrating, whether in verse or in melancholy sentiment, the death of a beautiful young woman seems to have been with him from boyhood, and in his manhood he maintained that such a subject "is, unquestionably, the most poetical topic in the world." It was so for him, at any rate, both in his verse and in his prose-poems such as *Ligeia* and *Eleonora*.

And the silken sad uncertain rustling of each purple  
curtain

Thrilled me — filled me with fantastic terrors never  
felt before ;

So that now, to still the beating of my heart, I stood  
repeating 15

“ ’T is some visitor entreating entrance at my chamber  
door,

Some late visitor entreating entrance at my chamber  
door :

This it is and nothing more.”

Presently my soul grew stronger ; hesitating then no  
longer,

“ Sir,” said I, “ or Madam, truly your forgiveness I  
implore ; 20

But the fact is I was napping, and so gently you came  
rapping,

And so faintly you came tapping, tapping at my  
chamber door,

That I scarce was sure I heard you ” — here I opened  
wide the door : —

Darkness there and nothing more.

Deep into that darkness peering, long I stood there  
wondering, fearing, 25

Doubting, dreaming dreams no mortals ever dared to  
dream before ;

But the silence was unbroken, and the stillness gave  
no token,

And the only word there spoken was the whispered  
word, “ Lenore ? ”

This I whispered, and an echo murmured back the  
word, “ Lenore : ”

Merely this and nothing more. 30

Back into the chamber turning, all my soul within me  
burning,

Soon again I heard a tapping somewhat louder than  
before.

"Surely," said I, "surely that is something at my  
window lattice ;

Let me see, then, what thereat is, and this mystery  
explore ;

Let my heart be still a moment and this mystery  
explore : 35

'T is the wind and nothing more."

Open here I flung the shutter, when, with many a  
flirt and flutter,

In there stepped a stately Raven of the saintly days of  
yore.

Not the least obeisance made he ; not a minute stopped  
or stayed he ;

But, with mien of lord or lady, perched above my  
chamber door, 40

Perched upon a bust of Pallas just above my chamber  
door :

Perched, and sat, and nothing more.

Then this ebony bird beguiling my sad fancy into  
smiling

By the grave and stern decorum of the countenance it  
wore, —

"Though thy crest be shorn and shaven, thou," I  
said, "art sure no craven, 45

45. By this and other touches Poe intended, as he tells us, to give his verses, for the sake of contrast, "an air of the fantastic, approaching as nearly to the ludicrous as was admissible." That the Raven, though shorn like a monk, was no coward is made evident by his cavalier entrance into an unknown place.

Ghastly grim and ancient Raven wandering from the  
Nightly shore :

Tell me what thy lordly name is on the Night's Plu-  
tonian shore ! ”

Quoth the Raven, “ Nevermore.”

Much I marvelled this ungainly fowl to hear discourse  
so plainly,

Though its answer little meaning — little relevancy  
bore ; 50

For we cannot help agreeing that no living human  
being

Ever yet was blessed with seeing bird above his  
chamber door,

Bird or beast upon the sculptured bust above his  
chamber door,

With such name as “ Nevermore.”

But the Raven, sitting lonely on the placid bust.  
spoke only 55

That one word, as if his soul in that one word he did  
outpour,

Nothing further then he uttered, not a feather then  
he fluttered,

Till I scarcely more than muttered, — “ Other friends  
have flown before ;

On the morrow *he* will leave me, as my Hopes have  
flown before.”

Then the bird said, “ Nevermore.” 60

47. Pluto was god of Hades — of the infernal regions —  
hence the epithet conveys the ideas of darkness and mystery.  
Cf. Horace, *Carm.* I, iv.: “ Et domus exilis Plutonia.”

49. Ravens make very intelligent pets (cf. *Barnaby Rudge*)  
and can be taught to imitate speech somewhat. As an omen of  
ill fortune the bird figures frequently in English literature from



Startled at the stillness broken by reply so aptly  
 spoken,  
 "Doubtless," said I, "what it utters is its only stock  
 and store,  
 Caught from some unhappy master whom unmerciful  
 Disaster  
 Followed fast and followed faster till his songs one  
 burden bore :  
 Till the dirges of his Hope that melancholy burden  
 bore

63

Of 'Never — nevermore.' "

But the Raven still beguiling all my fancy into smiling,  
 Straight I wheeled a cushioned seat in front of bird  
 and bust and door ;  
 Then, upon the velvet sinking, I betook myself to  
 linking  
 Fancy unto fancy, thinking what this ominous bird of  
 yore,  
 What this grim, ungainly, ghastly, gaunt, and ominous  
 bird of yore

70

Meant in croaking "Nevermore."

This I sat engaged in guessing, but no syllable ex-  
 pressing  
 To the fowl whose fiery eyes now burned into my  
 bosom's core ;  
 This and more I sat divining, with my head at ease  
 reclining  
 On the cushion's velvet lining that the lamp-light  
 gloated o'er,

75

the time of the Anglo Saxon poets, who continually refer to it in  
 their martial verses.

64. Burden=refrain.

76. That is, cast a sidelong ray over, — unless Poe wished to

But whose velvet violet lining with the lamp-light  
gloating o'er

*She* shall press, ah, nevermore !

Then, methought, the air grew denser, perfumed from  
an unseen censer

Swung by seraphim whose foot-falls tinkled on the  
tufted floor. 80

"Wretch," I cried, "thy God hath lent thee — by  
these angels he hath sent thee

Respite — respite and nepenthe from thy memories of  
Lenore !

Quaff, oh quaff this kind nepenthe, and forget this  
lost Lenore ! "

Quoth the Raven, "Nevermore."

"Prophet!" said I, "thing of evil! prophet still, if  
bird or devil ! 85

Whether Tempter sent, or whether tempest tossed thee  
here ashore,

Desolate yet all undaunted, on this desert land en-  
chanted —

On this home by Horror haunted — tell me truly, I  
implore :

Is there — *is* there balm in Gilead ? — tell me — tell  
me, I implore ! "

Quoth the Raven, "Nevermore." 90

attribute to the light some furtive or sinister character. From  
any point of view the use of the word is rather questionable.

83. *Nepenthe*, a "sorrow-dispelling" drink mentioned in the  
*Odyssey* (iv. 219-30). Cf. *Comus*, ll. 675-6 : —

"That *Nepenthes* which the wife of Thone  
In Egypt gave to Jove-born Helena."

89. *Balm in Gilead*. See *Century Dictionary* and cf. *Jere-  
miah* viii. 22: "Is there no balm in Gilead? is there no physi-  
cian there?"

"Prophet!" said I, "thing of evil — prophet still, if  
bird or devil!

By that Heaven that bends above us, by that God we  
both adore,

Tell this soul with sorrow laden if, within the distant  
Aidenn,

It shall clasp a sainted maiden whom the angels name  
Lenore:

Clasp a rare and radiant maiden whom the angels  
name Lenore!" 95

Quoth the Raven, "Nevermore."

"Be that word our sign of parting, bird or fiend!" I  
shrieked, upstarting:

"Get thee back into the tempest and the Night's Plu-  
tonian shore!

Leave no black plume as a token of that lie thy soul  
hath spoken!

Leave my loneliness unbroken! quit the bust above  
my door!" 100

Take thy beak from out my heart, and take thy form  
from off my door!"

Quoth the Raven, "Nevermore."

And the Raven, never flitting, still is sitting, still is  
sitting

On the pallid bust of Pallas just above my chamber  
door;

93. *Aidenn*, some distant place of pleasure, — Eden or Aden,  
of which it is a fanciful variant.

96. Poe tells us in his curious account of the evolution of his  
poem that this stanza was the first that he wrote out.

101. "It will be observed," says Poe, "that the words 'from  
out my heart' involve the first metaphorical expression in the  
poem. . . . The reader begins now to regard the Raven as em-  
blematical" ["of *Mournful and Never-ending Remembrance*"].

And his eyes have all the seeming of a demon's that  
     is dreaming, 105  
 And the lamp-light o'er him streaming throws his  
     shadow on the floor :  
 And my soul from out that shadow that lies floating  
     on the floor  
         Shall be lifted — nevermore !

## THE BELLS.\*

## I.

    HEAR the sledges with the bells,  
         Silver bells !  
 What a world of merriment their melody foretells !  
     How they tinkle, tinkle, tinkle,  
         In the icy air of night !  
     While the stars, that oversprinkle  
     All the heavens, seem to twinkle  
         With a crystalline delight ;  
     Keeping time, time, time,  
         In a sort of Runic rhyme, 10  
 To the tintinnabulation that so musically wells  
     From the bells, bells, bells, bells,  
         Bells, bells, bells —  
 From the jingling and the tinkling of the bells.

\* *The Bells* seems to have been evolved out of two stanzas suggested to Poe by a lady to whom he complained that he had a poem to write, but was without a subject and was annoyed by the sound of the neighboring church bells.

10. Runes were letters or characters used by the peoples of northern Europe. In them short, mystic sentences and rhymes were often couched, — hence a “runic rhyme” is one more or less mystical or obscure in expression.



## II.

Hear the mellow wedding bells, 15  
     Golden bells !  
 What a world of happiness their harmony foretells !  
     Through the balmy air of night  
     How they ring out their delight !  
     From the molten-golden notes, 20  
     And all in tune,  
     What a liquid ditty floats  
 To the turtle-dove that listens, while she gloats  
     On the moon !  
     Oh, from out the sounding cells, 25  
 What a gush of euphony voluminously wells !  
     How it swells !  
     How it dwells  
     On the Future ! how it tells  
     Of the rapture that impels 30  
 To the swinging and the ringing  
     Of the bells, bells, bells,  
     Of the bells, bells, bells, bells,  
     Bells, bells, bells —  
 To the rhyming and the chiming of the bells ! 35

## III.

Hear the loud alarum bells,  
     Brazen bells !  
 What a tale of terror, now, their turbulency tells !  
     In the startled ear of night  
     How they scream out their affright ! 40  
     Too much horrified to speak,  
     They can only shriek, shriek,  
     Out of tune,  
 In a clamorous appealing to the mercy of the fire,  
 In a mad expostulation with the deaf and frantic  
     fire, 45

Leaping higher, higher, higher,  
With a desperate desire,  
And a resolute endeavor  
Now — now to sit or never,  
By the side of the pale-faced moon. 50  
Oh, the bells, bells, bells!  
What a tale their terror tells  
Of Despair!  
How they clang, and clash, and roar!  
What a horror they outpour 55  
On the bosom of the palpitating air!  
Yet the ear it fully knows,  
By the twanging  
And the clanging,  
How the danger ebbs and flows; 60  
Yet the ear distinctly tells,  
In the jangling  
And the wrangling,  
How the danger sinks and swells, —  
By the sinking or the swelling in the anger of the  
bells, 65  
Of the bells,  
Of the bells, bells, bells, bells,  
Bells, bells, bells —  
In the clamor and the clangor of the bells!

## IV.

Hear the tolling of the bells, 70  
Iron bells!  
What a world of solemn thought their monody com-  
pels!  
In the silence of the night  
How we shiver with affright  
At the melancholy menace of their tone! 75

For every sound that floats  
 From the rust within their throats  
     Is a groan.

And the people — ah, the people,  
 They that dwell up in the steeple,  
     All alone,

80

And who tolling, tolling, tolling  
     In that muffled monotone,

Feel a glory in so rolling  
     On the human heart a stone —

85

They are neither man nor woman,  
 They are neither brute nor human,

    They are Ghouls:  
     And their king it is who tolls;  
     And he rolls, rolls, rolls,

90

    Rolls

    A pæan from the bells;  
 And his merry bosom swells  
 With the pæan of the bells,  
 And he dances, and he yells:

95

Keeping time, time, time,  
 In a sort of Runic rhyme,

    To the pæan of the bells,  
     Of the bells:

Keeping time, time, time,  
 In a sort of Runic rhyme,

100

    To the throbbing of the bells,  
     Of the bells, bells, bells —

    To the sobbing of the bells;

Keeping time, time, time,

105

    As he knells, knells, knells,

92. Pæan, originally a hymn of thanksgiving or a song for help to Apollo, the healer, — now any song of triumph and joy.

In a happy Runic rhyme,  
     To the rolling of the bells,  
     Of the bells, bells, bells :  
     To the tolling of the bells, 110  
 Of the bells, bells, bells, bells,  
     Bells, bells, bells —  
 To the moaning and the groaning of the bells.

## ANNABEL LEE.\*

It was many and many a year ago,  
     In a kingdom by the sea,  
 That a maiden there lived whom you may know  
     By the name of ANNABEL LEE ;  
 And this maiden she lived with no other thought 5  
     Than to love and be loved by me.

I was a child and she was a child,  
     In this kingdom by the sea,  
 But we loved with a love that was more than love,  
     I and my ANNABEL LEE ; 10  
 With a love that the wingèd seraphs of heaven  
     Coveted her and me.

And this was the reason that, long ago,  
     In this kingdom by the sea,  
 A wind blew out of a cloud, chilling 15  
     My beautiful ANNABEL LEE ;

\* *Annabel Lee* first appeared in the *New York Tribune* for October 9, 1849. The poem has long shared the popularity of *The Raven* and *The Bells*, chiefly on account of its exquisite rhythm, its deep sincerity, and its touch of romantic mysticism.



So that her highborn kinsman came  
And bore her away from me,  
To shut her up in a sepulchre  
In this kingdom by the sea.

20

The angels, not half so happy in heaven,  
Went envying her and me ;  
Yes ! that was the reason (as all men know,  
In this kingdom by the sea)  
That the wind came out of the cloud by night,  
Chilling and killing my ANNABEL LEE.

25

But our love it was stronger by far than the love  
Of those who were older than we,  
Of many far wiser than we ;  
And neither the angels in heaven above,  
Nor the demons down under the sea,  
Can ever dissever my soul from the soul  
Of the beautiful ANNABEL LEE :

30

For the moon never beams, without bringing me  
dreams

Of the beautiful ANNABEL LEE ;  
And the stars never rise, but I feel the bright eyes  
Of the beautiful ANNABEL LEE ;  
And so, all the night-tide, I lie down by the side  
Of my darling — my darling — my life and my bride,  
In her sepulchre there by the sea,  
In her tomb by the sounding sea.

35

40

33. These lines probably represent the highest reach of poetic passion that Poe was capable of.

## ISRAFEL.\*

IN Heaven a spirit doth dwell  
 Whose heart-strings are a lute;  
 None sing so wildly well  
 As the angel Israfel,  
 And the giddy stars (so legends tell) 5  
 Ceasing their hymns, attend the spell  
 Of his voice, all mute.

Tottering above  
 In her highest noon,  
 The enamored moon 10  
 Blushes with love,  
 While, to listen, the red levin  
 (With the rapid Pleiads, even,  
 Which were seven)  
 Pauses in Heaven. 15

\* *Israfel* was first published in the collection of 1831, but was much elaborated and improved before it took final form. Poe's control over the subtler beauties of his art is nowhere more definitely shown, and Mr. Stedman is clearly right in maintaining that the more the poem is studied the rarer it seems. "The lyric phrasing is minstrelsy throughout—the soul of nature mastering a human voice." It may be doubted whether even in the lyrics of Shelley, which certainly influenced Poe, there is to be found any more complete expression of the highest poetic rapture than is contained in several of these stanzas.

4. Poe's own motto runs: "And the angel Israfel, whose heart-strings are a lute, and who has the sweetest voice of all God's creatures. KORAN." [Really from Sale's *Preliminary Discourse*, iv. 71, through Moore's *Lalla Rookh*. The phrase "whose heart-strings," etc., was interpolated by Poe.]

12. *Levin*, better spelt "leven,"—an obsolete word for lightning.

14. Only six of these stars are conspicuous, hence the legend of the Lost Pleiad. See *Harper's Classical Dictionary*.

And they say (the starry choir  
And the other listening things)  
That Israfeli's fire  
Is owing to that lyre  
By which he sits and sings,  
The trembling living wire  
Of those unusual strings.

20

But the skies that angel trod,  
Where deep thoughts are a duty,  
Where Love's a grown-up God,  
Where the Houri glances are  
Imbued with all the beauty  
Which we worship in a star.

25

Therefore thou art not wrong,  
Israfeli, who despisest  
An unimpassioned song ;  
To thee the laurels belong,  
Best bard, because the wisest :  
Merrily live, and long !

30

The ecstasies above  
With thy burning measures suit :  
Thy grief, thy joy, thy hate, thy love,  
With the fervor of thy lute :  
Well may the stars be mute !

35

Yes, Heaven is thine ; but this  
Is a world of sweets and sour ;  
Our flowers are merely — flowers,

40

26. The houris are nymphs of paradise, according to the Mohammedans, beautiful, immortal virgins who attend upon the faithful after death.

And the shadow of thy perfect bliss  
Is the sunshine of ours.

If I could dwell  
Where Israfael

1 45

Hath dwelt, and he where I,  
He might not sing so wildly well  
A mortal melody,

While a bolder note than this might swell 50  
From my lyre within the sky.

51. Compare with the close of Shelley's *Skylark*.

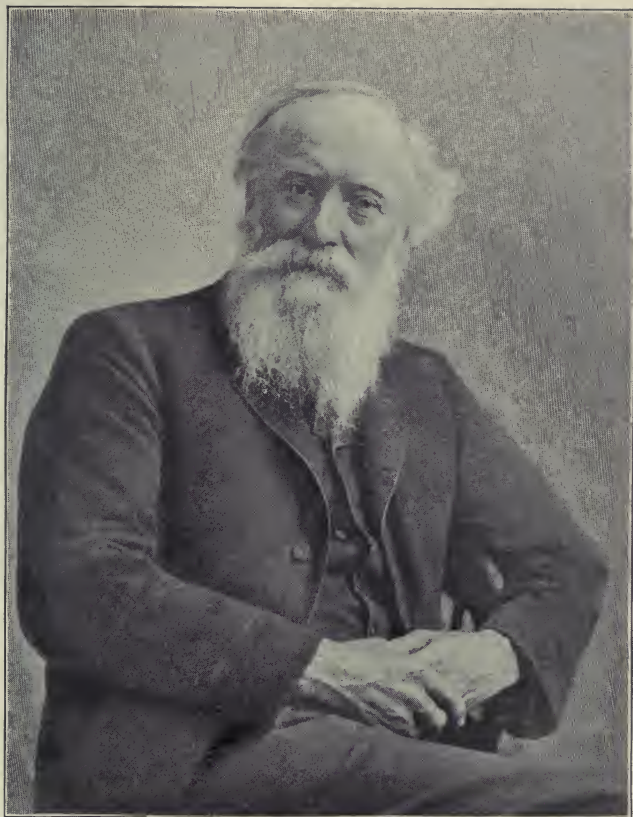


## JOHN BURROUGHS.

---

NATURE chose the spring of the year for the time of John Burroughs's birth. A little before the day when the wake-robin shows itself, that the observer might be on hand for the sight, he was born in Roxbury, Delaware County, New York, on the western borders of the Catskill Mountains; the precise date was April 3, 1837. Until 1863 he remained in the country about his native place, working on his father's farm, getting his schooling in the district school and neighboring academies, and taking his turn also as teacher. As he himself has hinted, the originality, freshness, and wholesomeness of his writings are probably due in great measure to the unliterary surroundings of his early life, which allowed his mind to form itself on unconventional lines, and to the later companionships with unlettered men, which kept him in touch with the sturdy simplicities of life.

From the very beginnings of his taste for literature, the essay was his favorite form. Dr. Johnson was the prophet of his youth, but he soon transferred his allegiance to Emerson, who for many years remained his "master enchanter." To cure himself of too close an imitation of the Concord seer, which showed itself in his first magazine article, *Expression*, he took to writing his sketches of nature, and about this time he fell in with the writings of Thoreau, which doubtless confirmed and encouraged him in this direction. But of all authors and of all men, Walt Whitman, in his personality and as a literary force, seems to have made the profoundest impression upon Mr. Burroughs, though doubtless Emerson had a greater influence on his style of writing.



*John Burroughes*



*Expression* appeared in *The Atlantic Monthly* in 1860, and most of his contributions to literature have been in the form of papers first published in the magazines, and afterwards collected into books. He more than once paid tribute to his teachers in literature. His first book, now out of print, was *Notes on Walt Whitman, as Poet and Person*, published in 1867; and *Whitman: A Study*, which appeared in 1896, is a more extended treatment of the man and his poetry and philosophy. *Birds and Poets*, too, contains a paper on Whitman, entitled *The Flight of the Eagle*, besides an essay on Emerson, whom he also treated incidentally in his paper, *Matthew Arnold on Emerson and Carlyle in Indoor Studies*; and the latter volume contains his essay on Thoreau.

In the autumn of 1863 he went to Washington, and in the following January entered the Treasury Department. He was for some years an assistant in the office of the Comptroller of the Currency, and later chief of the organization division of that Bureau. For some time he was keeper of one of the vaults, and for a great part of the day his only duty was to be at his desk. In these leisure hours his mind traveled off into the country, where his previous life had been spent, and with the help of his pen, always a faithful friend and magician, he lived over again those happy days, now happier still with the glamour of all past pleasures. In this way he wrote *Wake-Robin* and a part of *Winter Sunshine*. It must not be supposed, however, that he was deprived of outdoor pleasures while at Washington. On the contrary, he enjoyed many walks in the suburbs of the capital, and in those days the real country came up to the very edges of the city. His *Spring at the Capital*, *Winter Sunshine*, *A March Chronicle*, and other papers bear the fruit of his life on the Potomac. He went to England in 1871 on business for the Treasury Department, and again on his own account a dozen years later. The record of the two visits is to be found mainly in his chapters on *An October Abroad*, contained in the volume



*Winter Sunshine*, and in the papers gathered into the volume *Fresh Fields*.

He resigned his place in the Treasury in 1872, and was appointed receiver of a broken national bank. Later, until 1884, his business occupation was that of a National Bank Examiner. An article contributed by him to *The Century Magazine* for March, 1881, on *Broken Banks and Lax Directors*, is perhaps the only literary outcome of this occupation, but the keen power of observation, trained in the field of nature, could not fail to disclose themselves in analyzing columns of figures. After leaving Washington Mr. Burroughs bought a fruit farm at West Park, near Esopus, on the Hudson, and there building his house from the stones found in his fields, has given himself the best conditions for that humanizing of nature which constitutes the charm of his books. He was married in 1857 to a lady living in the New York village where he was at the time teaching. He keeps his country home the year round, only occasionally visiting New York. The cultivation of grapes absorbs the greater part of his time; but he has by no means given over letters. His work, which has long found ready acceptance both at home and abroad, is now passing into that security of fame which comes from its entrance into the school-life of American children.

Besides his outdoor sketches and the other papers already mentioned, Mr. Burroughs has written a number of critical essays on life and literature, published in *Indoor Studies*, and other volumes. He has also taken his readers into his confidence in *An Egotistical Chapter*, the final one of his *Indoor Studies*; and in the Introduction to the Riverside Edition of his writings he has given us further glimpses of his private intellectual life.

Probably no other American writer has a greater sympathy with, and a keener enjoyment of, country life in all its phases — farming, camping, fishing, walking — than has John Burroughs. His books are redolent of the soil, and have such “freshness and primal sweetness,” that we need

not be told that the pleasure he gets from his walks and excursions is by no means over when he steps inside his doors again. As he tells us on more than one occasion, he finds he can get much more out of his outdoor experiences by thinking them over, and writing them out afterwards.

Numbers 28, 36, and 92 of the Riverside Literature Series consist of selections from Mr. Burroughs's books. No. 28, which is entitled *Birds and Bees*, is made up of *Bird Enemies* and *The Tragedies of the Nests* from the volume *Signs and Seasons*, *An Idyl of the Honey-Bee* from *Pepacton*, and *The Pastoral Bees* from *Locusts and Wild Honey*. The Introduction, by Miss Mary E. Burt, gives an account of the use of Mr. Burroughs's writings in Chicago schools.

In No. 36, *Sharp Eyes and Other Papers*, the initial paper, *Sharp Eyes*, is drawn from *Locusts and Wild Honey*, *The Apple* comes from *Winter Sunshine*, *A Taste of Maine Birch* and *Winter Neighbors* from *Signs and Seasons*, and *Notes by the Way* (on muskrats, squirrels, foxes, and woodchucks) from *Pepacton*.

The collection called *A Bunch of Herbs, and Other Papers*, forming No. 92 of the Series, was designed with special reference to what the author has to say of trees and flowers, and contains *A Bunch of Herbs* from *Pepacton*, *Strawberries* from *Locusts and Wild Honey*, *A March Chronicle* and *Autumn Tides* from *Winter Sunshine*, *A Spray of Pine* and *A Spring Relish* from *Signs and Seasons*, and *English Woods: A Contrast* from *Fresh Fields*.

## A SPRAY OF PINE.

How different the expression of the pine, in fact of all the coniferæ, from that of the deciduous trees! Not different merely by reason of color and foliage, but by reason of form. The deciduous trees have greater diversity of shapes; they tend to branch endlessly; they divide and subdivide until the original trunk is lost in a maze of limbs. Not so the pine and its congeners. Here the main thing is the central shaft; there is one dominant shoot which leads all the rest, and which points the tree upward; the original type is never departed from: the branches shoot out at nearly right angles to the trunk, and occur in regular whorls; the main stem is never divided unless some accident nips the leading shoot, when two secondary branches will often rise up and lead the tree forward. The pine has no power to develop new buds, new shoots, like the deciduous trees; no power of spontaneous variation to meet new exigencies, new requirements. It is, as it were, cast in a mould. Its buds, its branches occur in regular series and after a regular pattern. Interrupt this series, try to vary this pattern, and the tree is powerless to adapt itself to any other. Victor Hugo, in his old age, compared himself to a tree that had been many times cut down, but which always sprouted again. But the pines do not sprout again. The spontaneous development of a new bud or a new shoot rarely or never occurs. The hemlock seems to be

under the same law. I have cut away all the branches, and rubbed away all the buds, of a young sapling of this species, and found the tree, a year and a half later, full of life, but with no leaf or bud upon it. It could not break the spell. One bud would have released it and set its currents going again, but it was powerless to develop it. Remove the bud, or the new growth from the end of the central shaft of the branch of a pine, and in a year or two the branch will die back to the next joint; remove the whorl of branches here and it will die back to the next whorl, and so on.

When you cut the top of a pine or a spruce, removing the central and leading shaft, the tree does not develop and send forth a new one to take the place of the old, but a branch from the next in rank, that is, from the next whorl of limbs, is promoted to take the lead. It is curious to witness this limb rise up and get into position. One season I cut off the tops of some young hemlocks that were about ten feet high, that I had balled in the winter and had moved into position for a hedge. The next series of branches consisted of three that shot out nearly horizontally. As time passed, one of these branches, apparently the most vigorous, began to lift itself up very slowly toward the place occupied by the lost leader. The third year it stood at an angle of about forty-five degrees; the fourth year it had gained about half the remaining distance, when the clipping shears again cut it down. In five years it would probably have assumed an upright position. A white pine of about the same height lost its central shaft by a grub that developed from the egg of an insect, and I cut it away. It rose from a whorl of four branches, and it now devolved upon one of these to take the lead. Two of them, on oppo-



site sides, were more vigorous than the other two, and the struggle now is as to which of these two shall gain the mastery. Both are rising up and turning toward the vacant chieftainship, and, unless something interferes, the tree will probably become forked and led upward by two equal branches. I shall probably humble the pride of one of the rivals by nipping its central shoot. One of my neighbors has cut off a yellow pine about six inches in diameter, so as to leave only one circle of limbs seven or eight feet from the ground. It is now the third year of the tree's decapitation, and one of this circle of horizontal limbs has risen up several feet, like a sleeper rising from his couch, and seems to be looking around inquiringly, as much as to say: "Come, brothers, wake up! Some one must take the lead here; shall it be I?"

In one of my Norway spruces I have witnessed the humbling or reducing to the ranks of a would-be leading central shoot. For a couple of years the vigorous young tree was led upward by two rival branches: they appeared almost evenly matched; but on the third year one of them clearly took the lead, and at the end of the season was a foot or more in advance of the other. The next year the distance between them became still greater, and the defeated leader appeared to give up the contest, so that a season or two afterward it began to lose its upright attitude and to fall more and more toward a horizontal position; it was willing to go back into the ranks of the lateral branches. Its humiliation was so great that it even for a time dropped below them; but toward midsummer it lifted up its head a little, and was soon fairly in the position of a side branch, simulating defeat and willing subordination as completely as if it had been a conscious, sentient being.

The evergreens can keep a secret the year round, some one has said. How well they keep the secret of the shedding of their leaves! so well that in the case of the spruces we hardly know when it does occur. In fact, the spruces do not properly shed their leaves at all, but simply outgrow them, after carrying them an indefinite time. Some of the species carry their leaves five or six years. The hemlock drops its leaves very irregularly; the winds and the storms whip them off; in winter the snow beneath them is often covered with them.

But the pine sheds its leaves periodically, though always as it were stealthily and under cover of the newer foliage. The white pine usually sheds its leaves in midsummer, though I have known all the pines to delay till October. It is on with the new love before it is off with the old. From May till near autumn it carries two crops of leaves, last year's and the present year's. Emerson's inquiry,

"How the sacred pine-tree adds  
To her old leaves new myriads,"

is framed in strict accordance with the facts. It is to her *old* leaves that she adds the new. Only the new growth, the outermost leaves, are carried over till the next season, thus keeping the tree always clothed and green. As its moulting season approaches, these old leaves, all the rear ranks on the limbs, begin to turn yellow, and a careless observer might think the tree was struck with death, but it is not. The decay stops just where the growth of the previous spring began, and presently the tree stands green and vigorous, with a newly-laid carpet of fallen leaves beneath it.

I wonder why it is that the pine has an ancient

look, a suggestion in some way of antiquity? Is it because we know it to be the oldest tree? or is it not rather that its repose, its silence, its unchangeableness, suggest the past, and cause it to stand out in sharp contrast upon the background of the flitting, fugitive present? It has such a look of permanence! When growing from the rocks, it seems expressive of the same geologic antiquity as they. It has the simplicity of primitive things; the deciduous trees seem more complex, more heterogeneous; they have greater versatility, more resources. The pine has but one idea, and that is to mount heavenward by regular steps, — tree of fate, tree of dark shadows and of mystery.

The pine is the tree of silence. Who was the Goddess of Silence? Look for her altars amid the pines, — silence above, silence below. Pass from deciduous woods into pine woods of a windy day, and you think the day has suddenly become calm. Then how silent to the foot! One walks over a carpet of pine needles almost as noiselessly as over the carpets of our dwellings. Do these halls lead to the chambers of the great, that all noise should be banished from them? Let the designers come here and get the true pattern for a carpet, — a soft yellowish brown with only a red leaf, or a bit of gray moss, or a dusky lichen scattered here and there; a background that does not weary or bewilder the eye, or insult the ground-loving foot.

How friendly the pine-tree is to man, — so docile and available as timber, and so warm and protective as shelter! Its balsam is salve to his wounds, its fragrance is long life to his nostrils; an abiding, perennial tree, tempering the climate, cool as mur-

muring waters in summer and like a wrapping of fur in winter.

The deciduous trees are inconstant friends that fail us when adverse winds do blow; but the pine and all its tribe look winter cheerily in the face, tossing the snow, masquerading in his arctic livery, in fact holding high carnival from fall to spring. The Norseman of the woods, lofty and aspiring, tree without bluster or noise, that sifts the howling storm into a fine spray of sound; symmetrical tree, tapering, columnar, shaped as in a lathe, the preordained mast of ships, the mother of colossal timbers; centralized, towering, patriarchal, coming down from the foreworld, counting centuries in thy rings and outlasting empires in thy decay.

A little tall talk seems not amiss on such a subject. The American or white pine has been known to grow to a height of two hundred and sixty feet, slender and tapering as a rush, and equally available for friction matches or for the mast of a ship of the line. It is potent upon the sea and upon the land, and lends itself to become a standard for giants or a toy for babes, with equal readiness. No other tree so widely useful in the mechanic arts, or so beneficent in the economy of nature. House of refuge for the winter birds, and inn and hostelry for the spring and fall emigrants. All the northern creatures are more or less dependent upon the pine. Nature has made a singular exception in the conformation of the beaks of certain birds, that they might the better feed upon the seeds of its cones, as in the crossbills. Then the pine grosbeak and pine linnet are both nurslings of this tree. Certain of the warblers, also, the naturalist seldom finds except amid its branches.



The dominant races come from the region of the pine.

“Who liveth by the ragged pine  
Foundeth a heroic line;”

says Emerson.

“Who liveth in the palace hall  
Waneth fast and spendeth all.”

The pines of Norway and Sweden sent out the vikings, and out of the pine woods of northern Europe came the virile barbarian overrunning the effete southern countries.

“And grant to dwellers with the pine  
Dominion o’er the palm and vine.”

There is something sweet and piny about the northern literatures as contrasted with those of the voluble and passionate south, — something in them that heals the mind’s hurts like a finer balsam. In reading Björnson, or Andersen, or Russian Turgéneff, though one may not be in contact with the master spirits of the world, he is yet inhaling an atmosphere that is resinous and curative; he is under an influence that is arboreal, temperate, balsamic.

“The white pine,” says Wilson Flagg in his “Woods and Waysides of New England,” “has no legendary history. Being an American tree, it is celebrated neither in poetry nor romance.” Not perhaps in Old World poetry and romance, but certainly in that of the New World. The New England poets have not overlooked the pine, however much they may have gone abroad for their themes and tropes. Whit-tier’s “My Playmate” is written to the low monotone of the pine.

“The pines were dark on Ramoth hill,  
Their song was soft and low;  
The blossoms in the sweet May wind  
Were falling like the snow.”

Lowell's "To a Pine-Tree" is well known, —

"Far up on Katahdin thou towerest  
Purple-blue with the distance and vast;  
Like a cloud o'er the lowlands thou lowerest,  
That hangs poised on a lull in the blast  
To its fall leaning awful."

In his "A Mood" his attention is absorbed by this tree, and in the poet's quest of the muse he says, —

"I haunt the pine-dark solitudes,  
With soft brown silence carpeted."

But the real white pine among our poets is Emerson. Against that rustling deciduous background of the New England poets he shows dark and aspiring. Emerson seems to have a closer fellowship with the pine than with any other tree, and it recurs again and again in his poems. In his "Garden" the pine is the principal vegetable, — "the snow-loving pines," as he so aptly says, and "the hemlocks tall, untamable." It is perhaps from the white pine that he gets the idea that "Nature loves the number five;" its leaves are in fives and its whorl of branches is composed of five. His warbler is the "pine warbler," and he sees "the pigeons in the pines," where they are seldom to be seen. He even puts a "pine state-house" in his "Boston Hymn."

But, more than that, his "Woodnotes," one of his longest poems, is mainly the notes of the pine. Theodore Parker said that a tree that talked like Emerson's pine ought to be cut down; but if the pine were to find a tongue, I should sooner expect to hear the Emersonian dialect from it than almost any other. It would be pretty high up, certainly, and go over the heads of most of the other trees. It were sure to be pointed, though the point few could see. And it

would not be garrulous and loud-mouthed, though it might talk on and on. Whether it would preach or not is a question, but I have no doubt it would be a fragrant healing gospel if it did. I think its sentences would be short ones with long pauses between them, and that they would sprout out of the subject independently and not connect or interlock very much. There would be breaks and chasms or maybe some darkness between the lines, but I should expect from it a lofty, cheerful, and all-the-year-round philosophy. The temptation to be oracular would no doubt be great, and could be more readily overlooked in this tree than in any other. Then, the pine being the oldest tree, great wisdom and penetration might be expected of it.

Though Emerson's pine boasts

“ My garden is the cloven rock,  
And my manure the snow ;  
And drifting sand-heaps feed my stock,  
In summer's scorching glow,” —

yet the great white pine loves a strong deep soil. How it throve along our river bottoms and pointed out the best land to the early settlers! Remnants of its stumps are still occasionally seen in land that has been given to the plow these seventy or eighty years. In Pennsylvania the stumps are wrenched from the ground by machinery and used largely for fencing. Laid upon their side with their wide branching roots in the air, they form a barrier before which even the hound-pursued deer may well pause.

This aboriginal tree is fast disappearing from the country. Its second growth seems to be a degenerate race, what the carpenters contemptuously call pumpkin pine, on account of its softness. All the large

tracts and provinces of the original tree have been invaded and ravished by the lumbermen, so that only isolated bands, and straggling specimens, like the remnants of a defeated and disorganized army, are now found scattered up and down the country. The spring floods on our northern rivers have for decades of years been moving seething walls of pine logs, sweeping down out of the wilderness. I remember pausing beside a mammoth pine in the Adirondack woods, standing a little to one side of the destroyer's track, that must have carried its green crown near one hundred and fifty feet above the earth. How such a tree impresses one! How it swells at the base and grows rigid as if with muscular effort in its determined gripe of the earth! How it lays hold of the rocks, or rends them asunder to secure its hold! Nearly all trunk, it seems to have shed its limbs like youthful follies as it went skyward, or as the builders pull down their scaffoldings and carry them higher as the temple mounts; nothing superfluous, no waste of time or energy, the one purpose to cleave the empyrean steadily held to.

At the Centennial fair I saw a section of a pine from Canada that was eight feet in diameter, and that had been growing, I have forgotten how many centuries. But this was only a sapling beside the redwoods of California, one of which would carry several such trees in his belt.

In the absence of the pine, the hemlock is a graceful and noble tree. In primitive woods it shoots up in the same manner, drawing the ladder up after it, and attains an altitude of nearly or quite a hundred feet. It is the poor man's pine, and destined to humbler uses than its lordlier brother. It follows the



pine like a servitor, keeping on higher and more rocky ground, and going up the minor branch valleys when the pine follows only the main or mother stream. As an ornamental tree it is very pleasing, and deserves to be cultivated more than it is. It is a great favorite with the sylvan folk, too. The ruffed grouse prefer it to the pine; it is better shelter in winter, and its buds are edible. The red squirrel has found out the seeds in its cones, and they are an important part of his winter stores. Some of the rarer warblers, too, like the Blackburnian and the blue yellow-back, I never find except among the hemlocks. The older ornithologists, Audubon and Wilson, named a "hemlock warbler" also, but this bird turns out to be none other than the young of the Blackburnian described as a new species and named for its favorite tree.

All trees in primitive woods are less social, less disposed to intermingle, than trees in groves or fields; they are more heady; they meet only on high grounds; they shake hands over the heads of their neighbors; the struggle for life is sharper and more merciless, — in these and other respects suggesting men in cities. One tree falls against a more stanch one, and bruises only itself; a weaker one it carries to the ground with it.

Both the pine and the hemlock make friends with the birch, the maple, and the oak, and one of the most pleasing and striking features of our autumnal scenery is a mountain side sown broadcast with these intermingled trees, forming a combination of colors like the richest tapestry, the dark green giving body and permanence, the orange and yellow giving light and brilliancy.

## PATRICK HENRY.

---

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

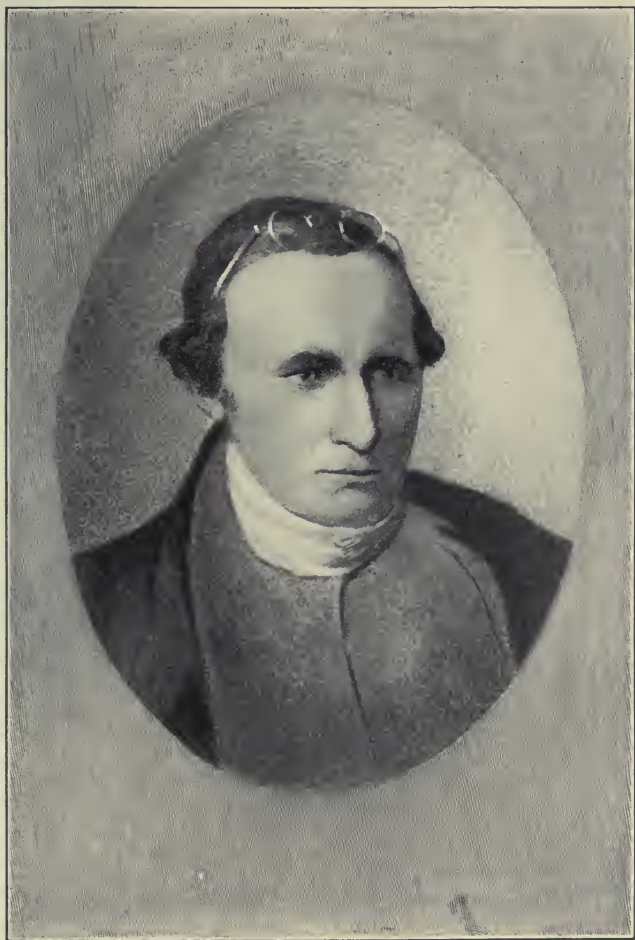
AMONG the group of men whose energy and patriotism produced the American Revolution Patrick Henry stood preëminent for one special gift. In ability to shape the action of men by persuasive and effective speech he was far in advance of his contemporaries. This gift was rather a mark of genius than the result of severe effort toward attainment. In fact there was nothing in Patrick Henry's early training that would mark him as likely to become one of the great figures of a period prolific of famous men. Born May 29, 1736, in Hanover County, Virginia, he enjoyed few early advantages. His father was a good man and a man of some education. His mother belonged to a family considered somewhat more clever than the average. For a few years he attended school more or less willingly, and learned a little Latin and Greek, but he was unpromising as a scholar, and whiled away a good deal of time with rod and gun. Between the ages of fifteen and twenty-four he made a failure of everything he tried. Although he was a poor storekeeper and, if anything, a worse farmer, this did not deter him from getting married at eighteen, and thus assuming the task of providing for two before he had demonstrated his ability to provide for one.

But in 1760 a change occurred. He hastily read a little law in a very brief space of time, and went down to Williamsburg to get admitted to the bar. At first he did

not make a favorable impression; but when John Randolph, one of the examiners, affected to dissent from his opinions to draw him out, he defended his ideas with such force and vigor as to make evident a nature which had mastered the principles of close observation and accurate reasoning. Taking the candidate to his office and opening some of his books, Randolph said, "Behold the force of natural reason! You have never seen these books before nor this principle of law; yet you are right and I am wrong. . . . Mr. Henry, if your industry be only half equal to your genius, I augur that you will do well and become an ornament and an honor to your profession."

Henry returned to his father-in-law's tavern to establish a practice. In spite of stories to the contrary, it seems tolerably certain that clients soon began to come to him, and that he mended the deficiencies in his earlier legal training. At any rate, a chance came to demonstrate whether he could win a hard case. A dispute arose between the clergymen of Virginia and the vestrymen over the payment of the parsons' salaries. The Virginia legislature made a law against the parsons; the king in England annulled the law as unjust, which it probably was. In a case in Louisa County, when the court had decided in favor of the parsons and left the jury to determine the amount of the payment, Henry was called in to represent the vestrymen. So persuasive was his speech that the jury quietly brought in a verdict of only one penny for the clergymen. It is well to note here that while Henry was perhaps in this case opposed to absolute justice, he was nevertheless on the side which stood for Virginia's right to regulate her own affairs without the interference of the king. In fact, he maintained this so stubbornly that some called out "Treason!"

This celebrated case brought its quick reward in popularity, and early in 1765 Henry's gaunt figure appeared in the House of Burgesses at the colonial capital, as the member from Louisa County. It was soon seen that he was



*A. Henry*





a man of remarkable power. He struck hard blows, and he used every available weapon in behalf of the cause he favored, but he bore no malice toward his opponents. When he had had less than a month of legislative experience, the great question of the Stamp Act came before the house. Great Britain had decided to test the question of taxing America. What should America do about it? The old leaders hesitated; but young Henry stepped forward and proposed in seven resolutions that the British Parliament be told distinctly that Virginia was to be taxed by no one but Virginia's own representatives. Timid men trembled. Cautious men drew back. The cry of "Treason!" was raised. "If this be treason, make the most of it," retorted Henry; and in spite of stubborn opposition, threats, and abuse, the resolutions were passed. Whether this was the first step in the American Revolution is immaterial. All the American colonies were restless and uneasy, and the Virginia resolutions were, as General Gage wrote, "the signal for a general outcry."

Before the resolutions were finally passed the instigator of all this trouble was quietly journeying home, but he came back to Williamsburg again and again in the next few years. He was in the House of Burgesses; he served on committees of correspondence and attended conventions; and finally he was sent to the first Continental Congress at Philadelphia in 1774. On his way thither, with Edmund Pendleton, another delegate, he stayed a night at Mt. Vernon. They found Mrs. Washington as much of a patriot as her husband. "I hope you will all stand firm," she said, "I know George will." On arriving in Philadelphia, the three delegates created an excellent impression. "These gentlemen from Virginia appear to be the most spirited and consistent of any," John Adams noted in his diary.

The most notable work of the First Continental Congress was the framing of several great state papers, including an address to the king on the wrongs of America. Henry did

his share of the routine work of the Congress, but his position was an advanced one always. "I go upon the supposition that government is at an end," and "I am inclined to think the present measures lead to war," were some of the ideas he expressed.

From Philadelphia Henry returned to find Virginia restless with the spirit of revolution. In common with the people of other colonies, Virginians were saying to themselves, "If war does come, what shall we do?" Military preparation was necessary, and the Virginia convention, that met in March, 1775, at once began to consider the matter. Henry brought forward resolutions favoring the establishment of a militia and the appointment of a committee to put the colony in a state of defence. In support of this action he urged what every other public man in America had shrunk from urging. He made no qualification, he offered no saving clause; in one instant he flung aside all the hopes of all the petitions sent to England. "We must fight!" he cried, like a voice from heaven. "An appeal to arms, and to the God of Hosts, is all that is left us."

Very soon Patrick Henry had a chance to prove his courage in the field. The royal governor removed the gunpowder belonging to the colony from the storehouse at Williamsburg. Henry mustered his company and in a fortnight arrived within sixteen miles of the capital. Payment for the powder was demanded and received before the company retired.

To the Second Continental Congress Henry went, and he stayed through the session to aid in the necessary work of organizing a government and establishing a national defence. Returning, he was placed in command of the Virginia troops, but as his authority was not upheld by the Virginia committee of safety, he retired to his home, which was soon saddened by the death of his wife. He was next sent to the Virginia Convention, which drafted a constitution for the new commonwealth of Virginia, and Henry exerted

all his influence to prevent the frame of government from assuming an aristocratic tone. He dreaded the domination of a few opulent families, and wanted to see the people rule. Finally the constitution was adopted, and he was at once chosen governor.

During his three years' term as governor, Henry was far from idle. The supervision of affairs at home, the support of the American soldiers in the field, demanded unremitting energy. In the Continental Army Henry had a special interest. Washington was a Virginian and his personal friend, and he gave him most cordial and hearty support. During his governorship he married as his second wife a granddaughter of old Governor Spotswood. When he retired he was elected at once to the House of Delegates, and was a member of that body when it was driven from place to place by Cornwallis's troopers.

After the close of the war Henry served two more years as governor, and then retired to the practice of his profession, just when the question of the adoption of a federal constitution was under consideration. While governor, he supported the plan of strengthening the general government, but as the time of the convention approached, his attitude grew colder, and at last he refused to accept a place on the delegation from Virginia. That convention drew up a constitution never equalled, but Henry was not pleased. The constitution was not popular enough; too many rights were surrendered by the people; there was no specific list of rights reserved. The battle he fought against it was of no doubtful character. During the discussion in Virginia, at the election of delegates to the Virginia convention, during the convention itself, every inch of ground was stubbornly contested. And the vote for ratification was scarcely decided before the battle for amendments was begun, — a battle that was won, though not in the extreme form Henry wished.

This was Patrick Henry's last public service. A few



more years of legal practice, during which he demonstrated that he had acquainted himself with the most complex principles of law, and the career which had opened so inconspicuously and continued so brilliantly was ended. He successively declined a seat in the United States Senate, the position of Secretary of State, the office of Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States, an embassy to France, and a sixth election to the governorship of Virginia. An appeal from Washington, however, to appear once more in the Virginia legislature was heeded. He was at once elected, but died on June 6, 1799, without even taking his seat.

#### EVENTS IN THE LIFE OF PATRICK HENRY.<sup>1</sup>

Born at Studley, Hanover County, Va. . . . .	May 29, 1736
Licensed at Williamsburg, to practice law . . . . .	1760
Argument in the "Parsons' Cause" . . . . .	December 1, 1763
Moved in the House of Burgesses the "Virginia Resolves," which denied the right of Great Britain to tax Virginia,	May 29, 1765
A member of the first Virginia revolutionary convention,	August, 1774
A member of the First Continental Congress . . . . .	September, 1774
Moved in the second Virginia revolutionary convention for the arming of the colony . . . . .	March 23, 1775
A member of the Second Continental Congress	May to August, 1775
Commander-in-chief of Virginia troops, August 5, 1775–February 28, 1776	August 5, 1775–February 28, 1776
A member of the third Virginia revolutionary convention, that framed the Virginia constitution . . . . .	May and June, 1776
Governor of Virginia . . . . .	June 29, 1776–June 2, 1779
A member of the Virginia Legislature	May, 1780–November, 1784
Governor of Virginia. . . . .	November 30, 1784–November 30, 1786
Opposed the Federal Constitution in the Virginia Convention, June 2–25, 1788	June 2–25, 1788
Died at Red Hill, Charlotte Co., Va. . . . .	June 6, 1799

<sup>1</sup> Dates are from Prof. M. C. Tyler's *Patrick Henry*.

## SPEECH OF MARCH 23, 1775.

DELIVERED IN THE SECOND VIRGINIA CONVENTION IN SUPPORT OF RESOLUTIONS REQUIRING THAT THE COLONY BE PLACED IN A STATE OF DEFENCE.

### DESCRIPTIVE INTRODUCTION.

WHEN the second revolutionary convention of Virginia assembled at Richmond, the 20th of March, 1775, it was evident that, unless Great Britain took immediate steps to conciliate the American colonies, war was inevitable. A number of the colonies had already taken steps toward raising troops. Some of the counties in Virginia had done this also, but as yet Virginia had taken no general action. In fact, the public men were not ready to admit that the chance for reconciliation had entirely passed. Three days after the meeting of the convention Patrick Henry offered three resolutions calling for the establishment of a militia and for the appointment of a committee to put the colony in a state of defence. During the debate which occurred on these resolutions he made the speech which follows. This speech was the definite announcement that the time for conference had passed, and war had actually begun.

As a specimen of oratory it was recognized at once as remarkable. There has come down a very interesting account of the speech, related by an eye-witness. The narrator says of the orator:—

“Voice, countenance, and gestures gave an irresistible force to his words, which no description could make intelligible to one who had never seen him nor heard him speak.

. . . You remember, sir, the conclusion of the speech, so often declaimed in various ways by schoolboys: 'Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty, or give me death!' He gave each of these words a meaning which is not conveyed by the reading or delivery of them in the ordinary way. When he said, 'Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery?' he stood in the attitude of a condemned galley slave, loaded with fetters, awaiting his doom. His form was bowed; his wrists were crossed, his manacles were almost visible as he stood like an embodiment of helplessness and agony. After a solemn pause, he raised his eyes and chained hands towards heaven, and prayed, in words and tones which thrilled every heart, 'Forbid it, Almighty God!' He then turned toward the timid loyalists of the house, who were quaking with terror at the idea of the consequences of participating in proceedings which would be visited with the penalties of treason by the British crown; and he slowly bent his form yet nearer to the earth, and said, 'I know not what course others may take,' and he accompanied the words with his hands still crossed, while he seemed to be weighed down with additional chains. The man appeared transformed into an oppressed, heart-broken, and hopeless felon. After remaining in this posture of humiliation long enough to impress the imagination with the condition of the colony under the iron heel of military despotism, he arose proudly, and exclaimed, 'but as for me,' — and the words hissed through his clenched teeth, while his body was thrown back, and every muscle and tendon was strained against the fetters which bound him, and, with his countenance distorted by agony and rage, he looked for a moment like Laocoön in a death struggle with coiling serpents; then the loud, clear, triumphant notes, 'give me liberty,' electrified the assembly. It was not a prayer, but

a stern demand, which would submit to no refusal or delay. . . . Each syllable of the word 'liberty' echoed through the building,—his fetters were shivered; his arms were hurled apart; and the links of his chains were scattered to the winds. When he spoke the word 'liberty' with an emphasis never given it before, his hands were open, and his arms elevated and extended; his countenance was radiant; he stood erect and defiant; while the sound of his voice and the sublimity of his attitude made him appear a magnificent incarnation of Freedom, and expressed all that can be acquired or enjoyed by nations and individuals invincible and free. After a momentary pause, only long enough to permit the echo of the word 'liberty' to cease, he let his left hand fall powerless to his side, and clenched his right hand firmly, as if holding a dagger with the point aimed at his breast. He stood like a Roman senator defying Cæsar, while the unconquerable spirit of Cato of Utica flashed from every feature; and he closed the grand appeal with the solemn words, 'or give me death!' which sounded with the awful cadence of a hero's dirge, fearless of death, and victorious in death; and he suited the action to the word by a blow upon the left breast with the right hand, which seemed to drive the dagger to the patriot's heart."

The immediate results of this speech were that in spite of strong opposition the resolutions were carried and a committee of which Henry himself was chairman was appointed to put the colony in a state of defence. The version of the speech here used is taken from Wirt's *Life of Patrick Henry*, and was gathered originally from the recollections of the hearers.

MR. PRESIDENT: It is natural to man to indulge in the illusions of hope. We are apt to shut our eyes against a painful truth—and listen to the song of that siren, till she transforms us into beasts. Is this the part of wise men, engaged in a great and arduous



struggle for liberty? Are we disposed to be of the number of those who having eyes, see not, and having ears, hear not, the things which so nearly concern their temporal salvation? For my part, whatever anguish of spirit it may cost, I am willing to know the whole truth; to know the worst, and to provide for it.

I have but one lamp by which my feet are guided; and that is the lamp of experience. I know of no way of judging of the future but by the past. And judging by the past, I wish to know what there has been in the conduct of the British ministry for the last ten years, to justify those hopes with which gentlemen have been pleased to solace themselves and the house? Is it that insidious smile with which our petition has been lately received? Trust it not, sir; it will prove a snare to your feet. Suffer not yourselves to be betrayed with a kiss. Ask yourselves how this gracious reception of our petition comports with those warlike preparations which cover our waters and darken our land. Are fleets and armies necessary to a work of love and reconciliation? Have we shown ourselves so unwilling to be reconciled that force must be called in to win back our love? Let us not deceive ourselves, sir. These are the implements of war and subjugation, — the last arguments to which kings resort. I ask gentlemen, sir, what means this martial array, if its purpose be not to force us to submission? Can gentlemen assign any other possible motive for it? Has Great Britain any enemy in this quarter of the world, to call for all this accumulation of navies and armies? No, sir, she has none. They are meant for us: they can be meant for no other. They are sent over to bind and rivet upon us those chains which the British ministry have been so long forging. And

what have we to oppose to them? Shall we try argument? Sir, we have been trying that for the last ten years. Have we anything new to offer upon the subject? Nothing. We have held the subject up in every light of which it is capable; but it has been all in vain. Shall we resort to entreaty and humble supplication? What terms shall we find which have not been already exhausted? Let us not, I beseech you, sir, deceive ourselves longer.

Sir, we have done everything that could be done to avert the storm which is now coming on. We have petitioned—we have remonstrated—we have supplicated—we have prostrated ourselves before the throne, and have implored its interposition to arrest the tyrannical hands of the ministry and parliament. Our petitions have been slighted; our remonstrances have produced additional violence and insult; our supplications have been disregarded; and we have been spurned, with contempt, from the foot of the throne. In vain, after these things, may we indulge the fond hope of peace and reconciliation. There is no longer any room for hope. If we wish to be free—if we mean to preserve inviolate these inestimable privileges for which we have been so long contending—if we mean not basely to abandon the noble struggle in which we have been so long engaged, and which we have pledged ourselves never to abandon until the glorious object of our contest shall be obtained—we must fight!—I repeat it, sir, we must fight!! An appeal to arms and to the God of Hosts, is all that is left us!

They tell us, sir, that we are weak—unable to cope with so formidable an adversary. But when shall we be stronger? Will it be the next week or the next

year? Will it be when we are totally disarmed, and when a British guard shall be stationed in every house? Shall we gather strength by irresolution and inaction? Shall we acquire the means of effectual resistance by lying supinely on our backs, and hugging the delusive phantom of hope, until our enemies shall have bound us hand and foot? Sir, we are not weak, if we make a proper use of those means which the God of nature hath placed in our power. Three millions of people, armed in the holy cause of liberty, and in such a country as that which we possess, are invincible by any force which our enemy can send against us. Besides, sir, we shall not fight our battles alone. There is a just God who presides over the destinies of nations; and who will raise up friends to fight our battles for us. The battle, sir, is not to the strong alone; it is to the vigilant, the active, the brave. Besides, sir, we have no election. If we were base enough to desire it, it is now too late to retire from the contest. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery! Our chains are forged. Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston! The war is inevitable—and let it come!! I repeat it, sir, let it come!!!

It is in vain, sir, to extenuate the matter. Gentlemen may cry peace, peace—but there is no peace. The war is actually begun! The next gale that sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms! Our brethren are already in the field! Why stand we here idle? What is it that gentlemen wish? What would they have? Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God!—I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty, or give me death!

## RALPH WALDO EMERSON.

---

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.

RALPH WALDO EMERSON was born in Boston, May 25, 1803. His father, his grandfather, and his great-grandfather were all ministers, and, indeed, on both his father's and mother's side he belongs to a continuous line of ministerial descent from the seventeenth century. At the time of his birth, his father, the Rev. William Emerson, was minister of the First Church congregation, but on his death a few years afterward, Ralph Waldo Emerson, a boy of seven, went to live in the old manse at Concord, where his grandfather had lived when the Concord fight occurred. The old manse was afterward the home at one time of Hawthorne, who wrote there the stories which he gathered into the volume, *Mosses from an Old Manse*.

Emerson was graduated at Harvard in 1821, and after teaching a year or two gave himself to the study of divinity. From 1827 to 1832 he preached in Unitarian churches, and was for four years a colleague pastor in the Second Church in Boston. He then left the ministry and afterward devoted himself to literature. He travelled abroad in 1833, in 1847, and again in 1872, making friends among the leading thinkers during his first journey, and confirming the friendships when again in Europe; with the exception of these three journeys and occasional lecturing tours in the United States, he lived quietly at Concord until his death, April 27, 1882.

He had delivered several special addresses, and in his early manhood was an important lecturer in the Lyceum



courses which were so popular, especially in New England, forty years ago, but his first published book was *Nature*, in 1839. Subsequent prose writings were his *Essays*, under that title, and in several volumes with specific titles, *Representative Men*, and *English Traits*. In form the prose is either the oration or the essay, with one exception. *English Traits* records the observations of the writer after his first two journeys to England; and while it may loosely be classed among essays, it has certain distinctive features which separate it from the essays of the same writer; there is in it narrative, reminiscence, and description, which make it more properly the note-book of a philosophic traveller.

It may be said of his essays as well as of his deliberate orations that the writer never was wholly unmindful of an audience; he was conscious always that he was not merely delivering his mind, but speaking directly to men. One is aware of a certain pointedness of speech which turns the writer into a speaker, and the printed words into a sounding voice.

He wrote poems when in college, but his first publication of verse was through *The Dial*, a magazine established in 1840, and the representative of a knot of men and women of whom Emerson was the acknowledged or unacknowledged leader. The first volume of his poems was published in 1847, and included those by which he is best known, as *The Problem*, *The Sphinx*, *The Rhodora*, *The Humble Bee*, *Hymn Sung at the Completion of the Concord Monument*. After the establishment of the *Atlantic Monthly* in 1857, he contributed to it both prose and poetry, and verses published in the early numbers, mere enigmas to some, profound revelations to others, were fruitful of discussion and thought; his second volume of poems, *May Day and other Pieces*, was not issued until 1867. Since then a volume of his collected poetry has appeared, containing most of those published in the two volumes, and a few in addition. We are told, however, that the published writings of



*R. Waldo Emerson*



Emerson bear but small proportion to the unpublished. Many lectures have been delivered, but not printed; many poems written, and a few read, which have never been published. The inference from this, borne out by the marks upon what has been published, is that Mr. Emerson set a high value upon literature, and was jealous of the prerogative of the poet. He is frequently called a seer, and this old word, indicating etymologically its original intention, is applied well to a poet who saw into nature and human life with a spiritual power which made him a marked man in his own time, and one destined to an unrivalled place in literature. He fulfilled Wordsworth's lines : —

“With an eye made quiet by the power  
Of harmony, and the deep power of joy,  
We see into the life of things.”



## CONCORD HYMN:

SUNG AT THE COMPLETION OF THE BATTLE MONUMENT,  
JULY 4, 1837.

BY the rude bridge that arched the flood,  
Their flag to April's breeze unfurled,  
Here once the embattled farmers stood,  
And fired the shot heard round the world.

The foe long since in silence slept ; 5  
Alike the conqueror silent sleeps ;  
And Time the ruined bridge has swept  
Down the dark stream which seaward creeps.

On this green bank, by this soft stream,  
We set to-day a votive stone ; 10  
That memory may their deed redeem,  
When, like our sires, our sons are gone.

Spirit, that made those heroes dare  
To die, and leave their children free,  
Bid Time and Nature gently spare 15  
The shaft we raise to them and thee.

3. Does this shaft mark the spot where the farmers stood, or where the British fell? Read Emerson's brief *Address at the Hundredth Anniversary of the Concord Fight, April 19, 1875*, the last piece written out with his own hand. (Cooke, 182.) See Appendix, p. 83. What does the most familiar line in the

## THE SNOW-STORM.

ANNOUNCED by all the trumpets of the sky,  
 Arrives the snow, and, driving o'er the fields,  
 Seems nowhere to alight: the whited air  
 Hides hills and woods, the river, and the heaven,  
 And veils the farm-house at the garden's end. 5  
 The sled and traveller stopped, the courier's feet  
 Delayed, all friends shut out, the housemates sit  
 Around the radiant fireplace, enclosed  
 In a tumultuous privacy of storm.

Come see the north wind's masonry. 10  
 Out of an unseen quarry evermore  
 Furnished with tile, the fierce artificer  
 Curves his white bastions with projected roof  
 Round every windward stake, or tree, or door.  
 Speeding, the myriad-handed, his wild work 15  
 So fanciful, so savage, nought cares he  
 For number or proportion. Mockingly,  
 On coop or kennel he hangs Parian wreaths;  
 A swan-like form invests the hidden thorn;  
 Fills up the farmer's lane from wall to wall, 20

poem really mean? Compare with it this sentence from the Address: "The thunderbolt falls on an inch of ground, but the light of it fills the horizon,"—a thought to which Emerson had previously given a poetic expression that now may well be applied to the author of this perfect poem, "a model for all of its kind" (*O. W. H.*, 332):—

"His instant thought a poet spoke,  
 And filled the age his fame;  
 An inch of ground the lightning strook,  
 But lit the sky with flame." ix, 277.

1. What conspicuous change in metre do you observe?
18. Cf. Parian marble, — why so called?

Maugre the farmer's sighs ; and at the gate  
 A tapering turret overtops the work.  
 And when his hours are numbered, and the world  
 Is all his own, retiring, as he were not,  
 Leaves; when the sun appears, astonished Art      25  
 To mimic in slow structures, stone by stone,  
 Built in an age, the mad wind's night-work,  
 The frolic architecture of the snow.

### THE RHODORA :\*

ON BEING ASKED, WHENCE IS THE FLOWER?

IN May, when sea-winds pierced our solitudes,  
 I found the fresh Rhodora in the woods,  
 Spreading its leafless blooms in a damp nook,  
 To please the desert and the sluggish brook.  
 The purple petals, fallen in the pool,  
 Made the black water with their beauty gay ;  
 Here might the red-bird come his plumes to cool,  
 And court the flower that cheapens his array.

Rhodora ! if the sages ask thee why  
 This charm is wasted on the earth and sky,      10

21. Why not "despite," or some other English word ? See *Friendship*, ii, 183.

28. Cf. *May-Day*, 47 ff., p. 24. Select the phrases or epithets that seem to you to contribute most to the accuracy, picturesqueness, or simplicity of this description.

\* In sending this poem to his friend, James Freeman Clarke (for publication), Emerson wrote February 27, 1839 : " You are quite welcome to the lines ' To the Rhodora,' but I think they need the superscription." Why ?

Tell them, dear, that if eyes were made for seeing,  
Then Beauty is its own excuse for being :  
Why thou wert there, O rival of the rose !  
I never thought to ask, I never knew :  
But, in my simple ignorance, suppose 15  
The self-same Power that brought me there brought  
you.

12. "The ancient Greeks called the world *cosmos*, beauty. Such is the constitution of all things, or such the plastic power of the human eye, that the primary forms, as the sky, the mountain, the tree, the animal, give us delight *in and for themselves*." *Nature*, i, 21. Read the whole of this chapter iii, on Beauty.

"Beauty cannot be defined. Like Truth, it is an ultimate aim of the human being. It does not lie within the limits of the understanding. . . . Beauty may be felt. It may be produced. But it cannot be defined." *Michael Angelo*, xii, 117.

"A beauty not explicable is dearer than a beauty which we can see the end of." *The Poet*, iii, 21.



## ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

---

WE meet under the gloom of a calamity which darkens down over the minds of good men in all civil society, as the fearful tidings travel over sea, over land, from country to country, like the shadow of an uncalculated eclipse over the planet. Old as history is, and manifold as are its tragedies, I doubt if any death has caused so much pain to mankind as this has caused, or will cause, on its announcement; and this, not so much because nations are by modern arts brought so closely together, as because of the mysterious hopes and fears which, in the present day, are connected with the name and institutions of America.

In this country, on Saturday, every one was struck dumb, and saw at first only deep below deep, as he meditated on the ghastly blow. And perhaps, at this hour, when the coffin which contains the dust of the President sets forward on its long march through mourning States on its way to his home in Illinois, we might well be silent, and suffer the awful voices of the time to thunder to us. Yes, but that first despair was brief: the man was not so to be mourned. He was the most active and hopeful of men; and his work had not perished: but acclamations of praise for the task he had accomplished burst out into a song of triumph, which even tears for his death cannot keep down.

The President stood before us as a man of the people. He was thoroughly American, had never crossed the sea, had never been spoiled by English insularity or French dissipation; a quite native, aboriginal man, as an acorn from the oak; no aping of foreigners, no frivolous accomplishments, Kentuckian born, working on a farm, a flatboatman, a captain in the Black Hawk war, a country lawyer, a representative in the rural Legislature of Illinois; — on such modest foundations the broad structure of his fame was laid. How slowly, and yet by happily prepared steps, he came to his place. All of us remember — it is only a history of five or six years — the surprise and the disappointment of the country at his first nomination by the Convention at Chicago. Mr. Seward, then in the culmination of his good fame, was the favorite of the Eastern States. And when the new and comparatively unknown name of Lincoln was announced (notwithstanding the report of the acclamations of that Convention), we heard the result coldly and sadly. It seemed too rash, on a purely local reputation, to build so grave a trust in such anxious times; and men naturally talked of the chances in politics as incalculable. But it turned out not to be chance. The profound good opinion which the people of Illinois and of the West had conceived of him, and which they had imparted to their colleagues that they also might justify themselves to their constituents at home, was not rash, though they did not begin to know the riches of his worth.

A plain man of the people, an extraordinary fortune attended him. He offered no shining qualities at the first encounter; he did not offend by superiority. He had a face and manner which disarmed suspicion, which inspired confidence, which confirmed good-will. He

was a man without vices. He had a strong sense of duty, which it was very easy for him to obey. Then, he had what farmers call a long head; was excellent in working out the sum for himself; in arguing his case and convincing you fairly and firmly. Then, it turned out that he was a great worker; had prodigious faculty of performance; worked easily. A good worker is so rare; everybody has some disabling quality. In a host of young men that start together and promise so many brilliant leaders for the next age, each fails on trial; one by bad health, one by conceit, or by love of pleasure, or lethargy, or an ugly temper,—each has some disqualifying fault that throws him out of the career. But this man was sound to the core, cheerful, persistent, all right for labor, and liked nothing so well.

Then, he had a vast good-nature, which made him tolerant and accessible to all; fair-minded, leaning to the claim of the petitioner; affable, and not sensible to the affliction which the innumerable visits paid to him when President would have brought to any one else. And how this good-nature became a noble humanity, in many a tragic case which the events of the war brought to him, every one will remember; and with what increasing tenderness he dealt when a whole race was thrown on his compassion. The poor negro said of him, on an impressive occasion, “Massa Linkum am eberywhere.”

Then his broad good-humor, running easily into jocular talk, in which he delighted and in which he excelled, was a rich gift to this wise man. It enabled him to keep his secret; to meet every kind of man and every rank in society; to take off the edge of the severest decisions; to mask his own purpose and sound his companion; and to catch with true instinct the tem-

per of every company he addressed. And, more than all, it is to a man of severe labor, in anxious and exhausting crises, the natural restorative, good as sleep, and is the protection of the overdriven brain against rancor and insanity.

He is the author of a multitude of good sayings, so disguised as pleasantries that it is certain they had no reputation at first but as jests; and only later, by the very acceptance and adoption they find in the mouths of millions, turn out to be the wisdom of the hour. I am sure if this man had ruled in a period of less facility of printing, he would have become mythological in a very few years, like *Æsop* or *Pilpay*, or one of the *Seven Wise Masters*, by his fables and proverbs. But the weight and penetration of many passages in his letters, messages, and speeches, hidden now by the very closeness of their application to the moment, are destined hereafter to wide fame. What pregnant definitions; what unerring common sense; what foresight; and, on great occasion, what lofty, and more than national, what humane tone! His brief speech at Gettysburg will not easily be surpassed by words on any recorded occasion. This, and one other American speech, that of John Brown to the court that tried him, and a part of Kossuth's speech at Birmingham, can only be compared with each other, and with no fourth.

His occupying the chair of State was a triumph of the good-sense of mankind, and of the public conscience. This middle-class country had got a middle-class President, at last. Yes, in manners and sympathies, but not in powers, for his powers were superior. This man grew according to the need. His mind mastered the problem of the day; and, as the problem grew, so did his comprehension of it. Rarely was man so fitted



to the event. In the midst of fears and jealousies, in the Babel of counsels and parties, this man wrought incessantly with all his might and all his honesty, laboring to find what the people wanted, and how to obtain that. It cannot be said there is any exaggeration of his worth. If ever a man was fairly tested, he was. There was no lack of resistance, nor of slander, nor of ridicule. The times have allowed no state secrets; the nation has been in such ferment, such multitudes had to be trusted, that no secret could be kept. Every door was ajar, and we know all that befell.

Then, what an occasion was the whirlwind of the war. Here was place for no holiday magistrate, no fair-weather sailor; the new pilot was hurried to the helm in a tornado. In four years,—four years of battle-days,—his endurance, his fertility of resources, his magnanimity, were sorely tried and never found wanting. There, by his courage, his justice, his even temper, his fertile counsel, his humanity, he stood a heroic figure in the centre of a heroic epoch. He is the true history of the American people in his time. Step by step he walked before them; slow with their slowness, quickening his march by theirs, the true representative of this continent; an entirely public man; father of his country, the pulse of twenty millions throbbing in his heart, the thought of their minds articulated by his tongue.

Adam Smith remarks that the axe, which in Houbraken's portraits of British kings and worthies is engraved under those who have suffered at the block, adds a certain lofty charm to the picture. And who does not see, even in this tragedy so recent, how fast the terror and ruin of the massacre are already burn-

ing into glory around the victim? Far happier this fate than to have lived to be wished away; to have watched the decay of his own faculties; to have seen — perhaps even he — the proverbial ingratitude of statesmen; to have seen mean men preferred. Had he not lived long enough to keep the greatest promise that ever man made to his fellow-men, — the practical abolition of slavery? He had seen Tennessee, Missouri, and Maryland emancipate their slaves. He had seen Savannah, Charleston, and Richmond surrendered; had seen the main army of the rebellion lay down its arms. He had conquered the public opinion of Canada, England, and France. Only Washington can compare with him in fortune.

And what if it should turn out, in the unfolding of the web, that he had reached the term; that this heroic deliverer could no longer serve us; that the rebellion had touched its natural conclusion, and what remained to be done required new and uncommitted hands, — a new spirit born out of the ashes of the war; and that Heaven, wishing to show the world a completed benefactor, shall make him serve his country even more by his death than by his life? Nations, like kings, are not good by facility and complaisance. "The kindness of kings consists in justice and strength." Easy good-nature has been the dangerous foible of the Republic, and it was necessary that its enemies should outrage it, and drive us to unwonted firmness, to secure the salvation of this country in the next ages.

The ancients believed in a serene and beautiful Genius which ruled in the affairs of nations; which, with a slow but stern justice, carried forward the fortunes of certain chosen houses, weeding out single offenders or offending families, and securing at last the

firm prosperity of the favorites of Heaven. It was too narrow a view of the Eternal Nemesis. There is a serene Providence which rules the fate of nations, which makes little account of time, little of one generation or race, makes no account of disasters, conquers alike by what is called defeat or by what is called victory, thrusts aside enemy and obstruction, crushes everything immoral as inhuman, and obtains the ultimate triumph of the best race by the sacrifice of everything which resists the moral laws of the world. It makes its own instruments, creates the man for the time, trains him in poverty, inspires his genius, and arms him for his task. It has given every race its own talent, and ordains that only that race which combines perfectly with the virtues of all shall endure.

## SUGGESTIONS FOR STUDY

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF IRVING

1. Describe the difference between the America of Franklin's day and that of Irving's.
2. Had literature in America begun to assume a national character when Irving began to write?
3. What did Irving's first literary ventures attempt to represent?
4. By what work did he first gain literary reputation?
5. Why was Irving so strongly English in his sympathies and tastes?
6. Describe the results of his seventeen years' residence in England.
7. What was Irving's special literary gift, and what were his limitations?
8. What did Irving produce during his residence in America from 1832 to 1842?
9. What were the fruits of the final period of Irving's literary production?

### RIP VAN WINKLE

That Irving had any deep ethical purpose in writing this story is not certain. Some commen- **Purpose.**  
tators read a lesson of the immortality of the soul into this tale of a man awakening after a sleep of twenty years' duration. What is certain, however, is that Irving's imagination seized upon the old German legend of Peter Klaus (mentioned in the introduction, page 5) because of its supremely interesting mingling of the human with the supernatural element, and because of its rich dramatic possibilities. With unerring taste and judgment he transferred it to an American setting, and adapted it to an old Dutch legend con-



cerning the periodic return to the Kaatskills of Hendrick Hudson and his Crew.

**Method.** The story comes to us, therefore, a delightful and finished specimen of the short story of the simple narrative and descriptive type, and it appeals with enduring force to the element of curiosity in every one's nature.

Aside from its theme, its chief claims to literary excellence are its simplicity of structure, its mellow humor, easy grace of style, shrewd touches of characterization, and, above all, the figure it presents of Rip himself — the incorrigible yet lovable and sympathetic village ne'er-do-well.

**Remarks.** The story does not require elaborate analysis, but in reading it, the student should be especially alert to the qualities mentioned above. Note, also, the added interest which Irving gives his story in marking the change from the old colonial régime to the time when the United States had become an independent nation. Finally, note this significant fact: Although Irving did not invent the main plot of Rip Van Winkle, yet he was the means of making it immortal.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

What other and greater author than Irving has achieved the same result, in even higher degree, with borrowed material?

What great general truth regarding literary production does this confirm?

For what reason did Irving humorously attribute the authorship of Rip Van Winkle to Diedrich Knickerbocker?

#### THE LEGEND OF SLEEPY HOLLOW

**Purpose.** Irving's purpose, in writing this story, was plainly a humorous one. He deftly uses his tale as a vehicle for satirizing good-naturedly the superstitious beliefs of the old Dutch settlers of New York State, although it cannot be asserted that this was his principal motive in writing it. His subordinate purpose may well have been,

however, to deal a vigorous blow at greed, conceit, and superstition, as he had observed it in human nature.

(a) Irving selects, in the person of his hero, Ichabod Crane, a grotesque figure, whose physical and mental peculiarities he draws with broad and incisive humor, and whose adventures he relates in mock-heroic style. (b) Ichabod's greed, gluttony, and ambitious scheming for a wealthy wife are in equal proportion to his intense superstition, and all receive at last their rightful punishment.

The story is unfolded in a series of pictures that could hardly be surpassed for humorous and graphic power: The drowsy, spell-bound atmosphere of Sleepy Hollow; Ichabod himself, one of the enduring creations of humorous literature; the inimitable pictures of old Dutch village life, customs and superstitions, of Ichabod's besetting sin, gluttony, and of the farm and mansion of a typical wealthy Dutch farmer; the burly, roystering blade, Brom Bones; the ludicrous figures of Ichabod and his horse going forth to the quilting-bee; the warm, mellow description of a golden, autumn day by the Hudson; the quilting-bee and its culinary glories; Ichabod's dismal start for home, after being rejected by the lady of his choice; his superstitious terrors; his pursuit by the Headless Horseman, and the thrilling climax in which the Horseman throws his head at Ichabod.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

To indicate the verbal brilliancies of "The Legend of Sleepy Hollow" would necessitate its quoting almost word for word. In reading it, note especially the familiarity with nature shown by the author, and the abundance and aptness of his imagery.

Note, also, that Irving achieves some of his finest effects by the use of irony.

One of his cleverest devices is to convey information, not by assertion, but by ironic suggestion:

As (a) when he suggests (does not assert) that Brom Bones had impersonated the Headless Horseman: (b) when he merely suggests that Katrina had rejected Ichabod.

Give other examples of this use of suggestion in the story.

Give five examples of felicitous description of nature.

Give five examples of exaggeration for humorous effect (as "hands that dangled a mile out of his sleeves").

Give five examples of effective imagery.

### LINCOLN'S GETTYSBURG SPEECH

Short as it is, the Gettysburg Speech will repay careful and repeated readings. It is a masterpiece of English, and a marvel of condensed eloquence.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

What is the spirit that most impresses you in the Gettysburg Speech?

What idea of Lincoln's character does it give you?

How would you characterize its language — as in any way rhetorical, involved, or pompous?

In what does the literary merit of its style and structure consist?

What impression of Lincoln's education does it convey?

Is it such a speech as we would ordinarily expect from a man of so little formal schooling as Lincoln?

How does its eloquence compare with the eloquence of longer and more pretentious speeches?

Notice how effectively Lincoln uses antithesis and parallel. Specify the instances of such use.

Notice, also, how unexpected and noble a turn he gives to the purpose of the "dedication."

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF HAWTHORNE

1. What was Hawthorne's habit with respect to keeping note-books?

2. What facts concerning the author did these note-books reveal and what did their disclosures conceal?

3. Did Hawthorne reveal his personality to any extent in his works of fiction?

4. Name the leading tendencies and traits of Hawthorne's literary work.

5. What class of subjects had for him a peculiar interest, and why?

6. What is the crowning charm of his stories?

7. Name his chief works.

8. Give the dates of his birth and death.

### THE GREAT STONE FACE

Obviously, the story is intended to show: (a) The power of a fixed ideal in moulding character to greatness; (b) That true divinity may exist all unsuspected in the lowliest individual; (c) The stupidity and blindness of the world's judgments. Purpose.

The author has adopted a most appropriate symbolism for his artistic mould. (a) The Great Stone Face is the symbol of Divinity watching over the ideals of men; (b) In its direct effect on Ernest, it is the symbol of the fixed ideal operating on individual life and character; (c) In the rich man, the soldier, and the statesman, we find typified in turn the world's ideals of true greatness; it is only Ernest, the true-hearted man, who perceives their falseness; (d) In the poet of lofty verse, we recognize a nearer approach to the ideal, and one in whom a great and pure soul like Ernest might ardently hope to find it at last; (e) In Ernest himself, humble and unsuspecting of his own worth, we find the real ideal of the divine in man which the author has in mind; (f) The poet, in whose poems is "a strain of the Divinity," might actually have realized this Divinity in himself, if he had not chosen to live among "poor and mean realities"; (g) But, as showing the mission of the poet, it is his poetic insight that first reveals to the Method.



little village the likeness of Ernest to the Great Stone Face.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

In what way is the symbolism of the story extended to the names of the characters, thus heightening the artistic effect of the whole?

What may be the significance (aside from its being typical of the world's blindness) of making Ernest an old man when his likeness to the Face is first discovered?

What traits peculiar to Hawthorne's work, which are mentioned in the Biographical Sketch, do you find in this story?

Did Hawthorne invent the natural phenomenon which he calls The Great Stone Face? If not, where is it?

#### MY VISIT TO NIAGARA

**Purpose.** To show (a) How often the majesty of nature is veiled from us because we approach it in a petty human spirit. (b) The proper way of approaching nature.

**Method.** Hawthorne selects Niagara as a typical instance of nature's greatness, and describes its effect upon himself. He suggests that to appreciate Niagara, as a prototype of all nature, we should try to think its own thought; realize its place in geologic history; consider of what great Force it is a manifestation — in other words, we should *interpret* it. Above all, we should make our *own* interpretation, and be not like the mentally and spiritually poor American in the book, who "labored earnestly to adjust Niagara to the captain's description, departing, at last, without one new idea or sensation of his own."

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

Was Hawthorne's strange apathy when about to view Niagara, after years of anticipation, typical of human nature?

Why was he disappointed in his first sight of it?

How did Hawthorne show his innate superiority over many other disappointed observers?

How did he finally come to know that "Niagara is indeed a wonder of the world"?

Quote the sentence in which Hawthorne states explicitly in what mood the "beholder must stand beside it."

Specify some particularly telling passages in which Hawthorne impresses upon us the sublimity of Niagara.

#### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF WHITTIER

1. Describe Whittier's life from his birth to 1829.

2. What effect did his early life have upon the spirit and the subject matter of his poetry?

3. What has Whittier's legendary poetry done for New England?

4. Why did Whittier's attitude in his poetry toward the Puritans show an unusually generous mind?

5. What great cause inspired some of his most eloquent poetry?

6. How did he show in his poems the catholicity of his spirit?

7. Name some of his more famous poems, and specify their character or origin.

#### SNOW-BOUND

To present (a) A picture of New England family life, as lived in the country; (b) A lesson of the beauty of homely work and family affection, and of faith in immortality. Purpose.

Whittier chooses as his material the home life he knew best — his own. (a) The winter snow which has cut off the family from the world is really a blessing; it brings them closer together, and develops all the resources and all the solid joys of domestic life. When finally "the chill embargo of the snow is melted, and all the world Method.

is theirs once more," they return refreshed and strengthened by their temporary seclusion, and with a new joy of possession in that outer world. (b) The wood-fire, whose cheery warmth and light is the *heart* of this winter idyl, is the symbol of that abiding faith, hope, and charity which permeate the poem.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

What feeling of the poet toward nature does *Snow-Bound* reveal, and what of his imaginative power?

Note these evidences of Whittier's trust in immortality: —

- (a) "Yet Love will dream and Faith will trust  
(Since He who knows our need is just)  
That somehow, somewhere, meet we must." (lines 200-202.)
- (b) "Alas for him who never sees  
The stars shine through his cypress-trees!" (lines 203-204.)  
(Why does Whittier say "cypress-trees"?)
- (c) "Life is ever lord of Death." (l. 210.)

Explain the meaning of the following passages: —

- (a) "Safe in thy immortality,  
What change can reach the wealth I hold?" (lines 424-425.)
- (b) "But He who knows our frame is just,  
Merciful and compassionate,  
And full of sweet assurances  
And hope for all the language is,  
That He remembereth we are dust!" (lines 585-589.)
- (c) "The tangled skein of will and fate." (l. 580.)
- (d) "Upon the soul's debatable land." (l. 582.)
- (e) "The benediction of the air." (l. 759.)

#### THE SHIP-BUILDERS

**Purpose.** The poem is a symbol of character building. Whittier sees in the building of the ship the universal building of character.

**Method.** He shows us the method of ship-construction, and the forces contributing to it, also the materials and the builders.

The lesson is that environment contributes materials for

the purposes of character building. Out of these the builder is to construct so strong and so well that "nor faithless joint nor yawning seam shall tempt the searching sea."

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

Fit, in detail, to the idea of character building the symbolism of each stanza.

What is the spiritual significance of the last lines of the poem: —

"And glad hearts welcome back again  
Her white sails from the sea!"

#### THE WORSHIP OF NATURE

To teach reverence for nature and appreciation of her harmony and beauty. The lesson of her steadfastness as opposed to man's fickleness. Purpose.

In a series of beautiful images Whittier reflects nature's constant and prayerful attitude,— Method.  
a rebuke to "the prayerless heart of man."

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

Note the beauty of the following passages and explain their meaning: —

- (a) "Its waves are kneeling on the strand."
- (b) "Their white locks bowing to the sand."
- (c) "The priesthood of the sea."
- (d) "Their gifts of pearl they bring."

Give other examples of effective imagery and explain their meaning.

#### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF LOWELL

1. What was the character of Lowell's ancestry and family connections?
2. What was the twofold nature of his literary gift?
3. In what way may his critical instincts have affected his poetic power?



4. In what other branch of literature besides poetry did he show his ability?

5. Name some of his prose works and addresses, and some of his poems.

6. What spirit do we find in all of Lowell's work which makes it notable aside from its literary quality?

7. In what other way besides literature did Lowell achieve prominence?

8. What opinion have you formed of Lowell's character as a man?

### THE VISION OF SIR LAUNFAL

**Purpose.** The immediate inspiration of the poem was Lowell's deep and passionate anti-slavery feeling and conviction. But there are several great general truths that Lowell wished to express: —

(a) Man's kinship with God is in proportion to his charity for his neighbor;

(b) Man's worth is gauged, not by brilliant achievements, but by faithful performance of the duty that lies nearest; by simple, unostentatious service to humanity — to the beggar that knocks at his door;

(c) True charity consists not in perfunctory almsgiving, but in compassion and sympathy — the giving of the *heart*.

**Method.** (Read carefully the Author's Note regarding the legendary sources of the poem.)

The story of Sir Launfal may be regarded as a parable of double meaning:

(1) Of that holy crusade which Lowell conceived the anti-slavery cause to be;

(2) Of humanity in general seeking for the Holy Grail of life (that is, searching for the highest good). The latter interpretation is the one we shall consider in this outline. The knight going forth in search of the Grail finds it, not in distant lands, but at the very door of his own castle, when he shares his crust with the leper.

The main theme of the poem is expressed in the narrative of Sir Launfal's dream, and its consequences. This whole story is introduced by means of another narrative (that of the musing organist building "a bridge from Dreamland for his lay") so slight that it slips away from the reader completely as he goes on. The organist is conceived by the poet as *improvising* the story of the poem; he approaches his theme gradually, by means of a prelude or introduction, which foreshadows and reflects it.

The prelude may be regarded as an abstract treatment, — a generalization, of the concrete incidents of the story that follows. The spiritual mood of the opening stanzas of the prelude expresses the noble discontent of the poet with the sluggish soul of humanity. Note how he spurs and pricks our cowardice in these phrases — "souls that cringe and plot"; "fallen and traitor lives"; "faint hearts"; "our age's drowsy blood"; how, too, he shows nature and God striving with our weaknesses, and how, in spite of ourselves, "we Sinais climb and know it not." The poet, in his lofty indignation, conceives that this sordid, bartering humanity values and desires everything but heaven and God, because, forsooth,

"'T is only heaven that is given away,  
'T is only God may be had for the asking."

In showing us what we may possess for nothing, the poet passes to a description of June, the season of beauty, of youth, of happiness, and of "upward striving."

"'T is as easy now for the heart to be true  
As for grass to be green or skies to be blue."

Thus, at length, we accept his suggestion that from the divine influences in nature, and the tender beauty of June, came the impulse to the heart of Sir Launfal to remember the keeping of his vow. "The bridge from dreamland" has led us to the opening of the story. The generalization is dropped, and a concrete example of the great truth the poet has tried to phrase, is substituted. We follow the story of

how nature, and his own heart and many varied experiences spoke to Sir Launfal, albeit in his vision, and compelled him along the upward way, until, after a weary interval, the light shone around him, and he found that unwittingly he had climbed his Sinai and found the Lord.

**Remarks.** Read the poem slowly and carefully, holding in mind its general purpose, and noting the various steps and the skilful artistry by which the poet fulfils his design. Note the beauty of the description of June, and try to extract its deeper meanings. Notice the correspondences in thought between various portions of the poem. For instance, in Part Second, what do you find that corresponds to and illustrates exactly the line in the Prelude to Part First, "We Sinais climb and know it not"? Be on the alert for those parallels in mood and incidents between various portions which help to reinforce the poem as a work of art. For instance, compare the incident of the leper in Part Second with the former one.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

Of what is the castle the symbol?

Under what conditions did Sir Launfal set out in search of his quest? Setting out with all the promise of youth in search of the Holy Grail, and returning old and frail with the badge of "the suffering and the poor," what does Sir Launfal symbolize?

Who was the leper? How treated by Sir Launfal in each case — account for the difference.

What was the effect of the dream on Sir Launfal, and what was its result in his life?

Explain the meaning of the following: —

"Faint auroral flushes." (l. 7.)

"We Sinais climb and know it not." (l. 12.)

"With our faint hearts the mountain strives." (l. 16.)

" . . . the druid wood

Waits with its benedicite." (lines 17-18.)

"Each ounce of dross costs its ounce of gold." (l. 26.)

- "Heaven tries the earth if it be in tune." (l. 35.)  
 "For a god goes with it." (l. 172.)  
 "Himself the Gate whereby men can  
 Enter the temple of God in Man." (lines 308-309.)  
 "Who gives himself with his alms feeds three." (l. 326.)  
 "He must be fenced with stronger mail." (l. 332.)  
 "The Summer's long siege at last is o'er." (l. 338.)

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF BRYANT

1. Give the dates of Bryant's birth and death, and the facts of his early life and education.
2. How old was Bryant when two of his finest poems were published, and what does this prove regarding his poetic genius?
3. What position in American literature did Bryant rapidly win?
4. Why, however, did he find it impossible to live by literature alone?
5. How did Bryant throughout his life-work show his possession of lofty ideals?
6. What spiritual debt did Bryant owe to Wordsworth?
7. What great work of translation did Bryant accomplish, and with what success?

### THANATOPSIS

To teach that the lesson of life may be learned by a right view of death. (a) There is unity in all nature, and every soul and body is an integral part of the universe. (b) Rightly viewed, death is not terrible; but the fulfilment of God's purpose. (c) We may so live as to meet death not with fear and aversion, but with "an unfaltering trust."

Purpose.

Bryant draws a vivid picture of the cosmic world as a manifestation of God's thought, and shows that nature teaches a great lesson regarding the majesty and fitness of death.

Method.

- (a) The *individual destiny*:—Though the individual



must die, he does not perish: he is received back into nature's bosom, to become a part of the great universe. (b) The *universal destiny*: — "All that tread the globe are but a handful to the tribes that slumber in its bosom." Death being the *universal destiny*, the individual should not fear it. He will be in the noble company of the dead of all ages; and those he leaves behind will follow him; all nature is the "great tomb of man," — "nor couldst thou wish couch more magnificent." (c) The call to right living is found in the final stanza beginning, "so live."

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

Note the rhythm and beauty of expression throughout the poem.

Study carefully the following passages, and explain their meaning: —

- (a) "She has a voice of gladness, and a smile  
And eloquence of beauty, and she glides  
Into his darker musings, with a mild  
And healing sympathy, that steals away  
Their sharpness, ere he is aware."
- (b) "To mix forever with the elements,  
To be a brother to the insensible rock  
And to the sluggish clod . . ."
- (c) " . . . The oak  
Shall send his roots abroad, and pierce thy mould."

Explain the following: —

"The wings of morning"; "Barcan wilderness" (locate it); "lose thyself"; "continuous woods"; "where rolls the Oregon" (the Columbia).

Why choose the Columbia River for this illustration?

In the last stanza, explain "innumerable caravan"; "mysterious realm"; "silent halls of death."

#### TO A WATERFOWL

**Purpose.** To show the guidance of human life by divine providence, and the inference of immortality.

**Method.** Bryant sees his own life in that of the waterfowl, "pursuing its solitary way," "lone wander-

ing but not lost." The Power that protects the waterfowl will protect him. In the lines: "And soon that toil shall end," "The abyss of heaven hath swallowed up thy form," and "Will lead my steps aright," the promise of immortality is given.

Notice particularly the beauty of the following phrases and their spiritual significance: "Last steps of day"; "rosy depths"; "chafed ocean-side"; "pathless coast"; "thin atmosphere"; "welcome land"; "abyss of heaven"; "swallowed up"; "boundless sky"; "certain flight"; "long way"; "tread alone."

Remarks.

### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF HOLMES

1. Describe the historic associations amidst which Holmes was born and bred, and their inevitable effect upon his tastes.

2. When did his writing of poetry begin?

3. Describe briefly his career from his abandonment of the law to 1882.

4. For what reasons was Holmes invited to become a regular contributor to the *Atlantic Monthly*?

5. Name his most famous contributions to the magazine.

6. What were his leading traits as a writer?

7. Give the dates of his birth and death.

### GRANDMOTHER'S STORY OF THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL

(a) The author's direct purpose was to make vivid one of the opening conflicts in America's struggle for independence. (b) But we may likewise draw a lesson of the universal love of freedom in the human race, and of their heroic struggles to attain it.

Purpose.

A graphic description of the battle of Bunker Hill is given by "grandmother." The story gains in interest, reality, and artistic completeness by the addition of a touch of romance.

Method.

**Remarks.** The poem awakens in us a deep sense of gratitude to the men who so dearly paid for the liberty we now enjoy. The author has succeeded in conveying all the thrilling excitement and hazard of the battle and the terrible suspense of the watchers in the belfry. Note the effectiveness of introducing, as one of these watchers, the old Corporal, — the crippled veteran of the French and Indian Wars.

Note the vividness of the following: —

“’Tis like stirring living embers.” (l. 1.)

“To you the words are ashes, but to me they ’re burning coals.” (l. 4.)

“And their lips were white with terror as they said, THE HOUR HAS COME !” (l. 36.)

“When a figure tall and stately round the rampart strode sedately.” (l. 39.)

“All through those hours of trial I had watched a calm clock dial.” (l. 113.) (What is the effect of this sentence?)

“With their powder-horns all emptied, like the swimmers from a wreck.” (l. 124.)

Note how well chosen is the metre of the poem to suggest the struggle and stress of the battle.

### THE CHAMBERED NAUTILUS

**Purpose.** A lesson of the true purpose of life, which is soul growth and character building. The poem bids us leave our “low-vaulted past,” and advance (by degrees, since all growth must be gradual) to higher and higher planes of thinking and living.

**Method.** (a) Holmes’s symbol of the soul is the “ship of pearl which, poets feign, sails the unshadowed main.” It is wrecked and “every chambered cell lies revealed,” showing that as the “spiral grew, he left the past year’s dwelling for the new,” “built up its idle door,” and “knew the old no more.” (b) The call to spiritual progress is given in the last stanza — “Build thee more stately mansions, O my soul.”

The general fitness and the beauty of the symbol are obvious. Note the exquisite charm of the language.

*Memorize the poem.*

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

What do you know of the chambered nautilus to prove the appropriateness of the following expressions:—

“Its webs of living gauze no more unfurl”; “irised ceiling”; “lustrous coil”; “spiral grew.”

What other passages illustrate the characteristics of the nautilus?

Explain the allusions in “Siren sings”; “sea maids”; “Than ever Triton blew from wreathed horn.”

#### OLD IRONSIDES

As is well known, this was written as a protest against the proposed breaking up of the frigate Constitution. It may well stand as an indictment of the ingratitude of the present generation toward the labors and sacrifices of their ancestors; of the modern lack of a “historic sense”; the modern spirit of irreverence, impatience, and iconoclasm toward what is old and traditional.

Indignant scorn is the keynote of the poem, struck in the opening line, “Ay, tear her tattered ensign down!” There follows a reminder, in glowing words, of the old ship’s achievements, contrasted with her present helplessness and the proposed indignity to her. Yet if she *must* be got rid of, the author believes it is far more fitting to cast her adrift in the tempest than to desecrate her by human hands.

*Memorize the poem.*

#### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF WARNER

1. Give a brief review of the events of Warner’s early life, noting especially the determination by which he secured a college education.



2. In what various ways did he qualify himself for his vocation as a man of letters?

3. Describe the circumstances of his becoming a newspaper editor.

4. What experiences did his books of travel and nature embody? Name these books.

5. To what field of literature did he next turn his attention, and what did he produce in it?

6. With what form of literature, however, is he most identified?

7. Name other proofs of Warner's literary industry.

8. Was Warner a literary man to the exclusion of all other interests?

### HOW I KILLED A BEAR

**Purpose.** To present a plain, matter-of-fact account of a *real* adventure with a bear, as opposed to the extravagant tales usually told by the heroes of such adventures.

**Method.** In telling it, the author makes use of a frank and whimsical humor, which he does not hesitate to turn against himself, thus gaining the sympathy of his readers. The way the human mind *really* acts in moments of crisis, in distinction to our romantic ideas of how it *should* act, is cleverly described.

### LOST IN THE WOODS

**Purpose.** To present real life *versus* romance, as shown by the *actual* experience of being lost in the woods.

**Method.** The author writes a perfectly frank, unromantic account of his adventure, which is, however, as full of interest and suspense as the most romantically conceived story, and it is, furthermore, enlivened by humor and by shrewd commentaries on the foibles of human nature.

**Remarks.** The author makes it plain that he is taking us fully into his confidence — not allowing his desire to "make a good story" stand between us and the facts of

his adventure. He humorously here, as in "How I Killed a Bear," reveals his journalistic calling, by showing his imagination busy with the construction of romantic fictions suggested by his experiences.

"The public don't want any more of this thing: it is played out," is a humorous thrust at the tendencies of popular tales of adventure.

Note the significance of these passages:—

"What a satire upon my present condition was modern culture!"

"It seemed pitiful that society could do absolutely nothing for me."

"I began to doubt the 'culture' that blunts the natural instincts."

Read carefully and note the significance of the paragraph beginning, "Nature is so pitiless, so unresponsive." It is a very suggestive paragraph.

#### A FIGHT WITH A TROUT

In relating this experience, the author was actuated by motives similar to those which inspired the two sketches considered above. All three reveal a sane and humorous outlook on life, and, hence, scant sympathy with the exaggerated tendencies of the "adventure" school of story-telling.

**Purpose:**

In this, the author has given us a bright and interesting account of an episode in trout-fishing, showing his happy faculty of writing about nature, and his customary flashes of humorous irony, such as:—

**Method.**

"Most of their adventures are thrilling, and all of them are, in narration, more or less unjust to the trout."

"No sportsman, however, will use anything but a fly, except he happens to be alone."

"No one devoted to high art would think of using a socket joint."

The writer who possesses the keen sense of humor, and the happy method of expressing it, of Charles Dudley Warner has a powerful weapon with which to win a permanent place in literature. The author who can "laugh at himself" is not likely to be either tedious, egotistical, or ridiculous.

**Remarks.**

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF EVERETT

1. Describe Everett's youthful and phenomenal start on his distinguished career.
2. Why did Everett give so marked an impulse to American scholarship upon his return from abroad?
3. Mention the leading events in his career from 1824 to 1854.
4. What practical share did Everett have in the purchase of Mt. Vernon? Does it not give a deeper effect to his address on the character of Washington?
5. Name other instances of his generous spirit.
6. What services did Everett render the Union cause during the Civil War?
7. What significant changes occurred in America during the period spanned by Everett's life?
8. State Everett's chief claims upon our admiration, and his greatest title to distinction.

## THE CHARACTER OF WASHINGTON

## OUTLINE

1. Common sense, Washington's distinguishing quality; its relation to brilliancy.
2. Christian morality the source of his qualities of excellence.
3. Washington contrasted with great leaders in achievement, genius, and character.
  - (a) With Alexander the Great
  - (b) With Julius Cæsar
  - (c) With Napoleon
4. Blenheim Castle *versus* Mt. Vernon.
5. Our responsibilities.
6. Washington preëminent.

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF LONGFELLOW

1. When and where was Longfellow born, and where educated?

2. What was the character of his first volume, and when was it published?

3. How did Longfellow better prepare himself for his professorships, and at the same time greatly enrich his literary life?

4. For what is Craigie House noted, aside from its association with Longfellow?

5. Name some of Longfellow's most famous works.

6. What does a study of Longfellow's numerous works reveal of his sympathies, tastes, and studies, and what hints do they give of his personal experience?

7. What do the poems reveal of the poet's friendships?

### EVANGELINE

In this poem, Longfellow teaches a lesson of steadfast love, and of patient endurance under trial and affliction. It is the lesson of a *personal* love (that is, of Evangeline's love for Gabriel) being turned, in its sorrow and disappointment, not into bitterness, but into a love for all mankind. The poem also shows the hatefulness of injustice and oppression, as typified in that meted out to the Acadians.

**Purpose.**

Taking the story of the Acadians as his groundwork, Longfellow constructs a touching romance framed in a long narrative of absorbing interest and wondrous pictorial power. Note that he has discarded rhyme in this poem, and read what is said in the Introduction to "Evangeline" (pages 254, 255) regarding his effective use of the dactylic hexameter.

**Method.**

Part I opens with a picture of the happy life of the Acadian peasants, and shows their admirable traits of character. In the village of Grand-Pré live the chief characters: — Evangeline, the lovely heroine, her father, her lover Gabriel, son of Basil the blacksmith, and the good priest, Father Felician. Soon come the terrible incidents of the sentence of exile, — the embarking, the

**Unfolding of the plot.**



burning of the village, the death of Evangeline's father, and her separation from her lover.

Part II shows the exiles scattered over America, some prosperously settled in fertile Louisiana, some in the prairies of the Southwest, others again, in the forests of Michigan. Evangeline has begun her long and weary search for her lover. Sometimes she all but finds him, — so close upon his trail she has come, — but it is always her fate just to miss him. Thus her youth and beauty pass away in restless wandering and fruitless search, until she returns, a sad, middle-aged woman, to Philadelphia, the city where she had first landed, an exile. Here, living the life of a Sister of Mercy, she ministers to the poor and the sick. And here, in the Friends' Almshouse, one Sabbath day, she finds Gabriel, an old, gray-haired man, dying of the fever. She closes his eyes in death, and her long search is over.

**Remarks.** The emotional appeal of this poem, and the beauty of its language are obvious. (1) Note at the beginning and at the end of the poem the symbolic use of the "forest primeval," and of the "deep-mouthed neighboring ocean." What are their purpose and their effect in the poem?

(2) Note what a variety of information, of description, and of legendary lore the poet weaves into this tale.

Select for study (1) portions especially distinguished for pathos and for truthful portrayal of human nature; (2) passages which impress you (a) by their picturesque descriptions of nature; (b) by the power and originality of their figures; (c) by their well-chosen allusions.

#### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF POE

1. State the facts of Poe's birth, early life, and education.
2. What qualities in him did his life at the university reveal?
3. What were the results of his running away to Boston?
4. Describe his military career.

5. Describe his life and literary work after leaving West Point until 1837.

6. Describe his literary career from 1837 until the publication of "The Raven."

7. What were the leading events of his life from 1845 to his death in 1849?

8. Give a summary of Poe's character as you find it expressed in his life.

9. What is the character of most of Poe's work, what does it reveal of Poe's nature, and what is its place in literature?

10. How was his critical work once regarded, and why is it now little read?

#### THE RAVEN, ISRAFEL, AND ANNABEL LEE

NOTE. The footnotes convey ample suggestion of the way to study and interpret these poems.

#### THE BELLS

"The Bells" is conceded to be one of the most musical poems in literature. While the ideas it embodies are not particularly original, the poem is noteworthy because of its incomparable melody. Throughout the poem, Poe has made brilliant use of the figure of speech called onomatopœia, in which words are used which suggest by their *sounds* the things they represent.

Remarks.

Example: "How they tinkle, tinkle, tinkle."

Give other examples of the use of this figure in the poem.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

Compare the spirit and the form of these four poems with those of Emerson included in this book. (See pages 398-401.)

What do you think was Poe's chief aim in writing poetry? Was it to represent some spiritual ideal? Or was he most concerned with rhythm, with melody, and beauty of form?

What was Emerson's chief concern in writing poetry?

Draw an interesting contrast between the characters and ideals of Poe and Emerson.

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF BURROUGHS

1. What was the nature of Burroughs's early associations, and how did these affect his writing?
2. What authors most deeply influenced him?
3. In what way has he paid tribute to his teachers?
4. What were the fruits of his Washington residence, and of his trips abroad?
5. Note that Mr. Burroughs is an instance of an able writer following literature, not as a means of subsistence, but as an avocation. What other American authors can you recall as doing likewise?

## A SPRAY OF PINE

**Purpose.** Burroughs writes of the pine tree because he understands and loves it; and we, who also love it, read his essay with pleasure and appreciation. Wherever the humanizing touch (which is so characteristic of Burroughs's work) is present in nature writing, ideals of character and conduct are apt to be found also, although more or less incidentally. And these ideals we may draw from Burroughs's observations on the pine tree.

**Method.** The author shows that the pine tree is far less adaptable in its habits than are deciduous trees, and far less complex in its methods of growth. But this very simplicity is an element of strength. "The pine has but one idea, and that is to mount heavenward by regular steps." This is its greatest lesson for us, but it has other lessons as well: its protecting friendliness, its courage, its silence, its healing balm and fragrance, its diverse usefulness.

## SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

The author asserts that "the dominant races come from the region of the pine." What kind of dominance has he in mind? Perhaps we should not accept his statement too

complacently. We should not forget that, though the north gave us the Vikings, the south gave us Columbus.

Note what a clever summing up of Emerson's literary style Burroughs presents in his idea of the speech of a pine tree. What influence did Emerson have upon Burroughs's literary ideals? Can you see a reason why Emerson should have affected a man of Burroughs's character?

What other authors, and of what nationality, does Burroughs admire, as revealed in this paper?

#### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF HENRY

1. Was Patrick Henry's start in life a promising one? Give reasons for your answer.

2. The possession of what great mental gifts did he disclose while qualifying himself for the bar?

3. In what way did he reveal his independent and patriotic spirit at the beginning of his legal career?

4. How did he reveal it later in the House of Burgesses?

5. What was his part in the work of the First Continental Congress?

6. Describe his great work from then on in instigating and aiding the Revolution.

7. After independence was won, on what great political issue did Henry again show his uncompromising democracy?

8. What evidence can be cited to show that Patrick Henry was a man "in advance of his age"?

#### HENRY'S SPEECH OF MARCH 23, 1775

The speech should be read in connection with the biographical sketch of Henry, and the descriptive introduction.

#### OUTLINE OF THE SPEECH

1. We should no longer shut our eyes to the true state of affairs between England and America.

2. Past experience with the British Ministry should show us the error of hoping for justice at its hands.

3. Great Britain means to subjugate us.



4. We have done everything possible to obtain justice and avert war — now we must fight.

5. Reasons why we should prepare at once to fight, and why we shall win.

6. Conclusion: — War has indeed already begun! "As for me, give me liberty, or give me death!"

#### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH OF EMERSON

1. Name the significant fact in Emerson's ancestry. Draw from it an inference in connection with his mental and spiritual make-up.

2. Give a brief summary of his life from his graduation at Harvard in 1821 until his death.

3. In what field did Emerson first draw public attention to himself as a man who had something to say?

4. What was the literary form of most of his prose work?

5. Summarize briefly his poetical career, and mention some of his more famous poems.

6. In what special way did Emerson show that he set a high value upon literature?

#### CONCORD HYMN

**Purpose.** To celebrate the erection of a "votive stone" in honor of a great event in our history, and to interpret the spirit and the meaning of that event.

The poet uses the simplest of means, yet the result is something wholly fine and complete.

**Method.** Note how fitly the *choice of words* in the first stanza, as well as the rugged, halting force of the metre, expresses the rugged strength of the "embattled farmers." Note, also, the perfect yet satisfying simplicity of the last stanza.

#### SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

What is the meaning of the famous line: —

— "And fired the shot heard round the world"?

Explain the force of the second stanza. Does it not suggest : —

(a) The brevity of human life as compared with the lasting effects human deeds may have ?

(b) That death unites all differences ?

To what does "the dark stream" refer ?

### THE SNOW-STORM

To show us our inferiority to nature ; the magic ease with which she accomplishes things, as contrasted with our clumsy human efforts ; to teach that we produce our highest and finest work when we accept nature as our guide and model.

**Purpose.**

Emerson describes the work of the snow-storm as an example of nature's miracles. His description of the arrival of the snow is particularly fine. Note that Whittier has used it as one of the texts preceding his poem, "Snow-Bound."

**Method.**

Study the symbolism of the poem : —

(1) The north wind is an architect of wondrous swiftness, power, and skill.

**Remarks.**

(2) Snow is the material with which he works.

(3) The work of *human* artists and architects is merely imitation of nature, and it requires slow, patient building, "stone by stone," to mimic the "mad wind's" frolic of a night. One of nature's "whims" puts to blush all our labored, carefully-wrought designs.

Note the epithets applied to the north wind : "the fierce artificer," "the myriad-handed," "the mad wind," — the sense of something *human* in the wind, which the whole description suggests. Note especially and explain the symbolism of "masonry," "quarry," "tile," "bastions," "Parian wreaths," "tapering turret."

Note the felicity of the passage : —

"In a tumultuous privacy of storm."

## THE RHODORA

**Purpose.** The purpose is plain. Quote two famous lines from the poem, showing what this is.

**Method.** The poet tells of his finding the lovely Rhodora "spreading its leafless blooms in a dark nook," and he proceeds, out of his own simple faith and divination, to explain the mystery of its presence there.

**Remarks.** Explain the significance of these passages : —

"To please the desert and the sluggish brook."

"And court the flower that cheapens his array."

" . . . why

This charm is wasted on the earth and sky."

Emerson's great gift was that he accepted nature *as she is* — simply and nobly. He found no difficulty in identifying himself with the things of nature — with the Rhodora, for instance.

"The self-same Power that brought *me* there brought *you*."

Short as it is, there is a world of beauty in this poem. Note the exquisite tenderness of Emerson's feeling.

*Memorize the poem.*

## ABRAHAM LINCOLN

**Remarks.** This address reveals several of Emerson's best qualities as a writer ; notably, his plain common sense, and straightforward simplicity. Note his astute reading of Lincoln's character ; his frank and direct summary of it, conveying a whole and satisfying impression of the man.

## SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS

What do you regard as one of Emerson's most captivating traits ? Is it not the idiomatic force, the epigrammatic crispness of many of his sentences ? Do you think that Emerson's style can ever, by any chance, be confused with that of any other writer ?

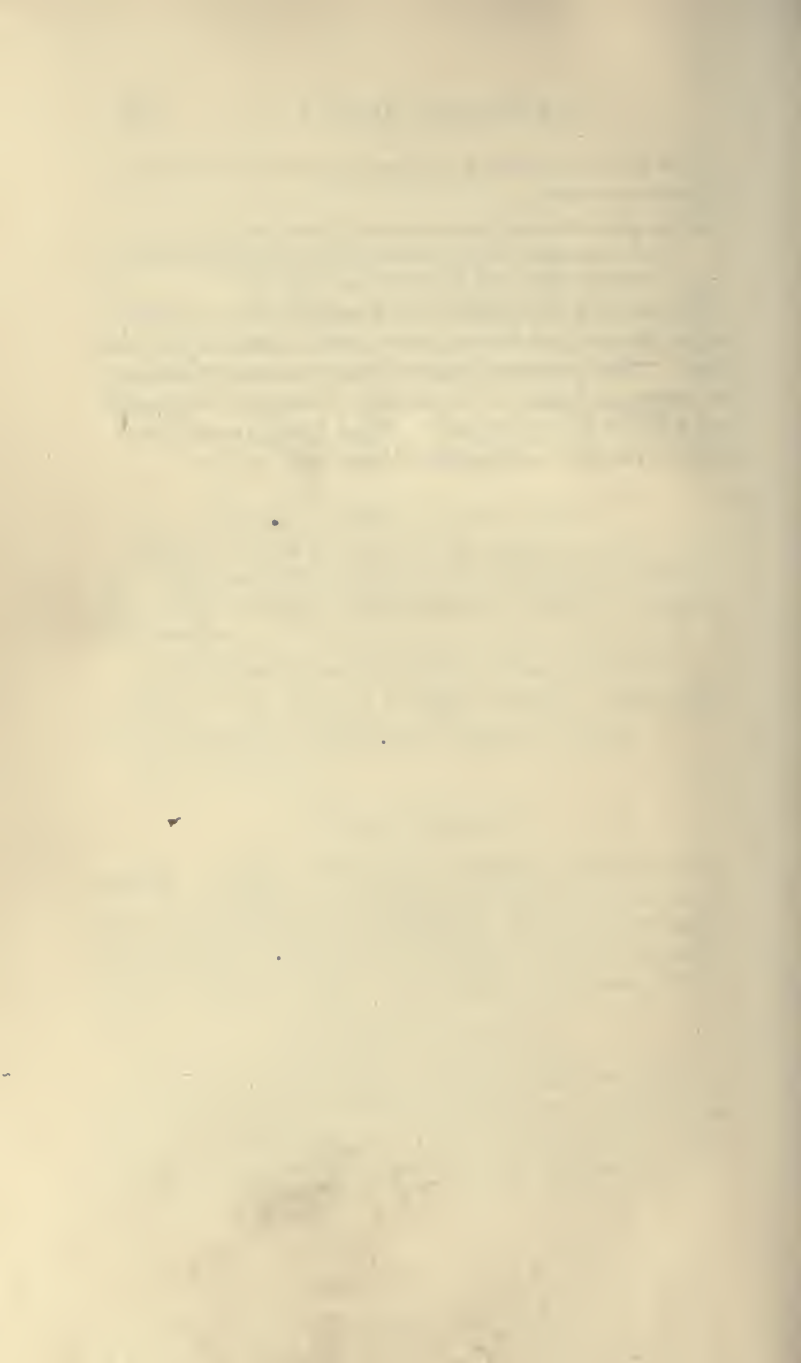
Note how excellently the following sentences summarize Lincoln's character : —

“ A quite native, aboriginal man, as an acorn from an oak.”

“ But this man was sound to the core, cheerful, persistent, all right for labor, and liked nothing so well.”

Do you agree with Emerson's suggestion that Lincoln's taking off may have been at the opportune moment for his fame? Note Emerson's large and sagacious way of viewing the events of history — his belief in “ a serene Providence that rules the fate of nations.” What is the prevailing tone of all of Emerson's philosophical teaching?













THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

**AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS**

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

JAN 11 1937

YB 14206

41159

*American*

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

